



---

# **FWB's Guide to Storage**

Second Edition

## Copyright Notice

This manual is copyrighted by FWB Software, LLC (FWB) with all rights reserved. Your rights with regard to this manual are subject to the restrictions and limitations imposed by the copyright laws of the United States of America. Under the copyright laws, this manual may not be copied, reproduced, translated, transmitted or reduced to any printed or electronic medium or to any machine-readable form, in whole or in part, without the written consent of FWB.

© 1991, 1996 By FWB Software, LLC

December 1996

Part No.: 07-00841-201

## Trademarks

Hard Disk ToolKit, RAID ToolKit, SpaceMaker ToolKit, and CD-ROM ToolKit are trademarks of FWB Software, LLC. FWB is a registered trademark of FWB Software, LLC.

All brand and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

## Credits

This guide was written by Norman Fong with help from Joan Carter, Steve Dalton, Bruce Dundas, Eric Herzog, Al Pierce, Stuart Saraquese, and Fred Swan. It was designed, edited, and composed by Joan Carter with help from Allan Levite. Illustrations were produced by Deane Morris. The original version of this manual was written in 1991 by Leslie Feldman, Norman Fong, Kevin Kachadourian, Neil Strudwick, and Paul Worthington as part of FWB's *Hard Disk ToolKit 1.x* manual.

## Dedication

This book is dedicated to my family and friends who put up with the long hours put into this effort. Kudos to those who enjoyed the original and inspired us to push the envelope once again five years later!



---

## Preface

Thank you for purchasing the second edition of FWB's Guide to Storage. We hope you will find this an informative guide to one of the most important components of your computer: your storage peripherals.

Most users never think twice about their drives until they cannot install a new program or save a file. Yet behind the drive letter or icon on your screen is a vast amount of technology representing millions of hours of research and development. Storage peripherals are another way technology has enabled users to dramatically increase their productivity.

This guide is not meant to document each subject exhaustively, but to serve as a bridge between non-technical documentation on storage and the technical specifications that define the major standards and technologies. We will cover many of the most important storage-related technologies in detail.

Once you have read this guide, if you are interested in deepening your understanding of storage technology, there are many fine books available that focus on specific subjects, such as drive interfaces, jumper settings, and other storage technologies. Look in the Bibliography for additional relevant titles.

Please contact us if you have suggestions for additions to this Guide.

NORMAN FONG  
President, FWB Software, LLC



---

# Table of Contents

<b>List of Figures</b> .....	xiii
<b>List of Tables</b> .....	xvi
<b>Chapter 1. Introduction</b> .....	19
About This Guide .....	19
Overview of Chapters .....	19
<b>Chapter 2. All About Drives</b> .....	21
Overview .....	21
Storage Life .....	21
Capacity and Access .....	22
A Short History of Hard Drives .....	25
BH (before hard drives) .....	25
The first true hard drive .....	26
Mechanics .....	27
Anatomy of a hard drive .....	27
Read/Write channel .....	37
The Medium .....	38
Spinning 'round .....	39
Head parking .....	39
Form Factor .....	40
Operations .....	43
Formatting .....	43
Encoding .....	44
Data detection .....	47
Error correction .....	47
Interleaving .....	48
Sector skew .....	49
Data transfer rates .....	50
Caching .....	52
Thermal recalibration .....	58
Drivers .....	59
When Things Go Wrong .....	59
Software errors .....	60
Hardware errors .....	60
Drives Don't Have to Die Quickly! .....	62
Saving data .....	62
Disk duplexing and disk mirroring .....	63
RAID, or Redundant Array of Independent Disks .....	64

But When You Gotta Go ...	64
Preventative measures	66
Data recovery	67
Defragmentation	68
Need a New Drive?	69
Indicators of durability and reliability	69
Other statistics to consider	72
Capacity	72
Other considerations	73
Trends in Hard Drives	73
Smaller platters	73
Smaller drives	74
Faster, smaller controllers	74
Connector size is slow to change	75
Faster, lighter heads and actuators	75
Green drives	76
All digital drives	76
Holographic memory	77
Large volumes	77
<b>Chapter 3. RAID Technology</b>	<b>79</b>
What is RAID?	79
What to look for	80
Specific features	80
RAID Levels—Overview	82
RAID Level 0	84
RAID Level 1	86
RAID Level 2	86
RAID Level 3	87
RAID Level 4	88
RAID Level 5	88
RAID 5 and Fault Tolerance	89
Up to two disks can fail	93
Increasing fault tolerance	93
Other RAID Levels	94
Hardware-Based Disk Arrays	94
Bus-Based Hardware Disk Arrays	95
Software-Based Disk Arrays	95
SAF-TE	95
RAID Advisory Board (RAB)	96
<b>Chapter 4. Other Types of Storage Devices</b>	<b>97</b>
Removable drives	98
Removable cartridge drives	99
Zip drives	101
Bernoulli drives	101



Magneto-optical drives .....	102
Phase change optical drives .....	104
Floptical drives .....	105
CD-ROM drives .....	106
Compact Disc Recordable drives (CD-R) .....	109
WORM drives .....	118
CD-ROM Rewritable drives (CD-RW) .....	118
Jukeboxes .....	119
Digital Versatile Disc drives .....	120
Tape drives .....	122
<b>Chapter 5. All About SCSI .....</b>	<b>125</b>
Overview .....	125
SCSI Is Simple ... ..	125
... and Complex .....	126
Essential Terminology .....	127
The Origin of SCSI .....	127
SCSI History .....	128
Apple's SCSI Influence .....	129
A Good Start... ..	130
Interoperability or connectivity .....	130
Boosting I/O performance .....	132
Hardware economy .....	133
... But It Needs Work .....	133
Who Uses SCSI? .....	134
SCSI Integrated Circuits (Chips) .....	135
Chip overview .....	135
SCSI chip families .....	136
Modes .....	138
Data Transfer Options .....	139
Essential terminology .....	139
Asynchronous data transfer .....	140
Synchronous data transfer .....	141
Signal lines .....	143
SCSI ID .....	146
Physical connections .....	147
SCSI cables .....	147
Electrical specifications .....	151
Connectors .....	152
Pin assignments .....	153
Bus Conditions .....	158
Attention condition .....	158
Reset condition .....	158
Executing Commands .....	159
Command Descriptor Block .....	159
Pointers .....	160

Commands	161
Mode Pages	164
Messages	164
Bus Phases	169
SCSI, Apple-Style	173
ANSI irregularities	175
Apple exceptions to the SCSI specification	176
PowerBook SCSI	177
SCSI Manager	178
Device drivers	181
Call Chain	183
Data Mapping	185
Inside the Mac HFS partition	186
Macintosh volume limits	187
Macintosh SCSI performance	188
PC SCSI Implementation	189
DOS	190
Windows®	190
Windows 95 and NT	191
PC Plug-and-Play	191
PC SCSI performance	192
SCSI-2: A Transition From SCSI-1	193
SCSI-2 overview	193
SCSI-2 commands	195
SCSI-2 highlights	195
The SCSI-2 Common Access Method (CAM)	200
SCSI-3	202
<b>Chapter 6. All About Serial SCSI</b>	<b>209</b>
Overview	209
USB	211
1394 (FireWire)	211
Fibre Channel	213
Background	213
Why use Fibre Channel?	216
Serial Storage Architecture (SSA)	218
Fibre Channel Enhanced Loop	221
<b>Chapter 7. Other Storage Interfaces</b>	<b>222</b>
ST-506/ST-412	222
ESDI	224
IDE	225
Origins of IDE	225
IDE details	227
IDE data transfers	227
IDE limitations	229

PC IDE implementation	230
Macintosh IDE implementation	234
Special considerations	235
Enhanced IDE	235
Fast ATA-2	238
ATAPI	238
Basic ATAPI operation	239
ATAPI CD-ROM Mode Pages	239
ATAPI tape Mode Pages	239
ATA-3	240
Ultra-ATA	241
Other Drive Interfaces	241
FIPS-60	241
SMD-E and SMD-H	241
IPI	241
<b>Chapter 8. All About Expansion Buses</b>	<b>243</b>
NuBus	243
ISA	246
MicroChannel	247
EISA	248
VESA Local Bus (VLB)	248
PCI	249
PCI features	251
Macintosh PCI	253
Open Firmware	255
PCI Mezzanine Specification	261
PCMCIA	261
<b>Chapter 9. Storage Software</b>	<b>263</b>
Formatter Software	263
RAID Software	264
CD-ROM Software	265
Tape Backup Software	266
Compression Software	266
Hierarchical Storage Management Software	267
Managing data storage: the hidden costs	268
On-line, off-line, and near-line storage	268
Archiving, backup, and HSM	269
CD-R Mastering	272
Disk Benchmarks	272
<b>Chapter 10. Troubleshooting</b>	<b>274</b>
General Troubleshooting	274
Macintosh Troubleshooting	277
Mac boot process	277

Macintosh problems and recommended actions . . . . .	278
Happy Mac problems . . . . .	278
Sad Mac Problems . . . . .	279
PC Troubleshooting . . . . .	285
PC boot process . . . . .	285
PC problems and recommended actions . . . . .	286
<b>Appendix A. Additional Information Sources</b> . . . . .	288
<b>Appendix B. Suggested Additional Reading</b> . . . . .	292
<b>Appendix C. The Deep End</b> . . . . .	294
SCSI Communications . . . . .	294
SCSI signals and bus phases . . . . .	294
SCSI Command Descriptor Block . . . . .	295
SCSI-1 commands and opcodes . . . . .	298
SCSI-1 Sense Keys and Sense Data . . . . .	301
SCSI-1 messages . . . . .	304
SCSI control signals and Information Transfer phases . . . . .	308
PC SCSI: ASPI for Win32 calls . . . . .	309
SCSI-2: new commands . . . . .	309
SCSI-2 mode pages . . . . .	314
ST-506 Communications . . . . .	317
ST-506 commands . . . . .	317
ST-506 data signals . . . . .	318
IDE Communications . . . . .	319
IDE data signals . . . . .	319
IDE registers . . . . .	321
IDE commands and opcodes . . . . .	322
PC IDE: INT13 call codes . . . . .	323
IDE pin assignments . . . . .	324
Apple ATA Manager calls . . . . .	325
Enhanced IDE commands and opcodes . . . . .	327
ATAPI Communications . . . . .	327
ATAPI commands and opcodes . . . . .	327
ATAPI registers . . . . .	328
ATA-3 Communications . . . . .	328
PCI Communications . . . . .	329
<b>Glossary</b> . . . . .	330
<b>Index</b> . . . . .	381

---

## List of Figures

<b>Figure 1.</b> Comparative height of disk flight .....	24
<b>Figure 2.</b> Exploded internal view of a hard drive .....	28
<b>Figure 3.</b> Cross section of an external (enclosed) hard drive .....	29
<b>Figure 4.</b> Stepper motor head actuator .....	30
<b>Figure 5.</b> Formula for calculating tracks per inch .....	31
<b>Figure 6.</b> Formula for determining access time .....	33
<b>Figure 7.</b> Stepper motor actuator .....	35
<b>Figure 8.</b> Voice coil actuator .....	36
<b>Figure 9.</b> Safe landing zone for head parking .....	39
<b>Figure 10.</b> A 2.5-inch drive .....	41
<b>Figure 11.</b> Examples of 1:1 and 6:1 interleaving .....	48
<b>Figure 12.</b> Sector skew offset .....	49
<b>Figure 13.</b> Data flow in memory caches .....	52
<b>Figure 14.</b> Data transfer rates increase the closer cache is to the CPU .....	53
<b>Figure 15.</b> Time it takes to complete a 4 KB random write .....	57
<b>Figure 16.</b> Most frequent causes of system failure .....	59
<b>Figure 17.</b> Fragmented and defragmented disks .....	68
<b>Figure 18.</b> Interpretation of the MTBF rating .....	69
<b>Figure 19.</b> Formula for determining MTBF by Field Rate of Return .....	71
<b>Figure 20.</b> Interpretation of the MTBF rating based on FRR .....	71
<b>Figure 21.</b> RAID subsystem with a hot-swap drive .....	81
<b>Figure 22.</b> Hot-swappable power supply .....	81
<b>Figure 23.</b> Six-drive, level 0 RAID .....	84
<b>Figure 24.</b> RAID 0 array .....	84
<b>Figure 25.</b> Six-drive, level 1 RAID .....	86
<b>Figure 26.</b> Level 3 RAID .....	87
<b>Figure 27.</b> Level 5 RAID .....	88
<b>Figure 28.</b> Creating parity data on RAID 5 using XOR .....	90
<b>Figure 29.</b> Level 5 RAID .....	90
<b>Figure 30.</b> Data organization in RAID level 5 .....	91
<b>Figure 31.</b> RAID 5 reconstruction .....	92
<b>Figure 32.</b> Removable canister drive .....	98
<b>Figure 33.</b> Removable hard cartridge system .....	99

<b>Figure 34.</b>	Bernoulli cartridge .....	101
<b>Figure 35.</b>	Magneto-optical drive and optical cartridge .....	102
<b>Figure 36.</b>	6Plex CD-ROM drive .....	106
<b>Figure 37.</b>	CD-Recorder .....	109
<b>Figure 38.</b>	Comparison of CD-ROM and CD-R media .....	111
<b>Figure 39.</b>	Order of information on a DAO CD .....	114
<b>Figure 40.</b>	Order of information on an incremental CD .....	115
<b>Figure 41.</b>	Order of information on a packet CD .....	116
<b>Figure 42.</b>	Order of information on a multisession CD .....	116
<b>Figure 43.</b>	Order of information on a Kodak multisession CD .....	117
<b>Figure 44.</b>	Comparison of single- and dual-layer DVDs .....	120
<b>Figure 45.</b>	DAT and DAT autoloader tape drives .....	122
<b>Figure 46.</b>	DLT tape drive .....	124
<b>Figure 47.</b>	SCSI time line .....	128
<b>Figure 48.</b>	Single host/multiple controllers .....	135
<b>Figure 49.</b>	Asynchronous data transfer mode .....	140
<b>Figure 50.</b>	Signal lines .....	143
<b>Figure 51.</b>	25-50 Macintosh SCSI system cable .....	148
<b>Figure 52.</b>	50-high-density 50 PC SCSI system cable .....	148
<b>Figure 53.</b>	50-50 peripheral interface cable .....	149
<b>Figure 54.</b>	Daisy chaining external devices .....	149
<b>Figure 55.</b>	Cable extender .....	150
<b>Figure 56.</b>	Internal fast/wide drive with a 68-pin connector .....	150
<b>Figure 57.</b>	Termination circuits: single-ended and differential .....	151
<b>Figure 58.</b>	68-pin SCSI terminator .....	153
<b>Figure 59.</b>	Termination power circuit .....	156
<b>Figure 60.</b>	Phase sequence with arbitration .....	169
<b>Figure 61.</b>	Phase sequence without arbitration .....	170
<b>Figure 62.</b>	SCSI Manager software hierarchy .....	178
<b>Figure 63.</b>	Typical parameter block construct .....	180
<b>Figure 64.</b>	Partition map .....	185
<b>Figure 65.</b>	1394 (FireWire) theoretical physical topology .....	211
<b>Figure 66.</b>	Fibre channel arbitrated loop .....	213
<b>Figure 67.</b>	SCSI parallel implementation .....	215
<b>Figure 68.</b>	SSA single-domain implementation .....	219
<b>Figure 69.</b>	SSA dual-domain implementation .....	220
<b>Figure 70.</b>	PC PCI IDE implementation .....	230
<b>Figure 71.</b>	IDE application call chain .....	231
<b>Figure 72.</b>	DOS disk layout (3.0 and newer) .....	232

**Figure 73.** Mac OS IDE implementation ..... 234  
**Figure 74.** Formula for the Logical Block Address ..... 236  
**Figure 75.** NuBus SCSI expansion card ..... 243  
**Figure 76.** 16-bit ISA SCSI card ..... 246  
**Figure 77.** PCI SCSI card ..... 249  
**Figure 78.** Certified PCI local bus trademark ..... 250  
**Figure 79.** PCI and NuBus transfer rates using Benchtest ..... 257  
**Figure 80.** PCI and NuBus transfer rates using Adobe Photoshop™ ..... 258  
**Figure 81.** Apple’s certified PCI trademark ..... 259  
**Figure 82.** FWB’s Hard Disk ToolKit™ ..... 263  
**Figure 83.** FWB’s RAID ToolKit™ ..... 264  
**Figure 84.** FWB’s CD-ROM ToolKit™ ..... 265  
**Figure 85.** FWB’s SpaceMaker ToolKit™ ..... 267  
**Figure 86.** Opcodes reserved for vendor-unique commands ..... 311

---

## List of Tables

<b>Table 1.</b> Typical operational speeds and data density in 1996 .....	50
<b>Table 2.</b> Comparison of transfer rates and CPU speeds .....	51
<b>Table 3.</b> Prolonging disk life and maintaining data integrity .....	66
<b>Table 4.</b> Worldwide volume of drives .....	77
<b>Table 5.</b> Current and future capacities of 3.5-inch drives .....	77
<b>Table 6.</b> Amount of storage on an average file server .....	78
<b>Table 7.</b> Historical and predicted cost per MB .....	78
<b>Table 8.</b> Escalation of typical drive speeds in RPM .....	78
<b>Table 9.</b> Features of RAID subsystems .....	80
<b>Table 10.</b> Comparison of common RAID levels .....	83
<b>Table 11.</b> Other RAID levels .....	94
<b>Table 12.</b> Overview of other types of storage devices .....	97
<b>Table 13.</b> Advantages/disadvantages of removable drives .....	99
<b>Table 14.</b> Advantages/disadvantages of removable cartridge drives .....	100
<b>Table 15.</b> Advantages/disadvantages of Zip drives .....	101
<b>Table 16.</b> Advantages/disadvantages of Bernoulli drives .....	102
<b>Table 17.</b> Advantages/disadvantages of magneto-optical drives .....	104
<b>Table 18.</b> Advantages/disadvantages of phase change optical drives .....	104
<b>Table 19.</b> Advantages/disadvantages of floptical drives .....	105
<b>Table 20.</b> Pros and cons of CD-ROM file system formats .....	107
<b>Table 21.</b> Features to look for in CD-ROM drives .....	108
<b>Table 22.</b> Advantages/disadvantages of CD-ROM drives .....	109
<b>Table 23.</b> Overview of CD formats and standards .....	113
<b>Table 24.</b> Advantages/disadvantages of WORM drives .....	118
<b>Table 25.</b> Advantages/disadvantages of jukeboxes .....	119
<b>Table 26.</b> Comparison of features of DDS-1 through 4 .....	123
<b>Table 27.</b> Advantages/disadvantages of tape drives .....	124
<b>Table 28.</b> ANSI X3 categories for current technologies .....	126
<b>Table 29.</b> The nine control signals .....	145
<b>Table 30.</b> Data buses and related SCSI IDs .....	146
<b>Table 31.</b> Types of termination .....	154
<b>Table 32.</b> Examples of termination .....	157
<b>Table 33.</b> General device commands .....	161



<b>Table 34.</b>	SCSI messages .....	165
<b>Table 35.</b>	The eight SCSI bus phases .....	171
<b>Table 36.</b>	Original SCSI Manager code .....	179
<b>Table 37.</b>	SCSI Manager 4.3 calls .....	181
<b>Table 38.</b>	Driver requests .....	182
<b>Table 39.</b>	Data structures in the Macintosh HFS partition .....	186
<b>Table 40.</b>	Progress of data transfer rates in the Macintosh .....	188
<b>Table 41.</b>	Overview of improved transfer rates in PCs .....	192
<b>Table 42.</b>	Mandated SCSI-2 supported features .....	196
<b>Table 43.</b>	Optional features allowed in SCSI-2 .....	198
<b>Table 44.</b>	SCSI-3 files and topics .....	202
<b>Table 45.</b>	Features of a fibre channel arbitrated loop .....	214
<b>Table 46.</b>	IDE data transfer rates .....	228
<b>Table 47.</b>	IDE data transfer limitations on a PC .....	229
<b>Table 48.</b>	Operating system drive capacity access limitations .....	233
<b>Table 49.</b>	FAT cluster size limitations .....	233
<b>Table 50.</b>	Evolution of Macintosh data transfer rates .....	245
<b>Table 51.</b>	Maximum data transfer rates of Intel chipsets .....	252
<b>Table 52.</b>	Macintosh PowerPC to PCI data transfer rate .....	255
<b>Table 53.</b>	Macintosh PCI master to memory data transfer rate .....	255
<b>Table 54.</b>	Three common techniques for storage management .....	268
<b>Table 55.</b>	On-line, off-line, and near-line storage .....	269
<b>Table 56.</b>	I/O interface reflectors .....	289
<b>Table 57.</b>	Signals asserted during different bus phases .....	294
<b>Table 58.</b>	Group 0 Command Descriptor Block .....	295
<b>Table 59.</b>	Group 1 Command Descriptor Block .....	296
<b>Table 60.</b>	Group 5 Command Descriptor Block .....	297
<b>Table 61.</b>	General device commands and opcodes .....	298
<b>Table 62.</b>	Sense Keys .....	301
<b>Table 63.</b>	Common Sense Keys with ASC and ASCQ decoding .....	302
<b>Table 64.</b>	SCSI messages .....	304
<b>Table 65.</b>	Control signals and Information Transfer phases .....	308
<b>Table 66.</b>	ASPI for Win32 calls .....	309
<b>Table 67.</b>	General device commands introduced in SCSI-2 .....	309
<b>Table 68.</b>	Commands and opcodes for CD-ROM devices .....	312
<b>Table 69.</b>	Commands and opcodes for tape devices .....	313
<b>Table 70.</b>	Commands and opcodes for communication devices .....	313
<b>Table 71.</b>	SCSI-2 defined mode pages .....	314
<b>Table 72.</b>	SCSI-2 defined CD-ROM mode pages .....	316

<b>Table 73.</b>	SCSI-2 defined tape mode pages .....	316
<b>Table 74.</b>	ST-506 commands and opcodes .....	317
<b>Table 75.</b>	34-Pin ST-506 data signals .....	318
<b>Table 76.</b>	20-Pin ST-506 data signals .....	319
<b>Table 77.</b>	40-Pin IDE data signals .....	319
<b>Table 78.</b>	IDE registers for accessing drives .....	321
<b>Table 79.</b>	IDE commands and opcodes .....	322
<b>Table 80.</b>	Call codes available through INT13 .....	323
<b>Table 81.</b>	IDE hard disk connector pin assignments .....	324
<b>Table 82.</b>	ATA Manager parameter block header structure .....	325
<b>Table 83.</b>	Functions supported by the ATA Manager .....	326
<b>Table 84.</b>	Enhanced IDE commands and opcodes .....	327
<b>Table 85.</b>	ATAPI-inspired enhanced IDE commands and opcodes .....	327
<b>Table 86.</b>	ATAPI registers .....	328
<b>Table 87.</b>	ATA-3 new commands and opcodes .....	328
<b>Table 88.</b>	PCI commands and initiators .....	329

---

## Introduction

### About This Guide

---

FWB's Guide to Storage is presented in ten sections:

- Introduction
- All About Drives
- RAID Technology
- Other Types of Storage Devices
- All About SCSI (Small Computer System Interface)
- All About Serial SCSI
- Other Storage Interfaces
- All About Expansion Buses
- Storage Software
- Troubleshooting

Appendix, Glossary, Bibliography, and Index information are included at the back of the book.

### Overview of Chapters

---

This manual offers a foundation of information to help you take full advantage of the power of your storage peripherals and utility software. A brief overview of chapters is provided below.

#### Chapter 2, All About Drives

Chapter 2 provides detailed information on the functioning of hard disk drives and other storage devices. If you are not knowledgeable about hard drives, read this chapter before changing any formatting options in your disk formatting software.

#### Chapter 3, RAID Technology

Chapter 3 explains RAID technology, lists and describes common RAID levels, and walks you through the ways some RAID levels store data to disks.

## Chapter 4, Other Types of Storage Devices

Chapter 4 discusses types of storage devices other than internal and external hard disk drives. It includes device descriptions and detailed explanations of different media and ways data is stored it.

## Chapter 5, All About SCSI

Chapter 5 describes the Small Computer System Interface (SCSI). Read; this chapter to discover how SCSI enables your computer to communicate with various peripherals, including drives.

## Chapter 6, All About Serial SCSI

Chapter 6 describes the serial version of the Small Computer System Interface. Read this chapter to discover how Serial SCSI enables your computer to transfer data at rates not possible with normal parallel SCSI.

## Chapter 7, Other Storage Interfaces

Chapter 7 describes the variety of storage interface technology available today, including IDE, Intelligent Drive Electronics interface. Read this chapter to boost your understanding of other storage interfaces.

## Chapter 8, All About Expansion Buses

Chapter 8 describes the internal expansion buses of microcomputers. Read this chapter to develop your understanding of how buses extend your computer's speed and expandability.

## Chapter 9, Storage Software

Chapter 9 describes the various categories of software designed to enhance the flexibility of your storage peripherals. Read this chapter to learn about the different types of utility software currently on the market.

## Chapter 10, Troubleshooting

Chapter 10 describes some typical problems with using storage peripherals and suggests solutions. Read this chapter to develop your knowledge of steps to take when things go wrong.

---

# All About Drives

## Overview

---

Hard disk drives, like most other storage devices, are named for their storage medium. There is an actual hard disk platter, or multiple platters, inside the mechanism. This is where data is stored and retrieved. A hard disk platter is about one-eighth of an inch thick. Its diameter varies.

**NOTE**

See “Form Factor” on page 40 for more information on disk diameters.

Hard disk drives, or hard drives, are crucial parts of any computer system. They provide nonvolatile, online access to vast amounts of information, such as the software you purchase and the work you perform.



**Nonvolatile means that data is not lost when the computer is turned off. This is in contrast to volatile, where data is lost once the computer is turned off. An example of nonvolatile is the data you store on your hard disk. An example of volatile is the data held in RAM.**

The central processing unit (CPU) executes programs that reside in volatile RAM, but those programs and corresponding data need to be loaded from disk. All data is lost when power is withdrawn from volatile RAM, but nonvolatile disk storage maintains its data after power loss. Some of the most expensive pieces of hardware in your computer include:

- the central processing unit (CPU)
- the random-access memory (RAM)
- the hard disk

## Storage Life

---

Compared to the computer’s RAM, which retains information only as long as the machine is running, hard drives do a much better job of preserving information:

- They have far greater capacity.
- They’re cheaper (though not cheap).

The cost of magnetic media (i.e., a hard drive) is much lower than the cost of silicon chips (i.e., RAM). This cost differential has been growing, making drive storage over 100 times cheaper per megabyte than RAM.

- They're far less subject to adverse environmental conditions.

The disk platter that data is stored on is permanently encased in the drive and never contacts the drive's heads during normal use. The fact that the disk is neither exposed to air nor directly touched by the drive's heads minimizes the amount of degradation that naturally occurs over time.

If used and stored in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, a hard disk drive could store data without loss for ten or more years. But no storage medium is truly permanent. All will eventually degrade and lose information.

For a longer storage life, CD-ROM and other optical drives are the only storage media that may approach permanence. Current assessments anticipate that CDs will last for 100 years or more (although, with the way technology has been advancing, it's open to question whether this technology will be in use a hundred years from now).



See Chapter 4, “Other Types of Storage Devices,” for more information on other types of media.

## Capacity and Access

---

Most computer owners want greater storage capacity and faster data access than is offered by floppy disk drives. A computer can access data from a hard disk in 10 milliseconds (ms). A computer can access data from a floppy disk in 200 ms (average access time). Access from a hard disk is twenty times faster than access from a floppy. (They're both slowpokes compared to RAM, which can be accessed in 100 nanoseconds—200 times faster than a hard drive.)

A hard drive's storage media spins faster than a floppy's—5,400 revolutions per minute (RPM) or faster, compared to 360 RPM for floppy disks—and thus can access data more quickly. The disk platter in a hard disk drive spins constantly. It's always ready to do its job. A floppy motor turns on and off, which slows disk access and adds latency.



**Latency is the time it takes for the requested magnetic or optical disk track or sector to rotate to the correct position under the read/write heads of a disk drive. This is one of the factors that govern access speed.**



For more information on the mechanics of a hard drive, see “Anatomy of a hard drive” on page 27.

Most hard drives have data transfer rates that average from five to hundreds of megabits per second (Mb/s or millions of bits per second). Floppy drives can transfer data only as fast as 0.2 to 0.4 Mb/s.

As of 1996, the storage limit on 5.25-inch hard disk drives is as much as 23 gigabytes (GB; one GB equals 1,024 MB). The 1996 storage limit on standard floppies is about 1.4 MB.



**The platter in a hard disk drive really is a hard disk; the medium is rigid, not flexible, and because its surface is dense, a large amount of data can be stored on it.**

Before getting more deeply into the technology, let's explore some basic facts about hard drives.

In several respects the operation of a hard drive is like a record player. A mechanism on the hard drive travels across the surface of the hard disk to read and transmit information similar to the way a tone arm on a record player travels across the surface of a record to provide audio.

Instead of a needle that detects bumps and pits in the record surface, disk drives have electromagnetic read/write heads that create and detect magnetic information on the surface of the disk platters. The read/write head is a tiny electromagnet at the end of an armature. The head is analogous to a record player's needle or stylus.



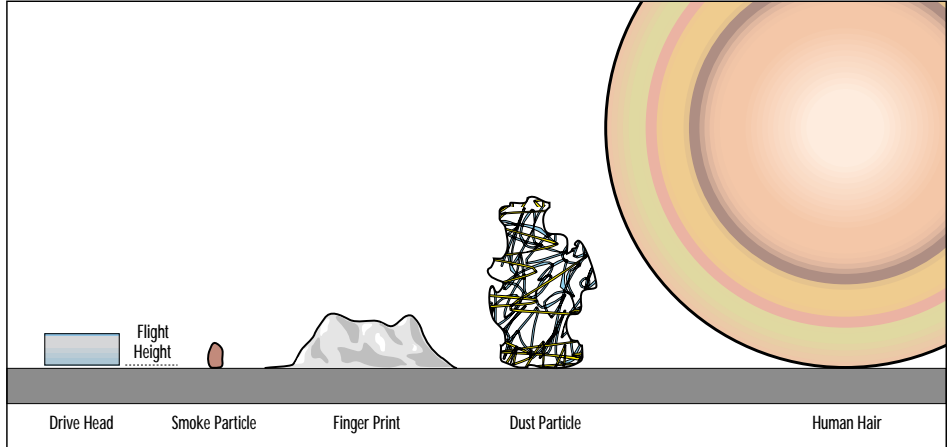
**An armature is the drive head's supporting framework. (The tone arm on a record player is an armature.)**

High-capacity drives have more than one platter. This is similar to having many records stacked on top of a turntable, with the following exceptions:

- Unlike stacked records, stacked disk platters all rotate together.
- Most high-capacity drives have a separate armature for each platter.
- Often, both sides of a platter are used simultaneously.

Unlike a record player, the hard drive's "needle" does not come into contact with the disk. In fact, nothing should touch the platter. Most drives are virtually air tight so that not even dust particles can affect their operation. As the disk spins, it creates an air cushion upon which the read/write head floats.

This air-cushion gap is much narrower than a speck of dust: only a couple microns tall (millionths of a meter) (Figure 1).



**Figure 1.** Comparative height of disk flight



The flight height of a modern drive head is equivalent to a jumbo jet flying at less than one inch above the ground. Luckily, the surface of a disk is much flatter than the surface of the earth.

Instead of plowing along physical grooves on a vinyl record and moving steadily inward, the read/write head follows tracks and moves in and out. Tracks are the invisible magnetic “grooves” upon which data is physically stored. Instead of one continuous track, as you’d find on a vinyl record, tracks form distinct concentric circles that emanate from the center, or hub, of the platter out to the perimeter.

Information is sent as an electric current by the hard drive’s controller to the controlling chips. This current passes through the magnetic read/write head, which magnetizes particles on the platter’s tracks in binary on/off patterns, or bits—the standard building blocks of the digital language used by computers. The media stays magnetized when the power is turned off, just as a record holds a lasting impression after it is cast.



## A Short History of Hard Drives

---

### BH (before hard drives)

Storage for computers has existed since the early 1950s, when companies such as IBM stored data on what was known as “Drum Storage.” These drives were shaped like drums, had heads that touched the platters, and held very little data.



**In September 1956, a small group of IBM engineers developed the RAMAC 305. It stored 5 MB on 50 24-inch disks and had a 600 ms access time. It cost about \$35,000 a year to lease. RAMAC is an acronym for Random Access Method of Accounting and Control. The RAMAC was the first storage device with random access to data. Random access meant the drive head could access requested data without having to travel through all the data stored before it in sequence. Sequential access devices, such as tape drives, require that all data stored in front of the requested data must travel across the read/write head before you can access it.**

The punch card was an early form of data storage for computers. Some main-frame computers still use 80-column punch cards. Binary data is encoded in the card using holes (or lack of holes) to represent ones and zeros (data bits). These principles were applied to punched paper tape, and later to magnetic tape, which held more data than could its paper counterpart. Instead of holes, magnetic tape used recorded magnetic signals in a fashion similar to audio tape recorders.



**The original Apple II and IBM PCs had a port to which you could attach an audio tape recorder for data storage.**

One disadvantage of all tape drives is that they access data relatively slowly. This is a limitation of their design. Most tape drive's read/write heads stand still while the tape is moved over it. To get information from two sectors at opposite ends of the tape, the drive must travel across the entire distance between them (this is known as sequential access). No matter how good the equipment, or how fast the motor, tape can wind only so fast before it snaps.

Disk drives are a great improvement. By using a spinning platter instead of winding tape, the media can move at far greater speeds. But the greatest advantage comes from putting the read/write head on an armature that can move across the platter to access the information “randomly.” The head no longer has to travel down the length of the media but can cut across tracks of information to access what it needs directly.



**The first disks used for data storage were 8- and 14-inch floppy disks. Despite their large size, these early floppies had very limited storage capacities, typically 100 to 200 Kilobytes (KB).**

## The first true hard drive

IBM developed the first true hard drive technology in 1973. It was named the “Winchester 30/30,” after the Winchester 30/30 rifle. The hard drive used two 30 MB disks, one fixed and one removable. The unit eventually got marketed as the model 3340.



**The first widely available floppy drive was a 143 KB, 5.25-inch disk developed for the Apple II in 1979. To date, most hard drives are still manufactured by American firms, although companies from other countries are always trying to break into the market.**

It wasn't until 10 years later, in 1983, that hard drives hit the mainstream with IBM's introduction of the PC XT. As technology improved, hard drives grew. Capacity doubled almost every 18 months. Price per megabyte dropped rapidly, from around \$50 per megabyte in 1983 to under \$0.25 per megabyte in 1995.



**Price per megabyte continues to drop at a rate of 10 percent or more per quarter.**

The density of the magnetic material on the surface of the hard drive's disk platter increased, allowing storage of more bits of data on increasingly smaller areas. The read/write heads were made smaller and more sensitive so they could read a smaller magnetic domain. This made it possible to store even more bits per inch on the disk surface.



**A magnetic domain is the amount of space on a magnetic disk needed to store one bit of data.**

The number of platters and heads have also increased. Some hard disk drives today have as many as ten platters, with two heads per platter—one reading/writing the top of the platter, the other the bottom.

Improvements in data encoding reduced the amount of platter space needed for mapping out the location of data on the disks. Originally, encoding used half the space on each disk. Now, a multiple-platter hard drive using a dedicated servo head actuator can put all the encoding data on one side of one disk, freeing the remainder of the disks for storage of the user's information.



**A head actuator is the physical device that moves the armature and thus the read/write head(s) across the surface of the platter. Servo information is used for guiding the head's positioning over data.**

### NOTE



**For more information on data encoding, see “Encoding” on page 44.**

## Mechanics

---

To understand a hard drive, you need to look at it from both a hardware and software perspective. Hardware is discussed below. Software is discussed in “Operations” on page 43.

### Anatomy of a hard drive

#### Overview

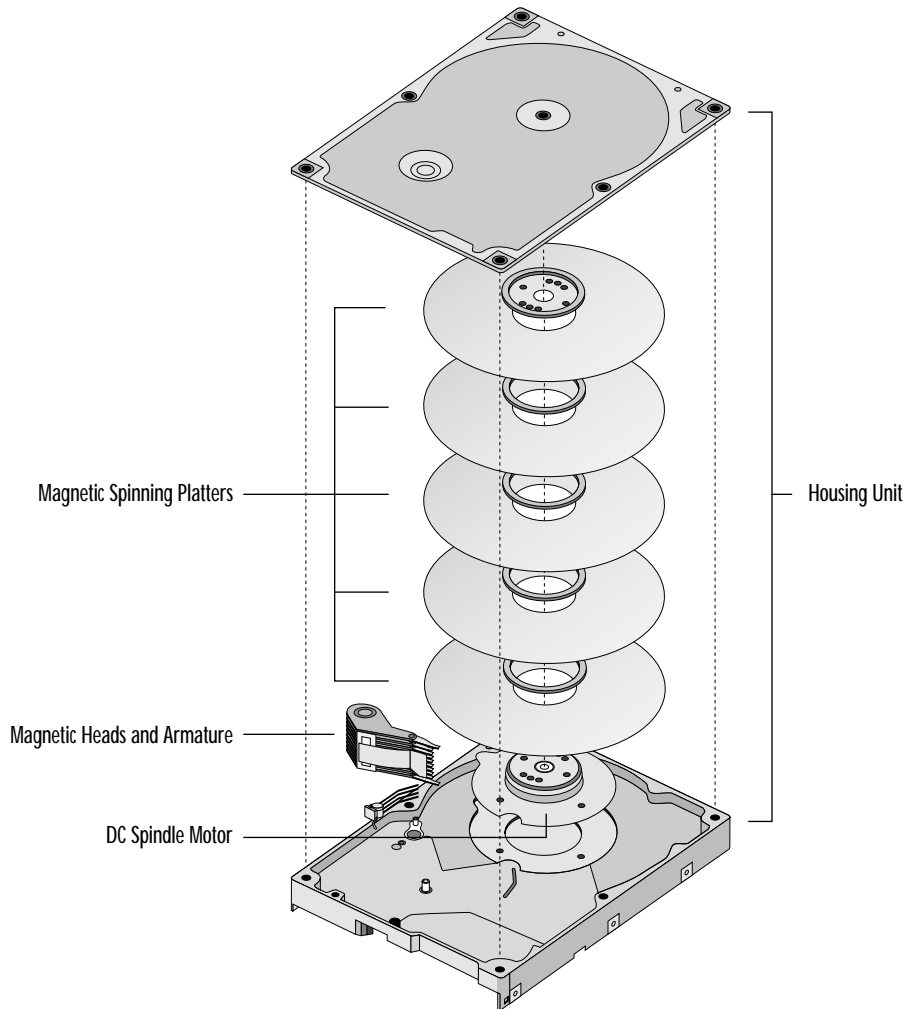
A hard drive is a small box of magic. It is the result of years of cooperative development in many areas:

- computer software
- electrical engineering
- mechanical engineering
- metallurgy

All these disciplines working together to create such a successful product is a great example of teamwork.

The hard drive’s mechanics can be divided into two main functions:

- head movement (positioning it over the correct track)
- disk movement (spinning it so the desired sectors pass under the head)



**Figure 2.** Exploded internal view of a hard drive

Internal hard drive components include:

- magnetic read/write head
- magnetic spinning platter
- power supply
- specially designed electric DC motor for spinning the spindle at a constant rate to which the platters are attached

- armature to which the read/write head is attached
- atmospheric controls
- vibration isolators
- head actuator

Some of these have been touched upon in the preceding text and are illustrated in Figure 2, above.

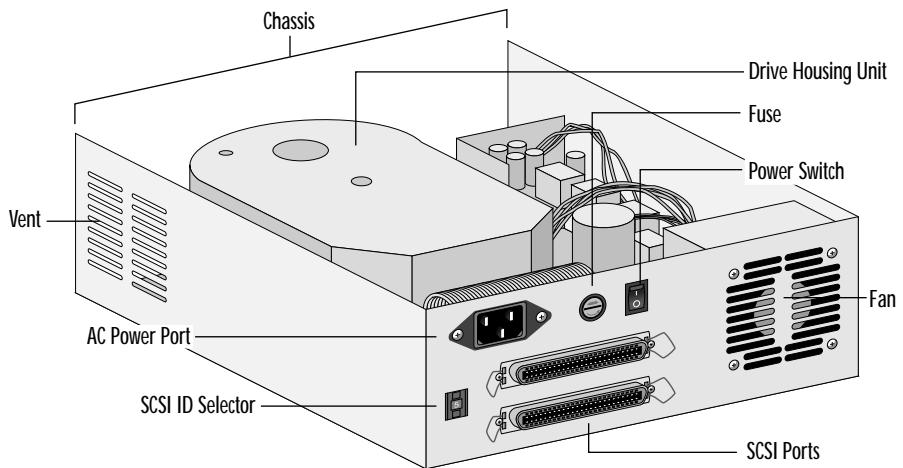
On most drive mechanisms, jumper pins or DIP switches allow you to adjust the following settings:

- SCSI ID
- terminator power
- parity
- wait spin
- various diagnostics

These jumpers and DIP switches are located on the drive's controller. A drive controller is circuitry located on the housing unit of the drive that provides the hardware interface between the disk drive and the computer, sending and receiving signals. It interprets the computer's signals and controls the operations of the disk drive.



The “DIP” in DIP switches, stands for dual in-line package.



**Figure 3.** Cross section of an external (enclosed) hard drive

External components of a typical external hard drive include:

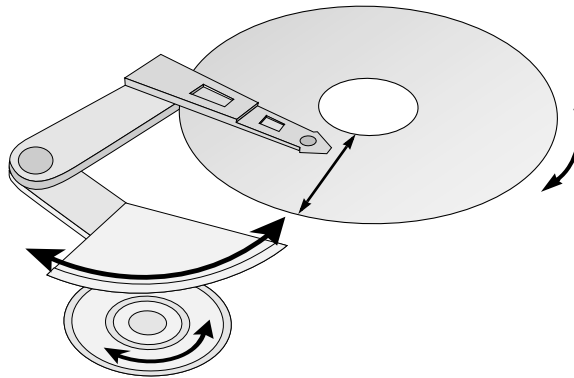
- chassis (also called casing box or enclosure)
- LED indicating that power is on
- LED indicating when the drive is actively transferring data (on most, but not all drives)
- power switch
- AC power jack
- SCSI ports (usually two)
- SCSI ID switch



Some drives require jumper pins or software to change the SCSI ID.

Head actuators

The read/write head is attached to an armature that is moved across the platter in precise incremental distances by mechanical devices called head actuators. The head actuator moves the head in a slight arcing motion across the surface of the platter. It uses the spinning of the platter in conjunction with the head's arcing movement to access off-center areas on a data track.



**Figure 4.** Stepper motor head actuator

Read/write heads are designed to detect and create magnetic domains on the drive's platters. A magnetic domain is the area on a platter that contains one bit of data. The most common type of read/write head is the inductive head. It consists of an iron core with 8 to 30 coil turns of wire banded around it. Current flowing through the coils of wire causes a magnetic field to flow through

a gap in the iron core. The nature of the magnetic field depends on the direction current is flowing in the coil:

- During a read operation, the head passes over a magnetic domain on the media. This causes the field to be inducted into the core and current to flow into the coil. Information is gathered from the media into the core and passed on to the read channel electronics.
- During a write operation, the drive supplies the current to the coil causing a field to be induced onto the media.

The width of the head gap in the iron core determines to a great extent how dense data is on the disk. The wider the gap, the wider the tracks will be and the less dense the data will be on the disk. A smaller gap allows the head to fly closer to the platter, increasing reliability and data pickup. Gap width determines track density in tracks per inch (TPI).

Most modern hard drives have TPI in the 3000-plus area. You can calculate the number of tracks per inch using the following formula (Figure 5):

$$\text{Tracks per inch (TPI)} = \frac{\text{Outer disk radius} - \text{Inner disk radius}}{\text{Track Width}}$$

**Figure 5.** Formula for calculating tracks per inch

Head disk assembly

The head disk assembly (HDA) must be sealed with very clean air inside. The HDA is not hermetically sealed; it needs air circulation to operate. But since the smallest particle would interfere with operation of the drive, most HDAs have absolute filters that prevent particles bigger than a certain size from contaminating the disk. These filters usually have a filtering ability of several tenths of a micron. At the same time, they allow outside air into the sealed area of the drive to equalize pressures and temperatures in accordance with changes in the computer's external environment.



**Air is pulled into the drive by the centrifugal action of the platter and the spindle.**

The head is mounted on a slider. The head/slider assembly is designed aerodynamically to enable it to fly across the disk surface on an air cushion created by the spinning disk.



A slider is a rigid block of material upon which a disk head is mounted. It provides lift, stability and mechanical strength to the head assembly. There are many types of sliders: A composite slider has a ceramic body and a thin core bonded with glass; a mini-composite slider is like a composite only 2/3 smaller; a monolithic slider is the oldest type of Winchester slider, made entirely of magnetic ferrite; a mini-monolithic slider is like a monolithic slider only 2/3 smaller; and a thin film slider, which is a silicon-based slider. In a thin film slider, the head, head core, and coil are all built into the slider.

Heads are primarily made by a thin film process. The process is similar to making chips: a silicon substrate is doped and etched to form the slider. Hundreds of heads are created on a single wafer.

Some heads can record data longitudinally. This means that the magnetic field lines that move from the gap to the platter travel in a direction that is parallel to the platter surface and the track's length.

Other heads record data in a perpendicular or vertical method. In this case, regions of magnetic domains have their magnetism pointing up or down, into or out of the surface. This type of recording allows for greater data densities.

With inductive heads, the higher the bit density, the smaller the signals induced by these bits. The smaller the signal, the harder it is to measure reliably. This increases the need for a highly sensitive head, capable of accurately locating and reading the weaker signal.

To address this problem, IBM developed the magneto-resistive (MR) head in the late 1980's. MR heads are thin conductive strips that detect magnetic domain transitions by measuring magnetic effects on the resistive element within the head. This element changes its resistance as its angle of magnetization changes. IBM first brought this technology to market in 1991 in a 1 GB 3.5-inch drive. It made possible data densities of over 1000 megabits per square inch, a 10 to 25 percent improvement over previous technology. Second generation MR heads doubled densities to over 2000 megabits per square inch.

MR technology has two major limitations that have prevented it from being utilized by more than a few of the latest high-end drives:

- MR heads only read data; drives still need an inductive write head.
- They're expensive; MR heads are double the price of inductive heads.

The next head technology to supersede MR is giant magnetoresistance (GMR). GMR allows for large changes in resistance even when its exposed to a very small magnetic field of bit transitions. It may permit magnetic recording in the tens of gigabits per square inch and data rates in the tens of megabytes per second. This new technology has sensitivity in the greater-than 3000 microvolt per micron of track width range. This should continue the 60 percent per year growth rate of data density.



## Access time and seek time

$$\begin{array}{rcccccc} \text{Seek Time} & + & \text{Latency} & + & \text{Time to Read a Sector} & = & \text{Access Time} \\ 9 \text{ ms} & + & 6.7 \text{ ms} & + & 1 \text{ ms} & = & 16.7 \text{ ms} \end{array}$$

**Figure 6.** *Formula for determining access time*

Access time refers to the time it takes the read/write head to move back and forth in search of the appropriate platter and sector. Seek time is similar but involves finding a track rather than accessing data. Seek time is the time it takes for the read/write head to move back and forth before it locates the appropriate sector of information. Average seek time is the amount of time it takes to position the drive's heads on a randomly located place on the disk. Seek time usually runs in the 2 ms range. Seek time is a factor in the formula that determines access time. Other factors include:

- latency

Latency is the time it takes for a desired sector on the platter to pass underneath the head after head positioning is complete. For a platter spinning at the 7,200 RPM rate, average latency is 2.99 milliseconds. The faster the platter rotates, and the more read/write heads per platter, the smaller the latency and the better the performance.

- head switch time

Head switch time is the time it takes to switch between any two read/write heads. Head switch time runs in the 1 ms range.

- cylinder switch time

Cylinder switch time is the amount of time it takes to move from one track to another.

- command overhead

Command overhead is the time a controller needs to interpret and act upon a computer's command.

Access time equals latency plus seek time plus command overhead. Some operations do not include command overhead time in the equation, while others add data transfer rates into the equation.

## Heads and platters

In drives with more than one platter, the multiple armatures make up a comb-like structure whose "teeth"—the arms and heads—are interspersed with the platters. Most drives have two heads per armature (and thus per platter). In this scheme, one head is on top of the platter, the other below. Data is written

to and read from both sides. This allows the entire platter to fill with useful data. On drives with a dedicated servo positioning platter, the head for the servo platter is used to position the other heads.

**NOTE**



For more information on servo positioning, see “Servo positioning information” on page 37.

A drive with five platters would have 10 heads, with only one being used at any one time. There are special drives, such as the Seagate ST12450W, that utilize parallel transfers from two heads at the same time. This effectively doubles transfer rates but decreases data storage. A normal, transferable data sector is 512 bytes. In order for both heads to participate simultaneously in data transfer, each head handles half that load. Consequently, sectors need to be half their size on each platter to form a normal 512 byte data sector—storage capacity is subsequently reduced due to the extra error correction code and sector overhead information.

**NOTE**



For more information on error correction code, see “Error correction” on page 47.

### Double actuators

A few drives feature two actuators, positioned at opposite sides of a disk. This design was first seen on Conner’s Chinook in 1991. This scheme cuts the drive’s latency time in half. Drive latency is the time it takes for the spinning platter to bring around the desired platter location to where the read/write head can access it. You could write with one head and read with another. But because reading and writing are not simultaneous in non-multitasking operations, this design—although costly—offers no performance improvement in those applications. Typically, it’s cheaper to buy multiple drives.

**NOTE**

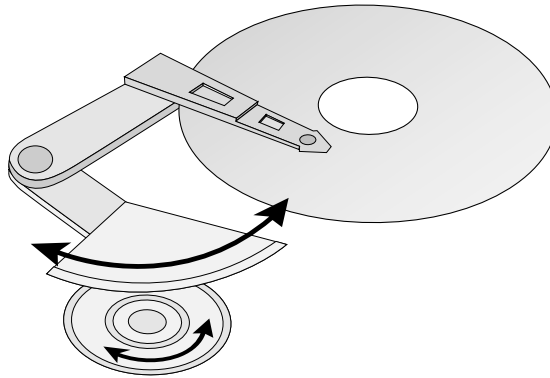


For more information on latency, see “Spinning ‘round” on page 39.

### Actuator movement

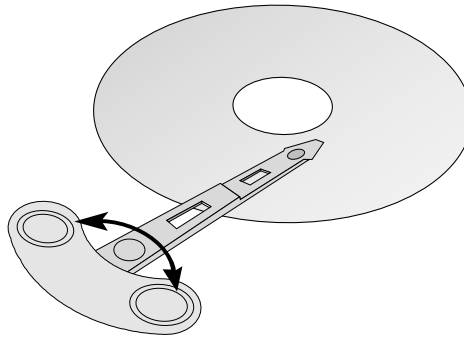
There are two methods for head actuator movement:

- stepper motor, a type of rotational pivot used in a floppy drive
- servo voice-coil actuator, which is a more efficient and accurate method



**Figure 7.** Stepper motor actuator

Stepper motors use a system somewhat like a car's transmission to convert an incremental rotary movement into linear travel. The motor rotates either direction a few degrees at a time. Connected to it is the stepper band, which converts that incremental rotary motion into linear movement, repositioning the armature and thus changing the read/write head's position over the platter. As the assembly ages, stepper motors will usually cause problems with precision, known as head drift. This is due to the unadjustable mechanical nature of the motor. Stepper motors went out of use in the early 90's.



**Figure 8.** Voice coil actuator

Voice coils, or servos, work like common audio speakers. The sound of a loudspeaker is determined by the strength of the current pumped through its electromagnet, which pulls on a diaphragm connected to the speaker's cone. In a hard disk drive, the current passes through a voice-coil electromagnet that pulls the armature toward it. The armature is held back by a spring that provides a counter-force to the magnet and automatically moves the head back when the current is decreased. The strength of the current going to the voice coil determines the position of the head over the platter, making it infinitely adjustable.



**Servo control is the process used in disk drives to regulate head positioning and seeking. It relies on “positioning data” that is either contained on a dedicated servo disk or embedded among data blocks on all disk surfaces.**

Voice coils provide an infinite degree of positioning control. This is superior to the stepper, whose accuracy is limited by its incremental rotational step. By moving the head in smaller increments, the voice coil actuator can take advantage of higher-density platters, which squeeze more tracks onto the same platter. They are also less susceptible to head drift. As the head assembly ages, the servo system can automatically compensate for the wear.

The voice coil system performs much faster than the old stepper motor. A large amount of current can be sent into the coils to push the head more quickly. With the stepper motor, the current is a fixed quantity.

Another characteristic of the voice-coil method—and another advantage it has over the stepper method—is that the head is usually “autoparking.” Autoparking helps to prevent head crashes. Upon power loss, the heads are automatically pulled by the spring to a safe position on the disk—the landing or

parking zone. Usually a capacitor is used to store extra charge, forcing the voice-coil to autopark onto the mechanical stop even if power is lost. Some stepper-motor drives come with an autoparking feature. This can be a function of the controller or part of the installation software.

### Servo positioning information

The slightest fluctuation in the electric current can cause the head to wander away from the center of the track. To prevent this, servo data is embedded on the platter between the tracks in the form of magnetic bursts known as embedded servo or wedged servo. Wedged servo was the first attempt at embedding servo information on the platter. It placed a single burst of servo position information on each disk. Because there is only one burst, the drive would have to wait a full rotation to get the information, slowing performance. Others employed doubled embedded servos, placing servo information at the beginning and middle of the sector.

Later designed drives employed an embedded servo where multiple servo bursts are present on each track, each in front of a sector. This allowed for even greater accuracy. When sensors on the head sense that the bursts are too strong, the controller knows that the head is wandering from the center of the track and adjusts the current accordingly.

Embedded servo tracks take up space on the platter and reduce its data storage capacity. Some high-capacity, multiple-platter drives utilize a dedicated servo surface, in which one side of one of the platters contains only servo data, which is used to guide the head. The head for that surface is used solely for positioning. Others use embedded servo information encoded within a normal data platter. Because all heads are attached to the same actuator, all of the heads will be aligned and all other surfaces can be used for data.

Some drives employ a hybrid servo system where there are dedicated servo platters as well as embedded servo information on each of the other drive platters. This ensures that the drive can make precise positioning changes during read and write operations. The disadvantage is that a great deal of capacity is wasted.

### Read/Write channel

After the read/write head is positioned over the data, a group of circuits known as the read/write channel actually transfers the data off the platter. These circuits read the sector header information to ensure that the data being read or written is the data that is desired. They also amplify signals to ensure they are strong enough to record information. These circuits must be extremely fast to handle the transitions between looking at sector information and reading or writing the data into the sector in the same rotation. These circuits are often the limiting factor in drive performance.

Disk platters are made in a variety of materials:

- aluminum
- ceramic
- glass

Glass platters have been used in 1.8-inch drives. They allow 20 to 30 percent greater density than metal platters and offer a smoother, more rigid surface so heads can fly lower. Most platters are made of finely machined aluminum. Aluminum is preferred because it is strong and highly pliable. This is ideal for creating thin platters. Aluminum does not expand much when it is heated.

A platter's structural integrity and weight are important, but what matters most is the coating applied to its surface. For forty years, ferric oxide ( $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ ) coatings have been used as the primary medium for data storage. In recent years, a variant using cobalt-nickel alloys has been used to improve densities and provide better reliability. If a floppy's surface looks rusty to you, it's because it's covered with rust-oxidized iron particles held in place with a binding agent (typically plastic). These are the particles that are magnetized by the magnetic head to represent the on (1) or off (0) patterns of data.

Magnetic recording is based on the fact that metals can be permanently magnetized by external magnetic fields. Areas saturated with magnetic charge are known as "domains." The magnetic head of the disk drive senses data by the amount of current induced in the head as it passes over the boundaries between domains and passes this on to read-channel electronics.



**A magnet is a metal that has been exposed to a magnetic field, causing the electrons in the metal to spin in a consistent direction. Electrons are theorized to spin in either a North-South or South-North orientation. Groups of atoms can be magnetized to align themselves in a particular direction.**

Much more difficult, but more rewarding, is the application of a chrome-like covering found on most late-model, high-speed, high-capacity hard drives. A pure metal film is plated onto an aluminum platter, either by vapor deposition or sputtering. The thin-film media of a plated surface, as it is called, is one-tenth as thick as the standard oxide coating. Because this surface does not have a binding agent mixed in, the magnetic particles are packed much more tightly, allowing as many as 80,000 bits per inch. Oxide coatings allow only 20,000 bits per inch.

The future promises more innovations in data storage media, such as the glass platters recently introduced in some 2.5-inch drives. Glass offers a smoother

surface and better rigidity than aluminum or ceramic. It is very useful for platters that spin faster than the standard 3,600 RPM of the 1980's.

## Spinning 'round

Platters are mounted on an axle called the spindle. A drive may contain more than one platter, yet all platters are mounted on a single spindle. The spindle usually rotates the disks in a counter-clockwise direction.

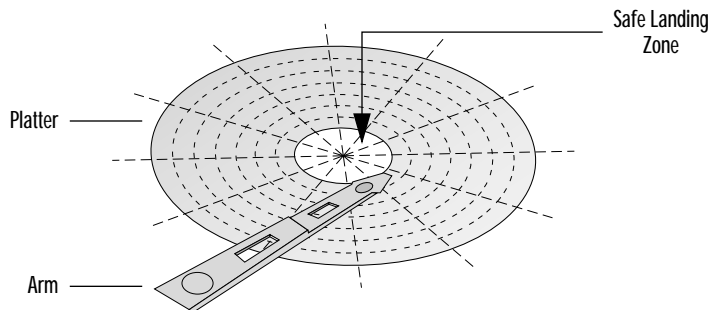
The spindle is turned by a brushless, direct-drive (no gears or belts), direct-current (DC) electric motor. This motor may be built into the spindle or may reside below it.



**The motor that resides below the spindle is called a pancake motor because of its flat shape.**

Depending on the specific drive, hard drive motors spin the disks at 5,400 RPM (which is typical), 7,200 RPM, or even 10,000 RPM. With higher spindle rates come higher noise and heat levels but also higher performance.

## Head parking



**Figure 9.** Safe landing zone for head parking

If a head were to physically contact a platter it could destroy data, remove magnetic particles from the disk surface, and cause irreparable damage.

While the platter is spinning, the read/write heads are kept off the platter by the air cushion the spinning creates. However, heads must be moved away from the data area of a platter when the hard drive is turned off. This process is called head parking. Portable and laptop computers also have a “sleep” mode that parks the head after a certain period of inactivity.



**This air cushion created by spinning is known as the Bernoulli Effect.**

A head is parked when it is moved over an area on the platter that is used only as a “parking space” or “landing zone.” This area is typically at the center of the platter near the spindle (Figure 9). Head parking avoids accidental contact of head and platter, and is particularly important if the drive is being moved.

Some drives park the heads entirely off the platters, preventing any chance of accidental contact from shock. Typically these drives also push a small wedge between the pairs of heads to keep them from slamming into each other.

Head parking only *reduces* the chances of the head contacting the platter. To *eliminate* the possibility of accidental contact, many newer drives feature autolocking. Autolocking physically locks a parked head over the landing zone, preventing any movement.

Many drives that use a stepper actuator need utility software, often provided by the manufacturer, to tell the controller to park the head on computer power-down. This is obviously not as safe as an automatic device built into the drive itself. Some stepper actuator drives come with an autopark mechanism built into the controller.



**Most hard disk drives manufactured since 1986 are autoparking.**

## Form Factor

---

Form factor is a fancy way of referring to the platter’s diameter. A hard drive with a form factor of 3.5 inches has one or more platters that are 3.5 inches in diameter. Standardized form factors allow drives to be installed on a wide variety of platforms with minimal changes.

The size of the entire housing unit, which also contains the mechanics and controller, is much larger than its form factor measurement. The housing unit or frame is the foundation to which all other parts are connected. This frame needs to be rigid so that components within the drive are not hurt on installation or during operation. Most housing units are made from aluminum alloys.

Technological refinements in disk capacity have reduced the number of platters needed in high-capacity drives. Half-height models (1.625-inches tall for 5.25-inch drives) require fewer platters, and take up less vertical space in the casing. One-third-height, low-profile drives (1-inch tall for 2.5- and 3.5-inch drives) are readily available. Laptop computers that need high-capacity storage can take advantage of the compact size of 2.5-inch hard drives.

The more common hard drive sizes at the end of 1996 include:

- full-height 5.25-inch drives with capacities of up to 23 GB
- half-height 3.5-inch drives with capacities of up to 10 GB



- one third-height 3.5-inch drives with capacities of up to 5 GB
- 2.5-inch drives with capacities of up to 3 GB

The trend has been to migrate most internal drives for Macintosh and PC to the 3.5 inch form-factor because of its price-per-megabyte advantages. Five-and-a-quarter-inch drives are used only for the highest capacity applications. Eight-inch drives are virtually extinct.



**The Macintosh II, Macintosh IIfx, Macintosh IIfx and some older PCs were built to accommodate internal 5.25-inch half-height drives if a user wished to install one.**

Smaller, 2.5-inch drives are gaining in popularity, primarily for laptops and notebooks. These 2.5-inch drives are available in a variety of heights from 19mm to 12.5mm. The most common size for external hard drives is 3.5 inches, although you can find 5.25-inch, 8-inch, and 14-inch drives in some mainframe or workstation applications.



**Figure 10.** A 2.5-inch drive

In 1996, JTS Corporation introduced a 3.0-inch form factor disk, suitable for notebook computers. Three-inch platters have 70 percent more surface area than 2.5-inch platters, allowing them to hold more data.

Generally, the trend in the marketplace is toward smaller and smaller drives. Higher densities make it possible to develop small, high-volume platters. Platters have gone from 14-inch to 8-inch to 5.25-inch to 3.5-inch to 2.5-inch (and back up to 3.0-inch, in the instance of drives created for notebooks). Even smaller 1.8-inch drives have been developed for use in personal digital assistant, palmtop, or laptop computers. The 1.8-inch drives typically come in a PCMCIA type II or III credit-card sized form factor. Even smaller 1.3-inch drives were made at one time but proved unpopular. The smaller form factor drives were not popular because of their high cost per megabyte.



**PCMCIA stands for Personal Computer Memory Card International Association. It's a joint effort of various special interest groups aimed at setting a standard for memory cards used in PCs. PCMCIA cards add improved computer memory capacity or enhance connectivity to external networks and services.**

Because storage capacity is the paramount concern of most users, the actual size of a drive is important to consider only when buying an internal drive—it has to fit inside the computer's casing. You are limited to a certain drive size that may not offer the capacity and performance you want. You should worry about the dimensions of a large external drive only if you have limited space or you want your computer system to be portable.



**Look out for Bigfoot! In early 1996, Quantum Corporation announced the release of a low-cost, 5.25-inch form factor drive, called Bigfoot, that can be plugged into a bay used for a CD-ROM. The larger form factor is Quantum's way of dealing with the constant market demand for increased storage—up until Bigfoot, manufacturers increased storage by increasing areal density on a disk or adding more disks and heads. Quantum anticipates that Bigfoot will support only Fast ATA-2, spin at 3,600 RPM, and have a 15.5 ms access time.**

In selecting a drive there are other considerations beyond the drive's physical dimensions. Smaller drives cost more per megabyte than full-size drives and, despite their denser platters, do not deliver better performance. Instead, they may sometimes prove to be both slower and less accurate, as the heads have to move more often and there is less room on the controller for a memory cache or other performance-enhancing options.

**NOTE**



**For more information on caching, see “Caching” on page 52.**

Another disadvantage to internal drives is they use the computer's own power supply. This may adversely affect the computer, particularly if it is a “loaded” machine. An external disk drive avoids this problem by using its own power supply, allowing it to be easily moved from one computer to another.



**An example of a “loaded” machine is a computer that has many internal devices and expansion cards, such as an accelerator or graphics card. These also consume power from the computer's**

internal transformer and generate heat, reducing the efficiency of the computer's overall operation.

## Operations

---

### Formatting

Before a hard disk can be written to, it must be formatted. Formatting's basic and critical function is to lay down tracks and sectors.

Tracks are the invisible concentric circles of magnetic "grooves" within which data is physically stored on the platter. Sectors are subdivisions of tracks and are usually defined to contain exactly 4,096 bits of data (that is, 512 bytes times eight bits per byte). Besides the 512 bytes (or more) of data, a typical disk sector contains the following information:

- synchronization information
- defective sector flag
- sector header information
- sector header CRC (cyclic redundancy check)
- intrasector gap (separates the sector ID information from the data track)
- error correcting code (ECC)
- intersector gap (separates the preceding sector from the next sector)

There is a lot of information in a sector. The drive needs it for housekeeping. It is not accessible to the user. Some hard drive manufacturers factor these housekeeping bytes into total capacity, so the drive capacity available to the consumer is actually less than the stated capacity of the drive.

IBM has developed a technique, known as NO-ID sector format, that reduces this overhead, resulting in capacity increases of up to 10 percent. It uses the servo control system to locate physical sectors and a defect map in RAM to find logical sectors.

Formatting specifies alternate sectors, also called spares. The controller will utilize a spare while formatting when the read/write head encounters a bad, or corrupted, data block on the platter.



**Data blocks are the smallest chunk of memory accessed or transferred by the disk drive. They are usually 512 bytes, although they can be multiples of 512 bytes.**

To support larger logical block sizes, drives automatically block and deblock physical sectors in the current block size. A data block allocated on the spare sector will correspond to the now unusable data block. The number of spares

per track is configurable. It's possible to eliminate spares altogether. This frees up that sector for storage. However, we recommend having at least one spare per track. Typically, one spare is the default setting of a preformatted drive.

Drives usually keep a lookup table of spares in their local RAM. Consequently, the number of spares that can be handled is fixed, limited by the size of this RAM.

By putting tracks and sectors in place, formatting sets up the hard drive's optimal organizational structure. It assigns logical data blocks to physical areas on the platter, skips over any defective areas it encounters, and keeps a grown defects list of the bad areas so that the controller knows not to write data to them.



**“Logical” is used to distinguish an abstract from a physical representation. Data is not physical; its representation is made physical via the read/write head magnetizing portions of the platter into recognizable patterns. For more information on logical blocks, logical units, and logical unit numbers, see Chapter 5, “All About SCSI.”**

Assigning logical blocks to physical sectors maximizes the drive's ability to access information via interleaving, optimal block size, and other software configurable aspects of the hard drive's operation.



Interleaving is discussed in “Interleaving” on page 48.

## Encoding

Once you have a fully functioning hard drive with all components cooperating, how does your computer store information on it? And how does it find and read this data after it is translated into magnetic patterns?

Information is not written as one contiguous stream in each track, but is broken up among sectors. The read/write head dips in and out of the sectors to read and write data as needed.

Encoding enables the head to read and write data on a moving target in fractions of a second, and to access that data again just as quickly. Encoding refers to two things:

- the protocol of laying down data as a sequence of on's and off's
- the process that lets the drive head constantly monitor its own position along a track

You might think of encoding as the digital equivalent of putting sprocket holes in a film strip. As the number of digital sprockets are tallied, an accurate measure of how far the head has moved may be determined by equating time with distance. This is possible because the speed of a platter's rotation is a

known value. If one value—timing—is known, the crucial value—location—can also be determined.

### Variable zone recording

The outer tracks of a platter are of greater circumference and therefore physically longer than the inner tracks. Consequently, the outer tracks offer more real estate for data storage. In IDE and SCSI storage devices, controllers can take advantage of the outer tracks' greater storage capacity in a process called variable zone recording. Variable zone recording keeps data density constant throughout the disk by increasing the number of sectors on longer outer tracks. This is possible because data is accessed at a high-level by specifying a block number and not cylinder, head, sector.



**In pre-IDE/SCSI drives, such as ST-506 drives, all tracks are typically assigned the same capacity.**

With variable zone recording, tracks are grouped into zones. The tracks in each zone are allotted a specific number of sectors. The outer-zone tracks receive a higher number of sectors than the tracks in the inner zones. In addition to increasing the capacity of the platter, zone sectoring reduces access time and increases transfer rates because the head covers less ground to access the same amount of information on the platter.

The number of zones and the number of sectors per zone vary according to the size of the platter. Generally, drives with smaller form factors have fewer zones, but other considerations, including the type of media used and how it was formatted, also affect this.

### Encoding processes

On a platter spinning at 7,200 RPM, a read/write head has barely one-thousandth of a second to read a sector of information. At this speed, and with all this informational ground to cover, the head could easily lose its place. Encoding processes were developed to keep track of the head's location on the disk.



**Advanced encoding methods also enable greater data densities without requiring more space.**

Timing mechanisms correlate a platter's constant speed with the distance traveled to yield a precise calculation of the head's position over the platter.

#### *Frequency Modulation (FM)*

Frequency modulation was the first timing mechanism. Every other magnetic domain represented a clock pulse. This method had the disadvantage of using half of a disk's storage capacity just for the timing information.

### *Modified Frequency Modulation (MFM)*

Modified frequency modulation solved this problem by moving the timing information onto its own track. During the original low-level formatting process of an MFM drive, the synchronization bytes are added to the data sectors. Synchronization bytes are magnetic data that marks location and time. Because MFM results in twice as much data storage as the original FM, it is also known as double-density recording.

### *Run Length Limited (RLL)*

Run Length Limited (RLL) encoding was borrowed from the world of mainframe computers. It increased drive storage capacity beyond MFM.

As you might guess with a concept borrowed from mainframes, the theory behind RLL is more complicated than any normal computer user needs to know. Basically, RLL uses only a few selected optimal bit patterns, determined from magnetic flux changes in storage media. This makes it possible for RLL to use less disk space than MFM to store a bit. It actually uses smaller magnetic domains, or “bit cells.” The read/write head of a specialized RLL controller can create bit cells one-third smaller than those used with MFM encoding. This requires a drive with a more accurate read/write head and higher density (or thinner) tracks. RLL also uses a special code that can read 16-bit patterns of information, rather than the eight bits used by MFM. Some MFM drives can use RLL encoding and controllers, but it is not advisable on older drives.

There are several types of RLL codes. They distinguish themselves from each other by the number of zero bits each can store as a consecutive string before inserting a one bit.



**Bit** is a contraction formed of “binary” and “digit.” All computer information is represented as a unique combination of the binary digits 0 and 1, which are also called “ons” and “offs.”

- 2,7 RLL allows from two to seven consecutive zero bits. This results in a 50 percent increase in drive capacity over standard MFM.
- 3,9 RLL allows from three to nine consecutive zero bits. This method, also called Advanced Run Length Limited (ARLL), results in a 100 percent increase in drive capacity over standard MFM.
- 0,4,4 RLL allows consecutive one bits in a data stream. There can be up to four zeros between ones in certain data sequences. This allows a 25 percent or more increase in capacity over 3,9 RLL encoding.

## Data detection

Data is detected in hard drives typically with a technique known as peak detection. Peak detection has been used for data detection since the 1960s. It involves detecting data at high speeds by using a data-encoding method that spaces the signal during reads. The analog detection circuits can then scan each peak in series. The problem with this encoding scheme is that it generates a lot of overhead, slowing performance.

A newer technique is known as partial response maximum likelihood (PRML). This began to appear in drives in 1990. Instead of spacing out analog peaks as in peak detection, digital filtering is used to compensate for signal overlap. After filtering, the scheme identifies what are the likeliest sequence of data bits written to the media. This scheme still uses RLL encoding but can utilize advanced (0,4,4) encoding for greater density. The digital ones can take place without all the digital zero spacers. A 25 percent or better improvement in bit density can be achieved. Transfer rates increase by 25 to 50 percent. PRML causes larger errors, so error correction code needs to be longer (144-bit) and faster on these drives.

Extended PRML (EPRML) offers read channels with refined equalization to achieve 10 percent or better gains in areal density over PRML. EPRML began to appear in drives in 1996.

## Error correction

Data stored on platters inevitably develops errors. Drive manufacturers have devised effective techniques that minimize the possibility of data loss. One of these techniques is error correcting codes (ECC), which store additional check information at the end of each data block. These extra bytes are used to verify the integrity of the block and to correct for minor errors.

Each hard drive manufacturing company uses its own proprietary ECC software technique. Many drives can correct an error burst up to 22 bits long by using 11 bytes of ECC data per 512-byte block. More advanced drives can correct even more bits per burst. These ECC data bytes are read when using Read/Write Long commands on IDE and SCSI drives. All this error correction is transparent to the user and happens internally in the drive. Bits can be set in Mode Page 1 of SCSI drives, to alert the driver that ECC was needed to correct data flaws.

### NOTE

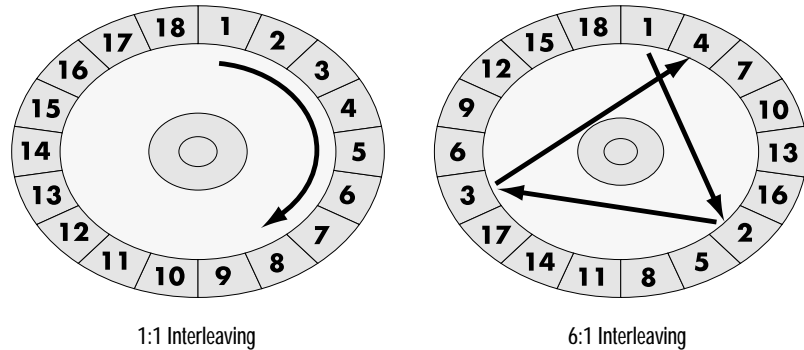


**You can learn more about mode pages in Chapter 5, “All About SCSI.”**

When you hear drive heads doing a hard seek (a hard seek usually makes a cha-chunking noise), it's probably because retries are occurring. Retries cause the head to seek back to track zero and retry the data access. A drive will try

this multiple times. The number of times is defined in a SCSI drive's Mode Page 1 settings. If you hear the cha-chunking noise, you probably should back up all your data and test the drive's media for defects.

## Interleaving



**Figure 11.** Examples of 1:1 and 6:1 interleaving

The central processing unit (CPU) of some computers can't handle data as fast as the hard drive controller can access the data on the spinning platter. By the time the CPU digests the information that the head has just read from one sector and orders the head to access the next sector's information, that second sector on the spinning disk may have already passed by. To read it, the head must wait a full platter rotation for that sector to once again pass beneath it.

A hard drive's interleaving, set during low-level formatting, overcomes the CPU's slower response capability by matching data transfer rates between the read/write head and the Input/Output (I/O) port of the computer.

Interleaving describes how sectors are arranged on the platter so the head can read them in the fastest possible sequential order. The information allotted to ordered sectors does not follow the sectors' sequential numerical order. Information is placed on sectors that are not physically contiguous, so the head doesn't have to wait a full rotation for a missed sector to come by again.

On faster machines, a smaller interleave can be accommodated. Nowadays, a 1:1 interleave factor is fairly standard (Figure 11).

- A 1:1 interleave (actually contiguous sectors with no interleave) provides the fastest data access on faster machines, such as the Macintosh II family or newer or 80386/20, 80486, and Pentium and Power PCs.
- A 2:1 interleave factor is optimal on the Macintosh SE or 80286/10 or faster machines.

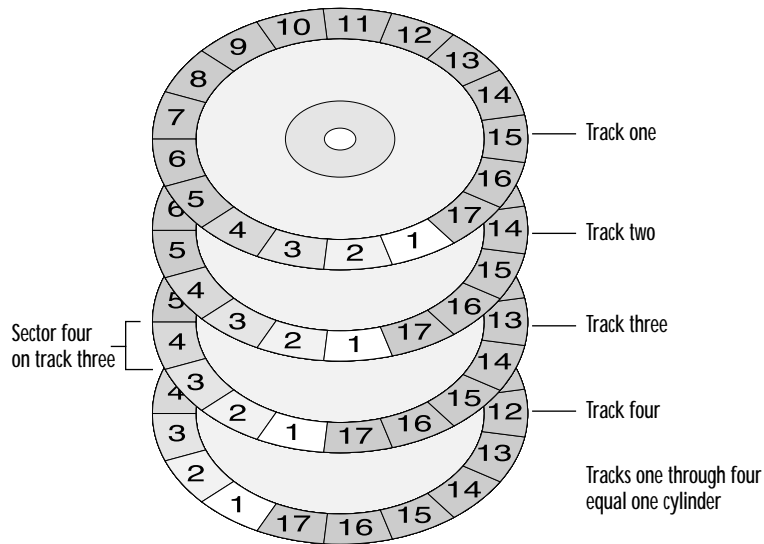


- A 3:1 interleave factor is optimal on the Macintosh Plus or 8086 or 80286/6 machines.

Interleaving to optimize performance became such a big issue on PCs that several programs, such as SpinRite™, were written to re-interleave drives without losing data.

With interleaving, what is optimal depends on whether the drive has a track buffer. A track buffer stores the contents of an entire track that passes under a head even if the I/O request isn't for the entire range. Early ST506 and ESDI drives had track buffers on the controller card, while modern IDE and SCSI drives have them on the drive itself. A 1:1 interleave is supported on all computers for drives with track buffers. Most modern drives (those produced after 1994) actually ignore the interleave value specified during a format and always use 1:1.

### Sector skew



**Figure 12.** Sector skew offset

Sector skew improves data access by optimizing the placement of information on adjacent tracks, in much the same way interleaving optimizes head movement within a track. It does this by taking into account the time it takes the head to move to another track and the distance a sector will travel in that time (due to the platter's rotational speed), and then offsetting the sector numbering on the next track according to those calculations.

Suppose the read/write head has just finished writing to the last sector on one track. Given a 1:1 interleave, the head is ready to write to the first sector of the next track. If this takes too long on a revolution of the disk, the head will arrive too late in spite of the interleaving. To solve this, the numbering for the sectors of the next track is offset by one or more positions. This ensures that when the head travels to the track, the correct sector has not already passed.

Figure 12 shows a typical four-platter hard drive with a sector skew. Tracks are laid down in a cylindrical order on multi-platter hard drives. The first platter holds the first track, the second platter holds the next, and so on down the cylinder.

The concept can also be applied to a controller accessing another platter in the drive, with a different read/write head. The second platter would be skewed as many sectors as necessary to ensure that the proper sector is at the head when the controller is ready to access that platter.

## Data transfer rates

Data transfer rates are described in megabytes, megabits, or megahertz (millions of bits) per second. Data transfer rates are determined by the density of data on the platter and how fast that data can be transferred to the host computer. The read channel on the head and the host interface to the computer are the biggest factors limiting data transfer performance. Read channels are being improved, as are links between read channels and controllers.

The sustained data transfer rate is not affected by the host interface. Sustained data transfer rate is the average rate at which a drive can transfer data. Sustained transfer is produced by averaging because most drives have data densities that vary according to where data is located on the disk. Tracks toward the inner perimeter hold less data than tracks on the outer perimeter. A typical drive with 3200 tracks per inch has 36,352 to 57,856 bytes per track.

The sustained data transfer rate on a hard drive has lagged behind the host interface data transfer rate, and will probably continue to do so for the foreseeable future.

Table 1 illustrates operational speeds and data densities typical in 1996:

**Table 1.** *Typical operational speeds and data density in 1996*

Category	Description
Speed	7200 rotations per minute (RPM) ÷ 60 seconds = 120 revolutions per second
Average Formatted Track Capacity	45,000 bytes

**Table 1.** Typical operational speeds and data density in 1996 (Continued)

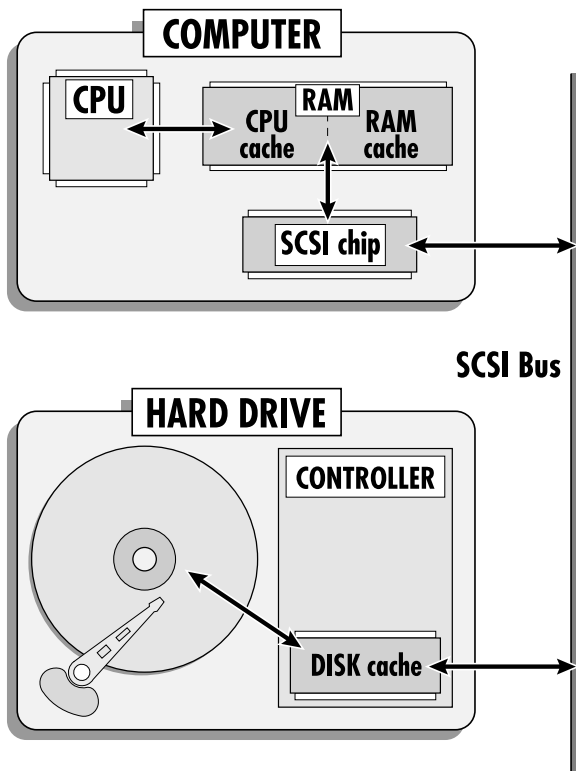
Category	Description
Average Sustained Data Transfer Rate	5.15 MB/s (more accurately from 4.16 to 6.59 MB/s)
To/From Host	40 MB/s burst (this is on an Ultra SCSI device)

Transfer rates have not kept up with the fast pace set by CPU performance. This is illustrated in Table 2.

**Table 2.** Comparison of transfer rates and CPU speeds

Year	Transfer rates	CPU performance	Improvement ratio
1984	1 MB/s (ST225N)	0.5 MIPS (68000, 8086)	2:1
1990	3 MB/s (3105S)	50 MIPS (68040, 80386)	1:16.6
1995	8 MB/s (ST12450W)	200 MIPS (Power PC 604, Pentium Pro)	1:25

Disk performance appears to be improving at a rate of 20 to 30 percent a year. Conversely, CPU performance has improved 200 times in 11 years. The disk performance bottleneck has slowed total computer system performance growth.



**Figure 13.** Data flow in memory caches

Caching is a popular method of accelerating operations by temporarily storing frequently accessed data on an intermediate medium that is faster than the source medium. Caching can improve the real performance of many diverse operations within the computer.

- Disk data can be cached into RAM.
- CD-ROM data can be cached onto hard disks and/or into RAM.

Disk caching minimizes overhead and access time while maximizing transfer rate in data retrieval by storing “popular,” or likely to be used, information where it can be accessed quickly.



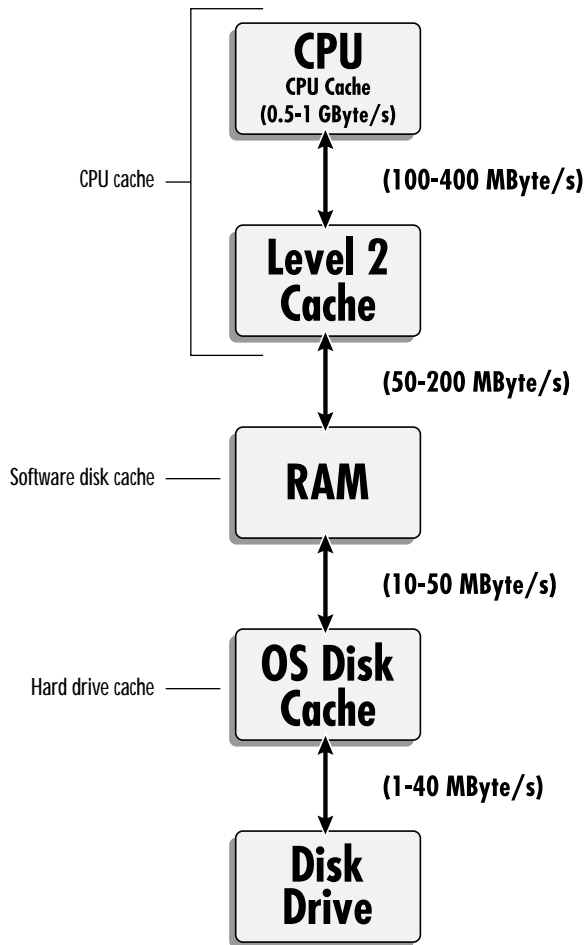
**Overhead is the operational delay incurred during command execution; the SCSI bus is the main culprit. When data is requested by the CPU, the request must go through the SCSI call chain, wait for the bus, and wait for the drive’s head to locate the data. Access time is seek time, plus**

latency, plus the time it takes the head to read a sector. For more information about the SCSI call chain, see Chapter 5, “All About SCSI.”

By storing recently used data in cache, a CPU request for this data will be served more quickly because it need not cause an actual transfer off the disk.

There are three common types of cache present in most computers (Figure 14):

- CPU cache resides on or near the CPU.
- Software disk cache resides in the CPU’s RAM.
- Hard drive cache resides on the hard drive’s controller board.



**Figure 14.** Data transfer rates increase the closer cache is to the CPU

The closer the information is to the CPU, the more quickly it can be accessed:

- Data stored in RAM is the closest (CPU and software disk cache).
- Data stored in the disk controller's RAM is farther away (hard disk's cache); access to the hard disk cache is slower than access to RAM cache, mostly due to data transfer on the SCSI bus.
- Data stored on the disk itself is the farthest away. In addition to the time needed to send the information on the SCSI bus, the access time and data transfer rates of the hard drive itself take a toll.

#### CPU cache

Cache in or external to the CPU can hold a part of a program or data so that it may be accessed quickly while the CPU is executing the program. CPU cache is fairly small because it is located in or near the CPU, where real estate is scarce and costs are high. CPU caches are constructed with expensive high-speed memory, so typically they are limited in size to about 4 to 256 KB.

Most modern high-speed processors have secondary cache external to the CPU to speed up main memory performance. Cache that is external to the CPU is also known as Level 2 cache. Level 2 caches range in size from 256 to 1024 KB. Typically they are constructed of high-performance sub-10 ns static RAM cache chips.

#### Software disk cache

Software disk cache, used for storing the most frequently accessed disk information, speeds data retrieval but limits the amount of RAM available for the program itself. Software disk cache on the computer is usually configurable. Typically it can be adjusted in size and enabled or disabled. It can also be increased through the installation of additional memory.

The amount of RAM you should set aside for the software disk cache depends on several considerations:

- **How much RAM is available?**

The smallest software disk cache setting for System 7.5 on the Macintosh is 32 KB. If extra memory is available, set the RAM cache to a higher value. Apple has recommended 32 KB of cache per megabyte of RAM in the machine. The best way to find the optimum value is to run applications with the RAM cache at different settings. Start with 96 KB and increase it until performance is maximized. The optimum value will be the one that results in the fastest data access while maintaining enough RAM to run the program.

- **How much is needed to run an application?**

There is also a diminishing return with increasing cache size. As more and more memory is allocated for the cache, more and more overhead is required to maintain the cache. Applications such as color publishing stream large amounts of data, so set the software disk cache to a small number like 32 or 64 KB for these applications. With applications such as digital video, performance can suffer when you use very small caches. Set a maximum size of 256 KB. Avoid virtual memory whenever possible.

- **What sort of application is being run?**

Some programs make better use of a software disk cache than others. A word processing program loads files only as it needs them and repeatedly uses the data. Here, a software disk cache would almost certainly speed up data transfer. Spreadsheet programs usually load the entire spreadsheet at once, so a software disk cache is of little use.

Software disk caches help minimize IDE or SCSI bus traffic by servicing I/O requests within the computer itself.

Microsoft Windows for Workgroups 3.11™ users should enable 32-bit file access, which handles disk caching for Windows®. Users with at least 16 MB of RAM will be advised by the operating system to use 4 MB for a disk cache. Previous versions of Windows 3.1 utilize caching loaded by DOS's SMARTdrive utility program. SMARTdrive is a real mode disk cache, so it does not greatly accelerate Windows operations. Windows 95® and NT™ automatically manage the size of the disk cache and dynamically size it depending on load.



**Windows 95 also lets you control read-ahead cache size.**

### Hard drive cache

Hard drive cache, located on the controller board, is used to store the most recently requested disk information or anticipated data. Although it is slower than RAM cache, it has the advantage of freeing up the computer's RAM for running programs. Hard disk cache is typically 256 KB to 1024 KB. Some drives have caches that are configurable using commercial disk utility software. Configurable parameters typically include:

- enable/disable hard disk cache
- prefetch size
- write cache enable
- buffer size (See "Track buffering" below.)
- number of segments

Most caches can be divided into memory segments. Segmenting a cache is particularly useful in that it allows for organizing cache information

according to the way you use your system. For example, you can segment a cache in two: one for an application, one for an application's data files. A single segment would only allow one area to be cached at a time. Some caching algorithms vary the number of cache segments to adapt to changing conditions.

### Track buffering

Track buffering takes advantage of the principle of locality. When data is requested from a particular sector, studies have proved an 80 percent likelihood that the CPU will soon be asking for information located in adjacent sectors. In anticipation, the controller will read the entire track and store it in its RAM. This full track read-ahead buffer speeds up information retrieval for almost all applications, although there are exceptions. If an application uses many small data transfers from various locations on the platter, as do database programs, having the controller read too far ahead may actually slow down the process; it will be reading and storing too much information that will never be requested by the program.

If a track buffer is not present, a program reading sequential sectors on the disk will have to wait an entire revolution for each successive sector access.

### Prefetch

Prefetch, or Read Look-Ahead, is similar to buffering, except it can read ahead to the next track. These larger reads get more data ready for the CPU's next request, thus speeding up access time. The parameters controlling prefetch on many drives can be customized to maximize performance, including the number of sectors it will prefetch.

### Read caching

Read caching utilizes more RAM more efficiently than track buffering. Usually a system has enough RAM to store several tracks of data. Each time a disk request is made, the cache algorithm checks to see if it's in RAM cache. If the data is in RAM cache, it is returned right away. If the data is not in RAM cache, it is read from disk, copied to the cache, and transferred to the host. This continues until the cache is full. When it is full, there are different methods of selecting which data should be replaced as new data is added:

- a random entry
- the least recently used
- the oldest entry

A variant to read cache is read ahead cache, where an entire track of data is read and stored in cache when a single sector of that track is requested (as with track buffering). All further transfers within the track come from cache.



## Write caching

In write caching, the controller:

- transfers a write request to its own cache
- tells the CPU that the task is complete
- completes the write at a later time

This speeds operations because, ordinarily, the controller would not tell the CPU it had finished the command until it actually had, and the CPU would have to wait for notification before going on to the next command.

Write caching is a recent advance in improving disk performance. It holds great promise for speeding random small-chunk writes. For example, assume the following average times to complete a 4 KB random write:

Issuing the command (command overhead)	1 millisecond (ms)
Data transfer	1 ms
Seek time	14 ms
Latency	8.3 ms
Issuing a Command Complete message	1 ms
<hr/>	
Total transfer time	25.3 ms

**Figure 15.** Time it takes to complete a 4 KB random write

With write caching, the CPU saves 22.3 ms by not being affected by latency and seek time. The total time spent is three ms. The downside is that information can be lost if there is a power off before data has been written to disk. Drivers should flush the cache when the computer is shutting down. An uninterruptible power supply (UPS) is vital when you use write caching.



**A UPS is an intermediary device connected to a power source and a computer. When there is a power failure, the UPS uses a battery and power circuits to produce the voltage required to keep the computer running. Depending upon the size of the battery and the power requirements of the computer, a UPS can last anywhere from a few minutes to several hours.**

Multiple sectors of data could also be combined into a single write, saving lots of latency. Writes could also be sorted into ascending or descending order and performed in the fastest way possible.

A safer variation is the write-through cache, where data destined for the drive is written to the disk but also stored in the cache. If this data is needed again, it can be read from the cache instead of going to disk. This is often combined with read caching to accelerate disk performance.

Write caching is present in most modern hard drives and also in many operating systems. SMARTdrive 4.1 and newer, included with DOS 6, includes both read and write caching. Each of which can be configured or disabled.

#### Hardware caching controllers

Some vendors offer hardware-based caching disk controllers that combine an IDE or SCSI interface with lots of RAM slots for cache. They can be costly because you must populate them with expensive RAM. This RAM is dedicated to the controller and cannot be used by your applications. Disk caching is built into most operating systems, and an additional cache could get in the way. It is also very difficult to design a general cache algorithm that is good for a variety of uses. Cached data from RAM on the computer also arrives much faster than cached data stored on a caching disk controller expansion card.

#### RAM drives

The ultimate hard drive would be made up entirely of instant-access RAM. However, this would be prohibitively expensive, extremely volatile, and would need a back-up power source, such as a battery. There are many PCMCIA cards designed to store data by using nonvolatile flash memory chips. At one time, people believed that this type of storage would replace hard drives; but high cost prevented this. Flash memory costs about 50 times more than a typical 2.5-inch hard drive. The drives write data about five times slower than they read data. They are available only in very small capacities.

#### NOTE



For more information about PCMCIA cards, see Chapter 8, “All About Expansion Buses.”

#### Thermal recalibration

Many hard drives need to recalibrate their heads every couple of minutes to compensate for heat buildup that causes components to expand and contract. This thermal recalibration (t-cal) doesn't affect the drive's normal operations but can adversely affect applications such as audio or video digitization and playback. T-cal can last hundreds of milliseconds. If a drive cannot service a request during a t-cal, a dropout of video or audio could occur.

An AV-ready drive needs to provide an uninterrupted sustained data transfer rate. Modern drives, or ones with an AV designation, are designed to overcome this limitation by using special algorithms to defer t-cal until there is no activity or by performing t-cal one head at a time. Drives with embedded servo also avoid the need for t-cal.



**Error-correction can cause AV problems. Handling it in the drive hardware helps avoid them.**

## Drivers

The final piece in the Operations puzzle is the device driver. The driver translates computer operating system requests into the SCSI or IDE commands that tell the drive how best to carry out the computer's orders.

**NOTE**

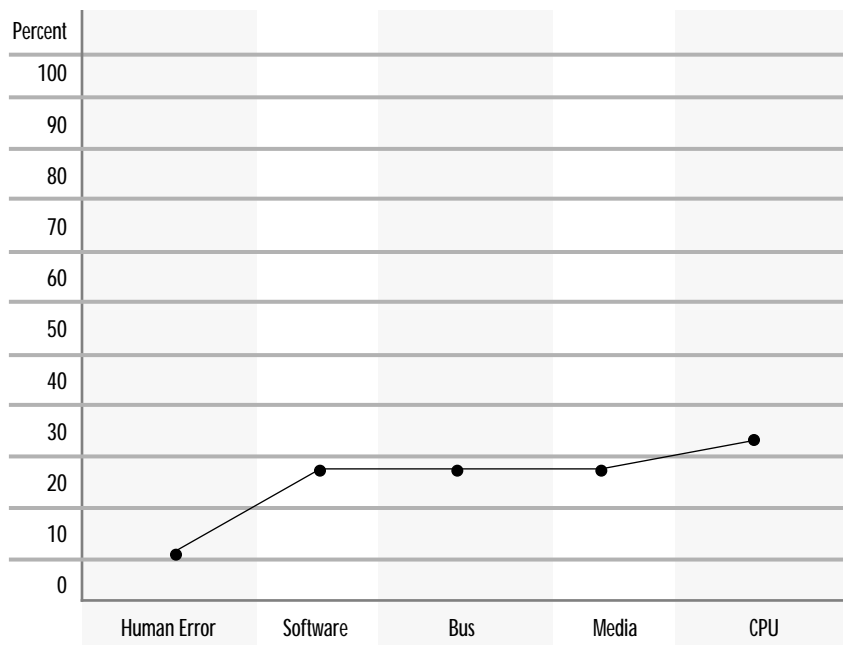


For more information about drivers, see “Device drivers” on page 181.

## When Things Go Wrong

Despite all the excellent engineering that we've just described, hard drives can fail. When the drive stops working it's called a “crash.” Although a crash can be the result of software problems, it may also be due to a mechanical problem in the drive itself. Keep in mind that the majority of failures are due to really minor glitches. A minor change in a disk sector could render your entire machine useless. When things go wrong, try not to assume the worst.

Common causes of failure are discussed below. Figure 16 provides an overview of the most frequent causes of system failure.



**Figure 16.** Most frequent causes of system failure

## Software errors

In the case of software errors, the drive is still functioning and the data can probably be rescued using a file recovery program, such as Norton Utilities. The two most common causes of software errors are:

- poorly written software
- viruses

To reduce the number of possible causes for error, disable as much third-party hardware and software as possible. This will allow you and the various companies' technical support departments to diagnose the problem faster.

Many things can go wrong, but what's important is that you are alert to the warning signals, such as:

- Upon boot-up, the screen displays some sort of visual message, such as a blinking question mark (PC) or a Sad Mac (Macintosh), or a dialog box with an error message (Macintosh and PCs).
- Upon boot-up, the computer doesn't recognize a disk and asks if you want to initialize it or says the operating system is missing (Macintosh and PCs).



**Don't choose to initialize. This will wipe out all data, applications, and anything else you had stored on your hard drive.**

- Upon boot-up, the disk does not mount, or crashes midway during boot (Macintosh and PCs).
- An application repeatedly crashes when launched (Macintosh and PCs).
- Opening a folder crashes the system (Macintosh and PCs).
- Copying a file crashes the system (Macintosh and PCs).
- Copying a file returns a write or read error (Macintosh and PCs).

See Chapter 10, "Troubleshooting," for some suggestions on what to do.

## Hardware errors

Hardware crashes, or hard crashes, come in as many varieties as there are parts in the hard disk drive; four are the most common:

- media errors
- controller damage
- head crashes
- spindle failure

## Media errors

Errors can result from bad sectors on the platter that are not successfully mapped out by the drive.

The disk will need to be tested to first find and then map out the bad blocks. If the corrupted information is in the directory, driver partition, or partition map, the drive will not know where to find the data stored on the platter. The disk will be unreadable and may have to be reformatted. Because there is limited physical damage to the platter or the hardware with media errors, much of the data is probably intact and can be recovered with a utility program.

Some formatting software allows you to configure bad-block mapping and reallocation. Drives usually maintain a fixed number of spare sectors on each track. If these are all used up, then they look to a cylinder-based spare. Operating systems, such as DOS, map out bad sectors when they are high-level formatting a drive or running a utility such as SCANDISK.



**If your system encounters a bad block, it is often best for you to perform a full backup, then reformat the drive.**

Look for programs that do a variety of tests to find disk problems. Sequential, data pattern, and butterfly tests are useful for finding media errors. Testing the RAM and controller on the drive are also useful tests.

## Controller damage

Controller damage occurs when one of the controller's parts—such as a chip or capacitor—fails to perform. All the data is intact, and there is no damage to the platter. Possible causes include a voltage spike, which could blow out a chip, and environmental damage due to extreme heat or cold. You'll need to send the drive to the manufacturer for repair.

## Head crashes

The typical, and most graphic, head-crash scenario is when platter wobble or a voltage drop causes the read/write head to contact the platter surface. Due to the platter's high speed and delicate surface, the head can plow through a lot of information very quickly. Several tracks could be destroyed in one crash. That data is lost forever. If the drive is still working, fragments of media can get between the head and the disk and cause further damage to the magnetic surface. If this happens, you need to replace the damaged head and platter. If you wish to recover the salvageable data, you would also need to pay for expensive data recovery.

## Spindle failure

The spindle is a sealed unit with lubricated bearings. It should not need any maintenance, yet approximately 15 percent of hard drives eventually fail when friction-produced heat burns away the lubrication. (When a manufacturer uses the wrong lubricant, or too much of it, it is said to cause a “stiction” problem.) The bearings grind against the spindle and its casing; it can slow down, or seize up and lock in place. You may notice a grinding noise when the drive is running, or a failure to spin up when the drive is turned on. If the disks are intact, they can be removed in a “clean room” and installed in a functioning drive. This service is very expensive.

## Stiction

Stiction is short for static friction. It happens when the heads of the drive are stuck to the platters of the drive. When you try to power up the drive, the heads cannot break free. Stiction is usually caused by improper lubricants on the drive platter.

## Temperature problems

Some drives develop problems only after a certain interval of power-on time. This usually happens when there might be a fan cooling problem with the subsystem or when there is an unreliable part on the disk controller. Many modern drives spin at 7200 RPM or faster and utilize many watts of power. They usually need forced air cooling to keep their operating temperature within design guidelines.

## Drives Don't Have to Die Quickly!

---

### Saving data

The safest approach to saving your data is to rely on data duplication, rather than data recovery. This means having all your essential data backed up on another storage device, so that it's ready to be placed either on the damaged drive when it's up and running again, or on a replacement drive.

Copying files over to floppies is the most popular method of backing up data. It's a good method, but other more reliable, more automatic, faster, and—unfortunately—more expensive methods exist for those who are serious about protecting their data.

Some users have come to rely on tape drives to do incremental backups; that is, a software utility reads whatever information has been added to the hard

drive during that work session, and copies it to a high-capacity, but slow, sequential access tape drive.

**NOTE**



See Chapter 4, “Other Types of Storage Devices,” for more information.

Incremental backups only back up files that have been changed since the last backup, so they occur quickly (although the first backup must be a full backup, which takes time). This technique can be used with a second hard drive or removable drive, either manually or with an automatic utility program.

Some users prefer differential backups. A differential backup is a combination of an initial full backup and subsequent backups of all files that have changed since the last full backup (not just the changed parts of those files). This allows for easier restoration of your drive to its original state.

Corporations typically have the means for centralized backup. They usually ask users to back up to a server or load a background agent that allows a central backup server to pull all the files that need to be backed up.

Whatever approach you take, try to automate the process so you do not have to remember to back up your data. You should back up as often as you feel comfortable. Most people back up at the end of every day, others back up once a week. Backup media should be stored in a safe place away from magnetic fields, liquids, smoke, and high temperatures. Make sure you keep some backups off-site, so natural disasters cannot wipe out all of your data. Also make sure you test your backups by restoring some of your backed up files. Its shocking how many times bugs in backup software crop up.

## Disk duplexing and disk mirroring

Disk duplexing and disk mirroring were developed to provide automatic backup for network servers—computers that store data for a large group of connected PCs. But the techniques are applicable to single-user data safety as well. Both methods are expensive because twice the number of drives is required to obtain the same capacity.

### Disk duplexing

Disk duplexing, as its name suggests, is using one drive to duplicate the read/write moves of another. This creates an identical copy of the original. This is accomplished through a dedicated set-up that has two drives and two separate drive interfaces and host adapters, each with its own power supply. Because the host computer has two separate SCSI ports—the standard port and usually a card-based controller board—there is minimal reduction in system performance. Data is both read from and written to both drives. When reading, the

data from the two drives may be compared to verify data integrity. If the main drive or controller fails for any reason, the second is activated automatically, and the user is notified of the failure. Using duplexed drives, in effect, puts one's data eggs into two baskets.

### Disk mirroring

In disk mirroring a single disk controller is connected to two drives. All controller activity is performed twice; first to one drive, then the other. If one drive fails, the other one takes over. Because data is read from one drive but written to both, there is no reduction of performance during read operations and about a 50 percent reduction during write operations. With mirroring, in contrast to duplexing, if the host adapter fails, the system will go down.

You still need to maintain backups when doing mirroring. You need to protect against theft, fire, or software problems.

### RAID, or Redundant Array of Independent Disks

RAID takes the concept of duplication one step further by linking a number of drives together. Many variations on this technique have been developed. Most of them use a “check disk,” which keeps information about the other linked drives so that data can be reconstructed in the event of drive failure.

**For detailed information on RAID, see Chapter 3, “RAID Technology.”**

### But When You Gotta Go ...

---

Unlike other parts of the computer, hard drives have many moving parts, making them more susceptible to failure. Components that fail often include the fan and the power supply. They fail because they include moving parts and operate at high temperatures. Unfortunately, all disks will eventually die—it's only a matter of time.

New techniques help predict when a drive is likely to die and provide early warning messages to users. Early warnings allow a user to back up data prior to a drive's failure. With drives getting larger and larger every year, this becomes increasingly important for keeping data safe. Telltale signs, such as many recoverable errors, many retries, or slowing performance, are monitored and reported.

Predictable failures are characterized by a slow degradation in an attribute over time due to component problems. Slow degradation allows the attribute to be monitored and a warning threshold level established.



Some attributes that could be monitored include:

- head flying height
- data throughput performance
- spin-up time
- re-allocated sector count
- seek error rate
- seek time performance
- spin try recount
- drive calibration retry count
- channel noise
- signal coherence
- signal amplitude
- excessive bad sectors
- excessive soft errors

IBM developed a technology known as Predictive Failure Analysis (PFA<sup>®</sup>) that measured several drive attributes, including head flight height, and provided a warning that a failure could occur.

Compaq developed a technology known as IntelliSafe<sup>™</sup> similar to PFA. It measured attributes and provided a threshold for warning levels. Compaq put this in the public domain in 1995. This led a variety of drive manufacturers to develop the SMART standard.

Self-Monitoring, Analysis and Reporting Technology (SMART) was developed to help predict reliability and provide early warnings to inevitable failures. SMART was designed to try to provide 24 hours of warning before drive failure. SMART technology can be extended to other devices such as tape and CD-ROM drives. SMART warnings require drives that support the protocol and driver software that monitors this vital information.

SMART is encompassed by the SFF-8035 standard for ATA/IDE drives, and the X3T10/94-190 document for SCSI devices.



**Not all failures are predictable. Backups are always necessary. Additionally, physical damage is expensive to repair, so practice basic maintenance and be aware of what can damage your drive. Drive failure can result from a number of easily-preventable factors.**

## Preventative measures

Table 3 lists and describes preventative measures you can take to prolong the life of your drive:

**Table 3.** *Prolonging disk life and maintaining data integrity*

Measure	Explanation
Backup	You must religiously back up the contents of your drive onto another storage medium, be it floppies, tape, or optical. This will insure you against loss of data due to hard disk crashes, accidental erasure, errant software or hardware, or viruses. Think about it this way: if your drive died today, would you be able to reconstruct its contents? Make sure you test some of your backups to ensure they are restorable.
Utility Software	In addition to backup software, you should own a disk recovery tool to repair disk problems. Most of these recovery packages include useful utilities to mirror directories, optimize your drive, and undelete files. It's handy to have a low-level disk utility program that can test data. Virus eradication software is very useful.
Emergency Boot Disk	Make an alternate bootable floppy, hard drive, or CD-ROM to use for startup in case your primary drive is damaged. Place important utility programs such as disk recovery tools and hard drive utilities on this emergency disk.
Dust Control	Dust control is one of the most important aspects of your drive's environment. A fleck of dust—even smoke particles—in the wrong place can crash your drive. Keep the your drive area as dust-free as possible, so no dust can block its air flow.
Surge Suppressor	Power spikes or surges can be minimized by a surge suppressor, a device that smooths the current sent to your drive and that will, when properly fused, shield it and the controller from a killer voltage spike. Voltage irregularities are commonplace—every time a refrigerator or other large electrical device comes on or off, for example—so a surge suppressor is a necessity.
UPS	You may wish to consider acquiring a UPS, or uninterruptible power supply, to allow you precious time to back-up your data in the event of a power outage. A typical UPS supplies 1,200 watts of power and should buy your system 30 minutes.
On/Off Policy	Some people think that turning your drive off at every opportunity will help prolong its life. That is a tough call: switching drives on and off causes more wear and tear; a drive draws the most current during spin-up, and the motor is under the greatest stress at that time. We think this is a good rule of thumb for most systems: shut it down if it's going to be unused for more than a couple of hours. Also don't power down then power up the drive right away. Give the drive a minute to settle. Make sure there is no disk activity when you shut down your computer.

**Table 3. Prolonging disk life and maintaining data integrity (Continued)**

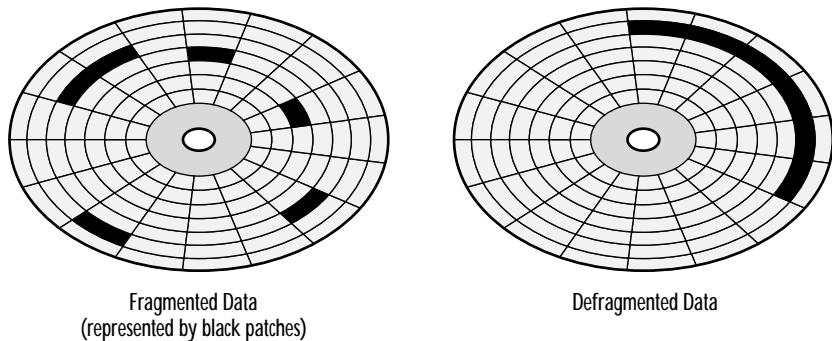
Measure	Explanation
Temperature Control	A good flow of air is crucial to avoid overheating the computer's or external drive's power supply. Because the components of hard drives operate at very small tolerances, it doesn't take much of a shift in temperature to throw things off kilter. To make matters worse, because the hard drive is a sealed unit, when heated it acts like a pressure cooker. To compensate for temperature changes, drives have auto-compensators that regularly conduct seek tests and adjust the movements of the head actuators accordingly. Be sure to keep your drive operating in a temperate environment: Most hard drives are rated for operation between 50° and 122° Fahrenheit, 8 and 80 percent relative humidity, and -1,000 and 10,000 feet altitude.
Drive Placement	Hard drives are designed to operate in certain physical orientations, and upside down is not one of them. A drive operated upside down will get "used to" this orientation and may not work properly when righted. Most drives can be operated sideways, but should not have the power supply situated below the drive; otherwise, the drive could get "cooked" by the power supply.

## Data recovery

If your hard disk has a serious hardware crash and you need to recover data, you will need to send your drive to a place that can perform data recovery. These firms perform a variety of services. They can try replacing the controller card on the drive to see if there was a part that was damaged. This usually fixes 75 percent of the failures.

If there is a mechanical failure, they can open up the drive in a Class 100 clean room and attempt to repair any head, spindle, or platter damage. Be prepared to spend lots of money. It's far cheaper to keep frequent backups.

## Defragmentation



**Figure 17.** *Fragmented and defragmented disks*

A simple method to reduce some of the wear on the read/write head and actuator is to defragment the drive. This will also help the drive achieve its maximum performance potential.

When a computer writes to a platter, it begins writing to the first available location. If it runs out of space before it runs out of data, it moves to the next available location, which may not be on a contiguous block. Spreading a file across non-contiguous blocks is called file fragmentation.

When a drive head reads a fragmented file, it has to jump about the platter to locate and deliver the fragmented data. The extra movement of the heads increases wear on the drive's components.

Fragmentation is not very apparent when a drive is new or freshly formatted. It gets worse over time as the head grabs whatever sector space is available. When new applications are installed on the drive, they may start out in a fragmented state: if the drive was already fragmented, added material may be placed wherever the write operation finds patches of free space. It only gets worse from here. If your hard drive is taking longer to load an application or read a file, or if the status light goes on and off instead of staying on, your drive is probably overly fragmented.

There are two ways to defragment a drive. The first is with a dedicated optimizer. These software utilities can reorganize files on the drive and put them in contiguous sectors. The second method involves copying the contents of your hard drive onto a second, essentially empty (although formatted) hard drive, and then recopying the files back onto your hard drive. Either method will defragment your drive, thus reducing the work of the read/write head and actuator, and optimizing its access time.

Although defragmentation programs are not destructive, be sure to back up all data before you defragment. As with any operation that writes data to the disk, various factors—such as a power surge or outage—could corrupt the data.

## Need a New Drive?

---

Once you become familiar with all the potential capabilities of a drive, you may find yourself dissatisfied with the limitations of your present hard drive. What should you look for in a new drive?

### Indicators of durability and reliability

Most sales literature that discusses the attributes of a disk drive will include at least three indicators of durability and reliability:

- Mean Time Between Failures (MTBF)
- Mean Time to Repair (MTTR)
- Shock Ratings



**A failure is any problem that prevents a drive from performing a specified operation. Failures that occur during an OEM integration, such as when an OEM manufacturer qualifies or encloses a drive, are not counted.**

### Mean time between failures (MTBF)

Start with the drive's MTBF rating. This vendor-supplied specification indicates how long a drive should last. MTBF ratings can range up to and beyond 1 million hours. It's important to understand the meaning of this rating when you purchase a drive. The drive holds all your data, so you really want to purchase one that is reliable.

An MTBF rating of 50,000 hours indicates that half (or the mean) of the drives with that rating will fail within 50,000 hours, or 5.7 years.

$$\left[ \frac{50,000 \text{ hours}}{24 \text{ hours a day} \times 365 \text{ days a year}} \right] = 5.7 \text{ years}$$

**Figure 18.** Interpretation of the MTBF rating

A 100,000 hour MTBF drive **should** last twice as long! Approximately eight percent of drives fail each year. After one year, 92 percent are still operating; after two years, 84 percent are still operating, and so on. MTBF ratings of

1 million hours are not uncommon; however, this does not actually mean the drive will run for over 100 years.



**IBM has an interesting method for calculating MTBF. They define it as the mean of a distribution of product life times. Their defined group of drives include:**

- drives that have not reached end-of-life (typically five to seven years)
- drives that are operated within a specified temperature range under specified conditions
- drives that have not been abused or damaged

**They divide the total operating hours of the defined group of drives within a specified time period by the total number of failures occurring within that time period.**

**A drive with an MTBF of 1,000,000 is very unlikely to last that long because it will have reached its defined end-of-life before then and thus been eliminated for consideration within the MTBF calculation. To overcome this limitation, IBM suggests that the entire MTBF rating be applied to a string of drives, each brought into play as the preceding drive reaches end-of-life. The MTBF calculation would suggest that the total running time of all these drives would reach (or surpass) the MTBF calculation before an increase in the likelihood of failure. For such drives, you might want to discover their scheduled end-of-life or look at their warranties to decide if the company will stand behind them for a satisfactory amount of time.**

Drive manufacturers determine MTBF by running only a couple of thousand hours of tests on a representative population of drives in an optimal environment and then extrapolating the results. “Corrected” for the real world, MTBFs would drop about 35 percent. Rarely do MTBF ratings include power cycling, access testing, and variations in temperature. If they did, we would still be waiting for a rating on most drives now on the market. However, the testing is rigorous—punishing shocks, temperature extremes, constant read/write operations—and it pushes the drives well beyond what they will likely encounter in a lifetime of use. MTBF ratings are typically geared for office conditions. A dust-free, environmentally controlled “clean room” can increase MTBF ratings by 100,000 hours or more.

MTBF ratings are not standardized. Manufacturers use different methods for establishing ratings. They have mainly been used for marketing purposes. MTBF ratings should serve only as a guideline.

Here are three ways to calculate MTBF; all result in different ratings:

- **Combined Life Expectancy**

Combined life expectancy uses the combined life expectancy of all the parts used to make a drive. It relies primarily on Mil Spec 217 or the BellCore publication. This method does not include head/disk failures. This is the most conservative method, generating MTBFs in the 30,000 to 50,000 range. It was in use in the early days but has since been abandoned.

- **Field Rate of Return (FRR)**

$$\text{MTBF} = (\text{No. of drives shipped per month} \times \text{Power-on hours per month}) \div \text{Drives that fail per month}$$

**Figure 19.** Formula for determining MTBF by Field Rate of Return

This only relates to the failure rate of the installed base, not the average life span of each drive. An MTBF of 1,000,000 means that out of 10,000 drives, you can expect one drive to fail every 100 hours:

$$1,000,000 \text{ MTBF} = (10,000 \text{ drives} \times 100 \text{ hours}) \div 1 \text{ failure}$$

**Figure 20.** Interpretation of the MTBF rating based on FRR

- **On-Going Reliability Tests (ORT)**

Manufacturer's randomly select drives at the plant and test them. ORT is useful in combination with combined life expectancy and FRR to determine MTBF ratings on older drives.

The bottom line is the warranty on the drive. The longer the warranty, the more confident the vendor is in the reliability of the drive.

Mean time to repair (MTTR)

Mean Time to Repair is a vendor-supplied figure for the average length of time a typical repair would take for that drive. If a drive had been repaired five times over the period of a year and the times involved in repair were two, one, one, three, and three hours respectively, the MTTR for that device would be two hours (10 hours  $\div$  5 repairs = 2 hours). It is intended to indicate the modularity of the drive and the quality of its parts.

Shock ratings

Shock ratings are a way of comparing the overall ruggedness of a drive. Unlike the MTBF ratings, which are extrapolated predictions, shock ratings are the result of actual tests and are therefore considered much more accurate and reliable. Shock ratings are measured in g's; a g is equivalent to the pull of earth's gravity. The average rating for hard drives is from 5 to 20 g's when operating. Drives in the 1.8-inch form factor have operating shock ratings in the 200 g's range. 200 g's equates to a drop of only one foot. Bernoulli drives shine in this area: they are rated at over 1,000 g's due to the use of flexible

disks. Bernoulli's are useful for portable and laptop computers. Newer drives include shock sensors that shut down the drive when acceleration is sensed.

**NOTE**



For more information on Bernoulli drives, see “Bernoulli drives” on page 101.

## Other statistics to consider

An average seek time of less than 10 milliseconds (ms) is respectably fast. Sub-12 ms is typical.

The sustained data transfer rate should be at least 5 MB/s, or at least as fast as your computer can handle. Vendors like to promote their drive's “burst” data transfer rate (10 MB/s up to 100 MB/s). This is the fastest that data can be moved at one instance under optimal conditions, which means data transferred from cache. Sustained rate is the average data transfer rate over the entire disk (5 MB/s is average; 100 MB/s is high). Sustained data transfer rate includes burst from the cache (optimal) and cross-cylinder accesses (suboptimal).

If you're a real speed demon, invest in an add-on SCSI accelerator card and RAID to improve throughput. High-end applications, such as color publishing and digital video, demand the fastest throughput available. Raw, uncompressed, full-frame, 60 field per second video requires 27 MB/s, while manipulating 100 MB color scans requires as much performance as possible. More performance equals better video quality (less compression) or more jobs performed per hour.

Make sure your drive's cabling interface accommodates future expandability.

## Capacity

Choose a drive with a high formatted capacity. Hundreds of megabytes isn't very much anymore, considering the size of today's popular applications and files. Many operating systems alone require 50 MB of space. An office suite of applications may require an additional 100 MB. Utilities and games could require another 100 MB. Graphic programs can generate individual files that are hundreds of MB. One minute of high-quality digital video can occupy 200 MB. One minute of CD-quality audio occupies 10 MB.

Technology is bringing down the price of higher capacity drives. You may be surprised at the price difference between two models with the same capacity. Get 50 percent more capacity than you think you need.

Keep in mind that most drive manufacturers measure megabytes in millions of bytes (1,000,000 bytes instead of  $2^{20} = 1,048,576$  bytes). Capacities are increased by five percent from this fact alone. On a 1000 MB drive, the difference is 48 MB. Operating systems do not measure capacity this way, so your



operating system probably displays a capacity that is less than what you thought the drive holds.

## Other considerations

Get a drive with a voice-coil actuator. It provides superior head positioning, and automatic parking for added safety. Also, the drive should accept what are called step pulses. (Ironically, this is even more crucial for voice-coil actuators than for stepper motors.) A step pulse moves the head one track over, and speeds access time by quickly positioning the head over the correct track.

Consider SCSI-3 drives rather than SCSI-2 drives to take advantage of vendor's implementations of current and imminent improvements. You will need a SCSI-3 compatible controller or host.

### NOTE



See Chapter 5, “All About SCSI,” for more information.

Consider a drive with advanced RAM caching features. Write caching—featured on several drives—is a tremendous advance in caching technology.

## Trends in Hard Drives

---

### Smaller platters

As the density of hard disks and the sensitivity of read/write heads has increased, hard drives have gotten physically smaller. The gap between the read/write heads and the platter is getting narrower. Because of this, the magnetic flux has a shorter distance to travel and the magnetic domain on the disk can be smaller. This results in more bits per inch on each track.



**Magnetic flux is the magnetic exchange between the read/write head and the platter. Magnetic flux allows the head to write and read data.**

Improvements in servo data recording and head movement are allowing for disks with even more tracks per inch. One GB, 2.5-inch drives combine 6,000 tracks per inch and over 100,000 bits per inch to produce densities of more than 1600 MB per square inch. Disk size (referred to as its form factor) has gone from 8 inches to 5.25 inches to 3.5 inches. Disks as small as 2.5 inches and 1.8 inches are now in use, typically in laptop and notebook-size computers. The 3.5-inch drive has replaced the 5.25-inch as the industry standard.

### NOTE



See “Anatomy of a hard drive” on page 27 for more information.

In general, the larger the drive (in dimension, not capacity) the greater the speed. The smaller the drive, the lower the cost and the power consumption. But note that currently the 3.5-inch drive seems to represent the price break. It offers the lowest cost when figured on a per-megabyte basis. Surprisingly, drives smaller than 3.5 inches are more expensive than larger drives, but may assume the price-break position in the near future.

### Smaller drives

Computers are getting smaller. Desktops have become laptops which have become notebooks. Real estate is now becoming a significant concern; the insides of these boxes are getting cramped. Smaller drives make better use of available space. Two half-height drives can be installed in the space where one full-height drive (1.6 inches tall) used to fit in a desktop computer. Third-height drives, standing one inch tall, are currently the most popular. For extremely tight casing requirements—such as for laptop and notebook computers—17 mm height drives (2.5-inch form factor) have been developed.

Although the smaller drives are currently more expensive per megabyte, the prices are sure to come down as their sales and use increase.

### Faster, smaller controllers

The controller chip sets of newer drives (the “brains” of the controller) are composed of fewer and faster integrated circuits, providing greater processing power at higher operating frequencies while requiring less physical space in the drive itself. Most 16-bit based controllers use either the Intel 80186 family of microcontrollers or the Motorola 6811 family. Most drive vendors stay with a particular processor family to ensure firmware compatibility. With the emergence of high-speed serial SCSI, vendors are forced to move to faster 32-bit processors and 32-bit memory subsystems. The chip sets on newer 2.5-inch and smaller drives incorporate variable zone recording and dedicated servo capabilities to increase disk density and capacity. Advanced semiconductor technology such as multichip-module (MCM) and chip-on-board (COB) packaging allows multiple unpackaged chips to be placed in tight areas.

**NOTE**

See “Anatomy of a hard drive” on page 27 and “Encoding” on page 44 for more information. For a discussion of chips, see “SCSI Integrated Circuits (Chips)” on page 135.

Despite these advances, the space limitations of smaller controllers means that there is less room for the sophisticated circuits, such as large caches, that are supported by larger drives. These functions may have to be relocated to the computer.

## Connector size is slow to change

Strange as it seems, the shrinking disk size may be limited by the hard drive's connectors. A standard 50-pin SCSI connector measures 2.69 inches wide and 0.25 inches thick. It is already a challenge fitting these connectors on smaller drives.

### NOTE



For more information, see “Connectors” on page 152.

A possible solution is to use high-density “D-sub” connectors, as defined in the SCSI-3 specification. These connectors pack the pins more tightly, and measure a trim 1.44 inches wide and a quarter-inch thick. Another solution, already in limited practice, is to reduce the number of pins on the connector. This is possible because many of the pins are connected to ground wires, and in practice not all the ground wires may be needed. Forty-pin arrangements are used for 2.5-inch drives.

Eighty-pin SCA connectors are also gaining in acceptance. These support fast and wide SCSI-2 and include power and spindle synchronization and reduce the amount of cabling required. These are good for disk array applications where drives have to be hot-swapped and less cabling is desired.



**“SCA” stands for single connector attachment. It is a high-density connector that carries every type of signal passed along a SCSI bus, including SCSI ID, LED, and spindle synchronization information. It is particularly suitable for hot-swapping—removing and inserting removable drives while the system is powered on—due to its timed pins. Timed pins allow for removing power first and ground last when a drive is disconnected, and attaching ground first and power last when a drive is plugged in.**

## Faster, lighter heads and actuators

The read/write heads on hard drives are becoming smaller and lighter. The lower the mass of the head and actuator, the more easily and quickly it can be moved across the disk. Unfortunately, if a head and actuator are too small and light, they will be unstable. These components may soon reach their physical limits.



**Force equals mass times acceleration. The faster the head moves, the greater the force exerted on it. If the head is made any lighter, it will break apart.**

For this reason, advances in seek time performance—the time it takes the head to physically arrive at the location where it can read and write data—will be minimal. Some drives increase seek performance by “short-stroking” a higher capacity drive. Short stroking is using only half of a higher capacity drive to achieve faster seek times by requiring the drive to seek across only half the platter. Overall, seek time has only improved from about 16.5 to 8 ms

in the last ten years, while processor speeds have increased about 1000 times. The laws of physics start to get in the way of reducing seek times any further. It's clear that storage systems have become a limiting factor in increasing a computer system's performance.

Other potential areas for advancements in drive performance include:

- increased medium rotation rate
- larger caches
- higher densities
- faster and wider transfer rates
- more drive intelligence

### Green drives

Of increasing importance is the need to produce environmentally correct products. Environmental concerns have already resulted in the development of hard drives that support a low-power sleep mode. Some drives even have a deep sleep mode where everything is turned off. Newer drives are coming out that require 3V instead of 5V. In Europe, there are laws that require this. In the US there is a standard, known as Energy Star, that specifies power management in the computer. In effect, power management means that the drive will spin down after a certain amount of inactivity. The EPA estimates that a system that powers down during inactivity could save the user \$70 to \$90 a year. Energy consumption is extremely important to portable computing users.

#### NOTE



**You'll want to balance your power management configuration with your desire to prevent wear-and-tear on your drive. See "On/Off Policy" in Table 3 on page 66.**

### All digital drives

Drives are becoming more digitally oriented every year. Older drives possessed many analog components. Newer drives include:

- digital read channels
- digital servo control
- digital spindle control
- digital processors

Going all digital makes drives more programmable. It permits a finer degree of control over the specific physical interface variables. Some drives even go further by adding low-cost digital signal processors (DSP) to perform mathematical functions faster.

## Holographic memory

After decades of research, the first holographic memory system appeared in 1995. Holographic memory is a variation of conventional holography. Two laser beams are focused in the system at different angles and optically interfere on a light-sensitive film. One beam carries the data, which can be either a representation of the digital data stream or a pictorial image. By using a scanner to change the angle or position of the other beam, multiple views of the image are recorded. Thousands of these holograms can be recorded on a single piece of film.

The advantage to holographic recording is that a large quantity of data is stored in parallel in an image, making for very high data transfer rates. The first system from Holoplex, the \$10,000 HM-100, retrieved 26 MB/s. Future versions promise to be up to 10 times faster and up to 100 times larger in storage capacity.

## Large volumes

Whatever type of drive you pick, you can be assured that you are among many people needing lots of capacity. About 90 million hard drives were produced in 1995 (Table 4).

**Table 4.** *Worldwide volume of drives*

	1995	1996 (est.)	1997 (est.)	1998 (est.)
500 MB–1 GB	36.3 M	32.8 M	25 M	20 M
1 GB–2 GB	15.5 M	32.5 M	41 M	20 M
All capacities	90 M	118 M	140 M	160 M

Drive capacity will continue to grow, doubling in size every 18 months—a 60 percent annual rate of increase. Previously, capacity had increased 30 percent a year. Drive product life cycles are about 9 months. Current and predicted high-capacity drives are illustrated in Table 5.

**Table 5.** *Current and future capacities of 3.5-inch drives*

1995	1996	1997	1998	1999
8 GB	16 GB	24 GB	32 GB	40 GB

The amount of storage needed on an average server will continue to grow, as illustrated in Table 6.

**Table 6.** *Amount of storage on an average file server*

1995	1996	1997	1998	1999	2000
8 GB	20 GB	50 GB	125 GB	300 GB	500 GB

Storage will continue to become more affordable due to improved technology and ongoing price wars. Table 7 illustrates the historical and predicted cost per megabyte of storage space.

**Table 7.** *Historical and predicted cost per MB*

1980	1990	1995	2000
\$30/MB	\$10/MB	\$0.25/MB	\$0.05/MB



**Consolidation has pared down the number of drive companies. Ten to twelve percent per quarter decreases are typical.**

Drives will continue to become faster, as illustrated in Table 8.

**Table 8.** *Escalation of typical drive speeds in RPM*

1990	1995	2000
3600	7200	10,800

---

## RAID Technology

### What is RAID?

---

RAID stands for Redundant Array of Independent Disks. It was developed at the University of California at Berkeley in the mid-1980s. It was designed to provide greater performance, capacity, and reliability by coordinating the read/write activities among a series of linked drives. It described a way to link several drives together so that they behaved and appeared as one large drive. RAID was built upon existing technology rather than developed as a radical new product.



**RAID originally stood for redundant array of inexpensive drives because the drives used were not that expensive. Later it changed to independent disks. Although these systems were inexpensive considering their capacity and data security features, they were more expensive than single drive solutions because they contained more advanced software and hardware technology.**

RAID provides an alternative to SLED (Single Large Expensive Drives) as a high-capacity, high-performance storage method with the added benefit of data protection. Most RAID systems implement the latest versions of SCSI and serial SCSI to maximize data transfer rates. RAID systems typically provide very fast sustained transfer rates by greatly reducing latency and seek time. This could increase performance by up to 25 percent.

**NOTE**

**RAID ensures the availability of the storage array and is not a substitute for backup. Data could be destroyed by accidental erasure or viruses, and lost forever if you're not backing up regularly.**

RAIDs are employed almost exclusively by high-end users who need very large, fast, and reliable data storage systems. The application is often mission critical, where losing any data would cost thousands of dollars. RAID technology is typically used for:

- file servers
- database servers
- high-end users of digital video and color publishing applications

RAID has become an important area of storage. Businesses have adopted RAID for its reliability and its performance aspects. The RAID market has been growing at about 30 percent per year. Sales in 1994 totaled about \$3.5 billion. They are projected to double to \$7 billion in 1997.

## What to look for

RAID's key aspects include:

- availability
- reliability
- capacity
- expandability
- performance
- manageability
- cost

Different RAID levels offer different degrees of fault-tolerance. Some levels may add increased performance and capacity without increasing reliability. Different RAID levels are expandable in different ways. Some require the addition of only one drive; others require the addition of two to five drives at a time. Performance varies with each RAID level. It's important to define the intended application and related performance requirements to make a match with the appropriate RAID level. RAID can be very expensive. The intended application must justify the need.

## Specific features

Table 9 lists some features of RAID subsystems:

**Table 9.** *Features of RAID subsystems*

Feature	Explanation
Parity	RAID systems that include parity allow the system to continue to run if one of the drives has failed. It allows for the reconstruction of the data on the failed drive. Parity is a data transmission system in which the number of "1" bits must add up to an odd or even number. SCSI uses odd parity. This means the sum of all ones in a byte plus its parity bit will always be odd.
Caching	Some RAID controllers, especially ones for levels 3, 4, and 5, have RAM that is used for prefetching data or for write caching. Write caching helps alleviate the penalty paid for writing in some of the higher RAID levels. More sophisticated write caching includes battery backup that can maintain data for hours in case of a power loss. Some have a mirrored cache for redundancy.
Hot Spare	These are extra drives that are fully spun up but will be used only if one of the other drives fails.
Warm Spare	Some RAID systems require that a system go off-line but not power-down to replace components such as drives.
Multiple Hosts	Some RAID subsystems allow multiple host adapters or computers to be hooked up at the same time.



**Table 9. Features of RAID subsystems (Continued)**

Feature	Explanation
Redundant Controllers	Some RAID subsystems include two RAID controllers. Should one fail, the other takes over. Some systems have both controllers active; others have one active and one in standby mode.
Hot Swappable Drives	<p>Various RAID subsystems include drives in canisters, shuttles, or carriers that can be removed and plugged in while the system is running (Figure 21).</p> <div> </div> <p><b>Figure 21. RAID subsystem with a hot-swap drive</b></p>
Hot Swappable Power Supplies	<p>Power supplies on some RAID subsystems can be hot swapped and load shared. Load sharing means that when both power supplies are operable, they share the load of supplying power to the system. If one should fail, the other assumes the full load. Hot swap capability allows you to swap out the inoperable power supply with an operable spare while the system continues to run. This setup gives you N+1 fault tolerance (N is the number of power supplies required by the system, and 1 is the spare). Hot swappable power supplies should be used in conjunction with uninterruptible power supplies (UPS) and power conditioners to ensure a continuous flow of power during swaps.</p> <div> </div> <p><b>Figure 22. Hot-swappable power supply</b></p>
Redundant fans	Some subsystems include multiple fans. Should one fan fail, the others will cool the system. Monitor fans to detect overheating caused by failures.
Setup Software	RAIDs can be set up with setup software, LCD front panels, or serial terminal-based connections.
Monitoring Software	More advanced RAID subsystems include monitoring software to check subsystem status across a network. Some will notify via pager, simple network management protocol (with TCP/IP), or e-mail.

**Table 9. Features of RAID subsystems (Continued)**

Feature	Explanation
Configurable Rebuild	Some RAID subsystems have a configurable rate of data rebuild.
Ranks	Some RAID subsystems allow you to construct multiple groups of disks into RAID sub-units. Each rank could have a different RAID configuration but be controlled by the same controller.
Active Backplane	More advanced RAID subsystems allow you to hot plug drives. Such subsystems have an active backplane that you plug drives into. The backplane provides drives with power and data connections even when they are pulled or plugged in on the fly. Without an active backplane, plugging in a drive while the system is operating could kill the SCSI bus.
Drive Channels	The more channels to the drives in a RAID system, the greater the fault tolerance and the faster the performance. Drive channels are not made equal. Some offer much faster performance than others.
XOR Engine	RAID 4 and 5 systems need to generate parity through the use of an XOR routine. The XOR routine is designed to create information that allows a RAID to be recovered in the event of a failure. Higher-end RAID subsystems include a built-in custom XOR hardware engine that speeds up generation of parity. Others rely on an on-board processor to do the XOR calculation. For more information on XOR, see "RAID 5 and Fault Tolerance" on page 89.

Spindle synchronization is available on some RAID systems (mostly RAID 3). The spindles of all the RAID drives are synchronized to spin in unison, not just at the same speed. Each platter of each drive is in precisely the right position relative to the other drives. This nearly eliminates latency because the head on drive B is over the appropriate sector on its platter just as the head on drive A finishes reading from or writing to its platter.

## RAID Levels—Overview

---

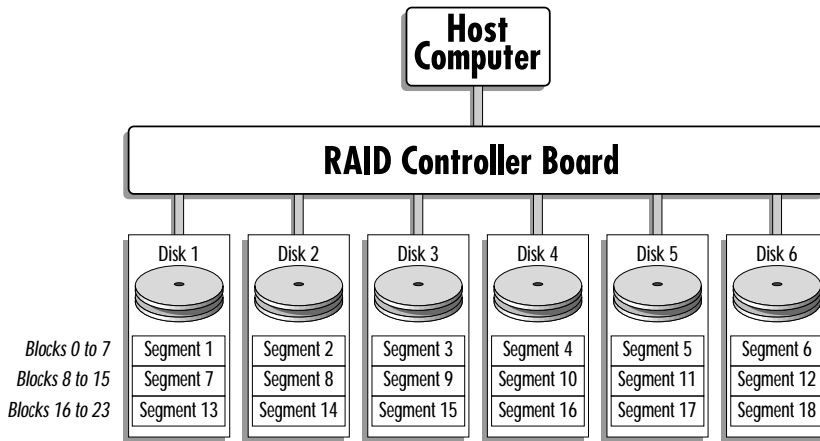
RAID subsystems differ from each other in the variety of features offered and in the variety of disk and data storage configurations available. The primary factors that define the RAID level of a subsystem are:

- the way data is written to the disk array
- whether there is some form of data redundancy
- whether and how the array is expandable

There are six standard RAID levels: RAID level zero through RAID level five. Table 10 provides an overview of those, plus RAID level 6.

**Table 10.** Comparison of common RAID levels

RAID Level	Common Name	Description	Disks Required	Data Reliability	Data Transfer Capacity	Maximum I/O Rate
0	Disk Striping	Data distributed across the disks in the array. No redundant information provided.	at least 2	Lower than single disk.	Very high.	Very high for both read and write.
1	Mirroring	All data is replicated on a matching disk.	2, 4, 6, . . .	Higher than RAID Level 2, 3, 4, 5, lower than 6.	Higher than single disk for read; similar to single disk for write.	Up to twice that of a single disk for read; similar to single disk for write.
2	–	Data protected by a Hamming Code (a type of error tracking algorithm). Redundant info is distributed across m disks (see next column).	n + m	Much higher than single disk, comparable to RAID level 3, 4, 5.	Highest of all listed alternatives.	Up to twice that of a single disk.
3	RAID Level 3; Parallel Transfer Disks with Parity	Each data sector is subdivided and distributed across all data disks. Redundant info normally stored on a dedicated parity disk.	n + 1	Much higher than a single disk; comparable to RAID Level 2, 4, or 5.	Highest of all listed alternatives.	Up to twice that of a single disk.
4	–	Data sectors are distributed as with disk striping. Redundant information is stored on a dedicated parity disk.	n + 1	Much higher than a single disk; comparable to RAID Level 2, 3, or 5.	Similar to disk striping for read, significantly lower than single disk for write.	Similar to disk striping for read, significantly lower than single disk for write.
5	RAID Level 5	Data sectors are distributed as with disk striping. Redundant information is interspersed with user data.	n + 1	Much higher than a single disk; comparable to RAID Level 2, 3, or 4.	Similar to disk striping for read, significantly lower than single disk for write.	Similar to disk striping for read, generally lower than single disk for write.
6	RAID Level 6	As RAID Level 5, but with additional independently computed redundant information.	n + 2	Highest of all listed alternatives.	Similar to disk striping for read, significantly lower than RAID Level 5 for write.	Similar to disk striping for read, significantly lower than RAID Level 5 for write.



**Figure 23.** Six-drive, level 0 RAID

RAID level 0, also known as data striping, is an array of drives that transfer data in parallel. Data is spread out among the drives one segment at a time.



**A segment is a predetermined number of blocks.**

Level 0 provides higher performance while remaining transparent to the user. The capacity of the array equals the sum of the capacities of the drives. For example, if you have six 1 GB drives striped, you have a virtual 6 GB volume.

Level 0 provides no data redundancy. No redundancy means no parity for error recovery over and above that provided by a normal drive.



**Figure 24.** RAID 0 array

Level 0 is easy to expand by adding one extra drive at a time. Generally, more drives equals more performance. Performance increases until the bus is saturated, in which case more buses could be used. Striping two drives generally increases performance about 1.8 times over a single drive. A drive that achieved 10 MB/s on its own would perform at about 18 MB/s in a RAID level 4 array. The smaller performance gain from doubling is due to command and disconnect overhead. The maximum bandwidth of the bus must accommodate these transfer rates. In this example, the bus would have to accommodate a burst transfer rate of at least 20 MB/s. Without the security of data redundancy, you must avoid potential data loss problems due to inadequate bandwidth.

RAID level 0 is popular with users of digital video, image processing, and color publishing applications where the highest performance is very important. Broadcast quality compressed video requires about 12 MB/s sustained data transfer rate, far more than a typical inexpensive single drive could offer.



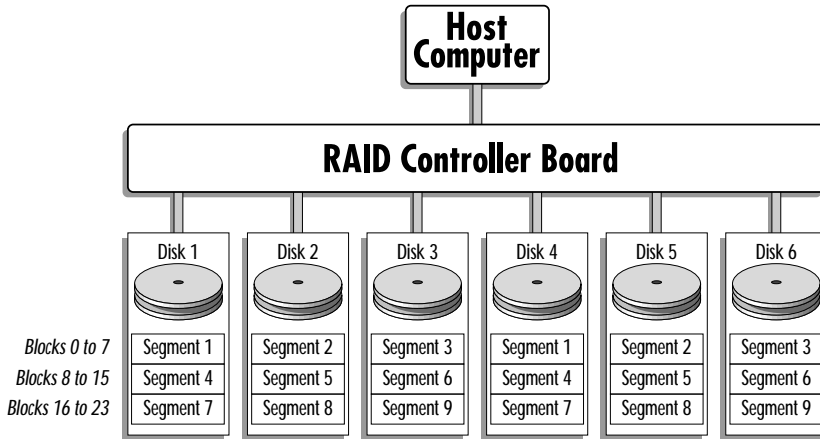
**The lack of data redundancy makes level 0 unsuitable for mission-critical applications.**

The RAID controller at level zero is generally a SCSI host adapter that came with or was added to the computer.

RAID 0 also has been implemented with removable drives, such as Winchester cartridge or magneto-optical, allowing a fast drive unlimited capacity.

## RAID Level 1

---



**Figure 25.** Six-drive, level 1 RAID

RAID level 1 is basic disk mirroring. It offers only a little extra performance over that of a single drive. With RAID level 1, the data written to one drive is written at the same time to a second drive. If one drive fails, the mirror of its data exists on the other drive. Because of this redundancy, the usable storage capacity of level 1 is half the total capacity of the drives used. This makes it an expensive solution. Drives must be added two at a time to expand capacity.

The RAID controller used for level 1 is generally a SCSI host adapter that came with or was added to the computer.

## RAID Level 2

---

RAID level 2 is a patented architecture of Thinking Machines, Inc. It uses sector bit interleaved data and multiple, dedicated parity disks. Data is interleaved across drives, so less overall storage space is required for data backup. The parity disks avoid the cost of the duplicate-disk structure required for data mirroring by RAID level 1.

**NOTE**



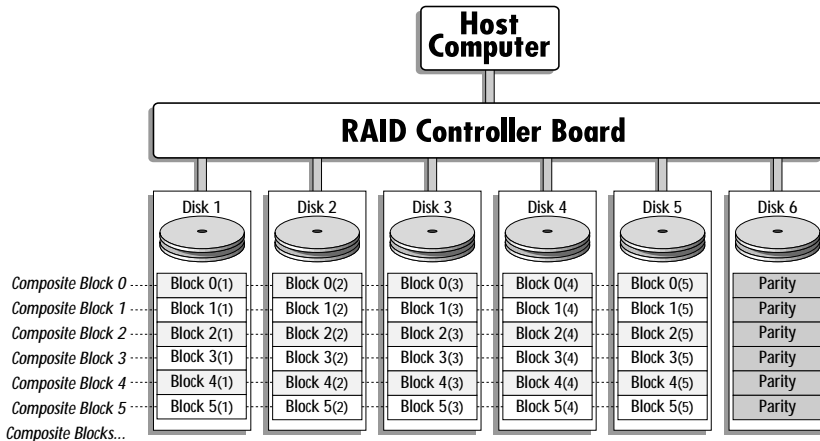
For more information on interleaving, see “Interleaving” on page 48.

In RAID level 2, all of the array disks are synchronized, so that all disks must be accessed in parallel. This is good for supercomputer applications that

require large file transfers at high bandwidth. It's not good for applications that call for many small reads and writes.

RAID level 2 is set up with a fixed number of drives, each reading a fixed number of data bits from each drive. Adding another drive would entail redesigning the system.

### RAID Level 3



**Figure 26.** Level 3 RAID

RAID level 3 is an array of disk drives that transfer data in parallel, while one redundant drive functions as the parity check disk. Data is interleaved at the byte level. A single block requires a transfer from every drive. Together they work as one virtual disk.



**RAID level 3 is also known as parallel disk array, or bit or byte-based striping with parity.**

Level 3 is noted for fast data transfer rates of large files such as in graphic applications and digital video. However it is even slower than a single drive on small transfers. Level 3 has higher performance over a single drive as well as increased reliability.



**With level 3, if a data drive fails, the controller rebuilds the data on the fly, using a combination of the data on the other drives and the parity drive.**

From 83 to 90 percent of the total disk space is available for storage, depending on the number of drives in the array. However, the parity check disk still makes it 10 to 20 percent more costly than using an equal number of single drives. With RAID level 3, it's easy to add extra drives to expand capacity.

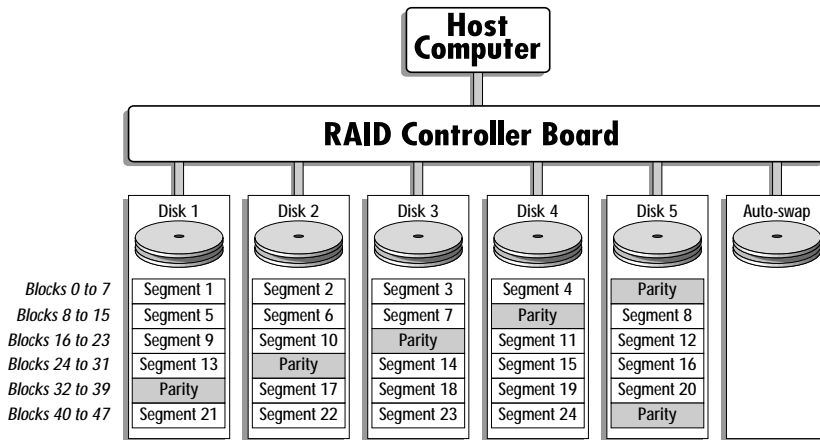
The RAID controller at level 3 is generally a stand-alone SCSI-SCSI disk array controller board that resides in the storage subsystem.

## RAID Level 4

RAID level 4 uses an independent disk array. Independence means the drives don't function in parallel. With RAID 4, data follows independent paths to the individual drives. Data is striped across the drives in units of blocks. One drive is dedicated to parity. This method spreads data across many disks, providing higher performance. Writing is slow because reads from drives must be done to calculate parity information. Level 4 is noted for fast data transfer rates of large files such as in graphic applications and digital video.

The RAID controller at level 4 is generally a stand-alone SCSI-SCSI disk array controller board that resides in the storage subsystem.

## RAID Level 5



**Figure 27. Level 5 RAID**



RAID level 5 also uses an independent disk array. It provides the highest level of data security through data redundancy in the form of parity bits striped across disks in the array (Figure 27). Level 5 is similar to level 4 except:

- Parity is spread over some or all of the array disks rather than on one dedicated parity disk.
- More than one drive can be written to concurrently.
- It's faster on small transfers.
- It's slower on large transfers.
- It's slower when writing data.

Writing is slow because reads from drives must be done to calculate parity information. Small writes are fast because (for example) an eight-drive system can write to four drives at the same time. Performance and data rates are higher than a single drive. Spindle synchronization is optional on level 5 arrays.

It's easy to add drives to level 5. This level requires at least three drives. Ten to twenty percent of capacity is used for parity overhead. Under RAID level 5, data lost on a failed drive can be reconstructed on a spare drive.

The RAID controller at level 5 is generally a stand-alone SCSI-SCSI disk array controller board that resides in the storage subsystem.

Level 5 is great for file-servers, database servers, and internet servers. However, it doesn't provide the performance that video and publishing applications need.

## RAID 5 and Fault Tolerance

---

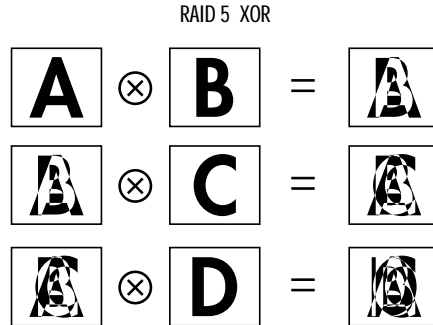
Fault tolerance is the ability of a system to continue operating even when one (or more) of its component parts have failed. RAID 5 uses a Boolean logic function called XOR to generate parity information and to reconstruct lost data.



“XOR” stands for “exclusive or.” The symbol “⊗” is the logical symbol for “XOR.”

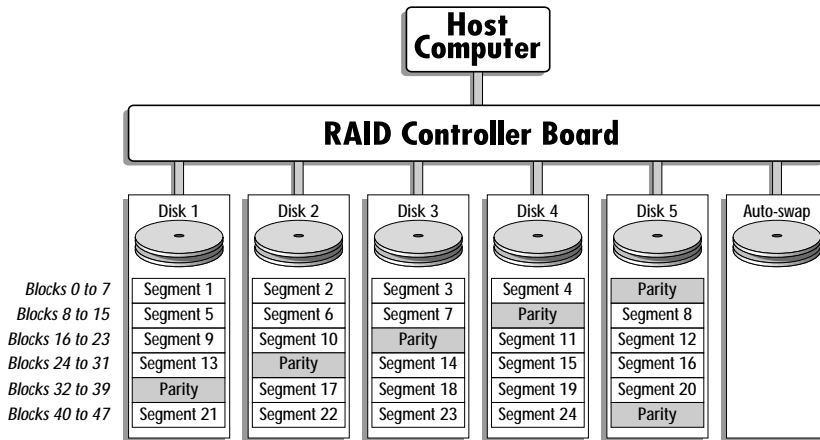
Parity information is generated by comparing the data from one disk to the data from another, bit-by-bit, across all data disks of an array (Figure 28). The

XOR function sets a parity bit to 1 if and only if either of the compared data bits is 1, but not both.



**Figure 28.** Creating parity data on RAID 5 using XOR

Assume that a disk array with six disk mechanisms has been set up so that Disks One through Five are initialized for RAID 5 and are considered member drives; Disk Six is allocated as the auto-swap unit (Figure 29).



**Figure 29.** Level 5 RAID

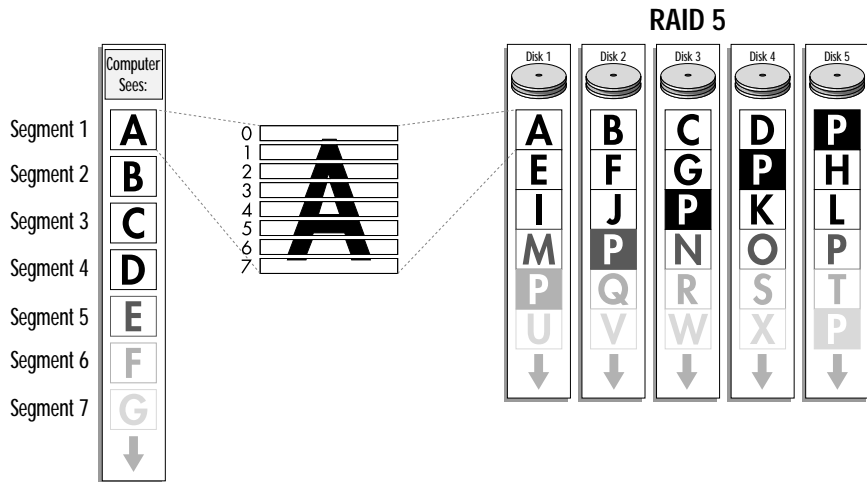
Suppose now that a 2 MB data file is saved from the host computer to the RAID system. The file is first received by the RAID controller board, whose functions include:

- the creation of parity data
- the management of all I/O operations to the six disk mechanisms

The RAID controller board creates an additional 500 KB of parity data from the original 2 MB of file data, and interleaves all data (both parity and file data) in segments across all member drives (Figure 30).



A 2 MB file consists of 500 segments of data with an additional 125 segments of parity data.



**Figure 30.** Data organization in RAID level 5

File and parity data are saved to the member drives in the following fashion:

- Segment 1 is written to block addresses 0 through 7 on Disk One.
- Segment 2 is written to block addresses 0 through 7 on Disk Two.
- Segment 3 is written to block addresses 0 through 7 on Disk Three.
- Segment 4 is written to block addresses 0 through 7 on Disk Four.
- Parity data is written to block addresses 0 through 7 on Disk Five.



The information written to block addresses 0 through 7 on Disks One, Two, Three, and Four is processed through an XOR algorithm to create parity data (also one segment in size). This parity data is written to block addresses 0 through 7 on Disk Five.

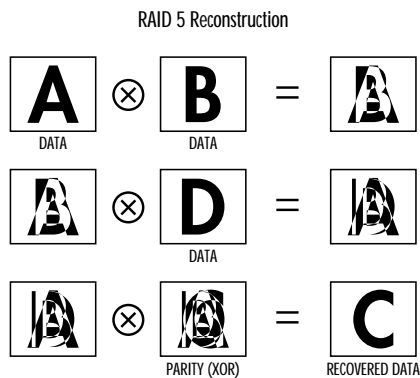
- Segment 5 is written to block addresses 8 through 15 on Disk One.
- Segment 6 is written to block addresses 8 through 15 on Disk Two.
- Segment 7 is written to block addresses 8 through 15 on Disk Three.
- Segment 8 is written to block addresses 8 through 15 on Disk Five.
- Parity data is written to block addresses 8 through 15 on Disk Four.



Parity data is created from the same information written to block addresses 8 through 15 on Disks One, Two, Three, and Five, and is written to block addresses 8 through 15 on Disk Four.

This process is repeated until all 500 data file segments and 125 parity segments are interleaved equally among member drives.

For this example, assume that Disk Three fails. The data that was stored on Disk Three is automatically rebuilt, segment by segment, from the information stored on the remaining disks. The first segment is rebuilt by taking the data from block addresses 0 through 7 on Disks One, Two, and Four and the parity information from block addresses 0 through 7 on Disk 5 and processing them in an XOR algorithm (Figure 31).



**Figure 31.** RAID 5 reconstruction

The resulting segment of data is an exact duplicate of what was stored on block addresses 0 through 7 on Disk Three. It is written to block addresses 0 through 7 on Disk Six.

This process is repeated until all the data that was on Disk Three is rebuilt onto Disk Six. The lost parity information that was on Disk Three is also rebuilt by processing the data on the remaining four member disks through the XOR algorithm.

When the rebuild is complete, Disk Six's role has been transformed from auto-swap drive to an active member drive in the RAID 5 array. During or after the rebuild process, Disk Three may be pulled from the RAID system. A replacement drive canister may be inserted during or after the rebuild process (this is known as a hot-swap). The RAID controller board automatically allocates the replacement drive canister as the auto-swap unit.

## Up to two disks can fail

After the failure of Disk Three, its contents were automatically rebuilt to the online spare, Disk Six. Disk Three is removed, and after contacting your vendor for an RMA number, it should be returned for service. The RAID system still provides optimal performance at this point, as it still has five member drives to stripe data across (Drives One, Two, Four, Five, and Six). Although the level of fault tolerance has been diminished, it is not eliminated.

Now suppose Disk One fails. The RAID system remains operational, even though only four drives are on-line. Performance will suffer at this point because the RAID controller board has to use the XOR algorithm to recreate the lost data segments on-the-fly for each read and write command it receives, rather than service the requests directly.

## Increasing fault tolerance

Fault tolerance can be increased by purchasing a seventh drive canister for use as an emergency spare. When the seventh drive canister is inserted into the drive bay of a removed failed drive, the RAID controller board automatically allocates it for use as the online spare.

## Other RAID Levels

---

Some vendors have created additional RAID levels that are proprietary or non-standard. Some of these have been adopted by the RAID Advisory Board as a standard. Table 11 lists several examples of non-standard or proprietary RAID levels.

**Table 11.** *Other RAID levels*

RAID Level	Description
RAID 6	This level is an enhanced version of RAID 5 that includes two sets of parity data rather than one (RAID Advisory Board definition).
RAID 0+1 or 10	This is a combination of RAID 0 and 1. Basically, drives are striped together like RAID 0, then mirrored onto another set of drives like RAID 1. Some companies have called this RAID 6.
AutoRAID	Developed by Hewlett-Packard in 1995, this technology automatically switches between RAID 0, 1, and 5, depending on how the array is accessed. This system is easy to expand.
Tape Arrays	RAID 0, 1, and 3 have been implemented using tape drives. RAID 0 allows tapes to be striped for maximum backup performance. RAID 1 allows 2 copies of a tape to be made at one time, preventing data loss due to media failure or loss. RAID 3 allows for enhanced backup performance but also redundancy if one tape is lost.
Removable Arrays	RAID 0 and 1 have been implemented using removable drives such as optical, SyQuest, or Jaz drives. This allows performance to be maximized or fault tolerance to be achieved. Because the media offers infinite storage capacities, projects can be archived and transported easily.



**Some enterprises are marketing layered—or “RAID on RAID”—products as RAID 10, RAID 53 and RAID 77.**

## Hardware-Based Disk Arrays

---

The drives of a hardware-based disk array are connected to a RAID controller board installed inside the disk array chassis. The host computer recognizes the RAID controller board as the SCSI storage device, and not the drives connected to it. Read and write commands sent from the computer are processed by the RAID controller board, which in turn sends the appropriate read and write commands to the drives. Overall performance is enhanced when RAID management tasks are executed by a processor on a controller board because the host computer is freed from input/output overhead and the disk array

itself is freed from the host computer's server and application loads. These arrays are sometimes known as SCSI-SCSI array controllers.

## Bus-Based Hardware Disk Arrays

---

Bus-based hardware disk arrays are controlled by a RAID host adapter that resides in the computer. These are typically PCI-based boards that include multiple SCSI channels to drives and a RISC-based processor. Their advantage is a direct, high-speed connection to the host bus. These generally outperform platform-independent arrays and cost half as much. This type of controller typically requires a PC with many drive bays or an active hot-swappable backplane. Their disadvantage is that they are platform-specific.

## Software-Based Disk Arrays

---

The drives of a software-based disk array are connected directly to the host computer and its SCSI bus(es). The member drives may be connected in a variety of methods, such as the dual SCSI bus setup of a Quadra 900/950 or Power Macintosh 8100/8500/9500, or they can be daisy-chained onto a single SCSI accelerator card. Regardless, it is the host computer and software drivers that manage the read and write commands to the member disks of a software array. Although software-based arrays are not as versatile as hardware-based arrays, they are much simpler and less expensive.

Specialized RAID software performs the setup of the software-based disk array, initializing each of the member drives with a RAID driver. During general RAID usage, the member drive's RAID driver tells the host computer's system software how to read and write data to it. This will differ depending on whether the disk array volume has been initialized for RAID 0 (striping), RAID 1 (mirroring), or standard HFS usage.



**HFS stands for Hierarchical File System. It is used by the Apple Macintosh System 7 for storing files and folders on a hard disk.**

## SAF-TE

---

SAF-TE stands for SCSI Accessed Fault-Tolerant Enclosures. Conner started this specification to address the need for a standard method of communicating with fault-tolerant enclosures. It defined a set of SCSI commands that check the status of fans, power supplies, and temperature. A small computer with its own SCSI ID monitors the enclosure and tells the main computer how it's doing. Other standards for enclosure monitoring include I<sup>2</sup>C and AEMI.

## RAID Advisory Board (RAB)

---

The RAID Advisory Board is an association of suppliers and consumers of RAID-related products. It was formed to:

- promote RAID and related technologies
- write test plans
- measure performance
- stimulate standardization efforts
- share resources among members
- help the RAID industry grow

You can contact them at 507-931-0967 for more information.



## Other Types of Storage Devices

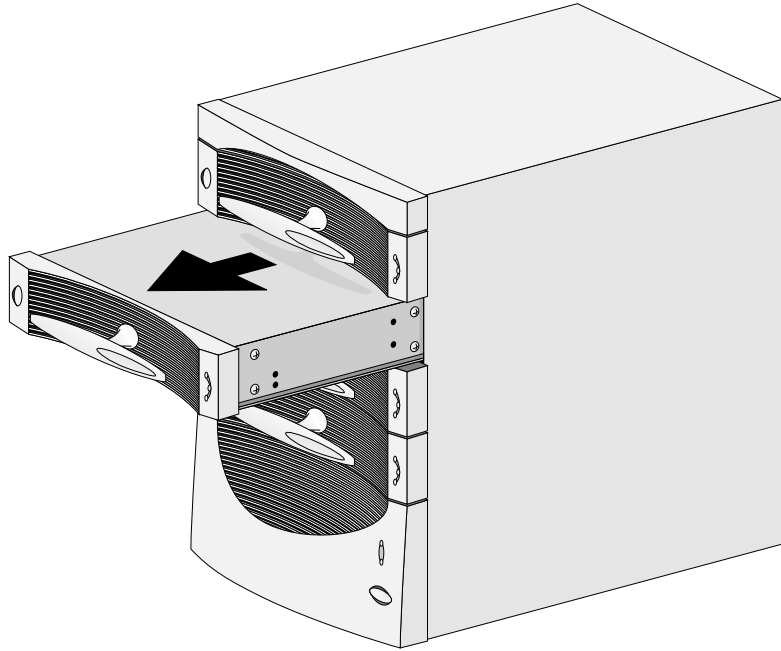
Hard disk drives are not the only type of storage device. There are many different types that offer their own sets of performance and operational advantages. Table 12 provides an overview of alternative storage.

**Table 12.** Overview of other types of storage devices

Device	Description	See ...
Removable Drive	A hard drive and head assembly in a rigid cartridge that plugs into a "mother" unit.	page 98
Removable Cartridge Drive	One or more hard drive platters in a self-contained rigid case that can be removed from the main drive unit.	page 99
Zip Drive	A drive containing a 3.5" flexible disk that spins within a cushion of filtered air.	page 101
Bernoulli Drive	A drive containing a 5.25" flexible disk that spins within a cushion of filtered air.	page 101
Magneto-Optical Drive	These use a high-powered laser to write and a low-powered laser to read.	page 102
Phase Change Optical Drive	The surface coating of phase change media changes from an amorphous to a crystalline state, depending on how much it is heated by a laser.	page 104
Floptical Drive	These drives use optical and magnetic technology. Servo data is perforated into the disk. Magnetic data is located between these optical grooves.	page 105
CD-ROM Drive	CD-ROM drives use laser beams to read CDs.	page 106
CD-Recordable (CD-R) Drive	A high-intensity laser changes a dye in the surface coating of the CD to reflect a low-intensity read laser as a pit would on a CD-ROM.	page 109
Write-Once, Read-Many (WORM)	Some drives prevent over-writing or erasing data through a series of software flags and special data bits. Others change the physical properties of the media.	page 118
CD-ROM Rewritable Drive	A new standard proposed to create a rewritable compact disc.	page 118
Jukebox	A large chassis contains multiple optical cartridges, tapes, or CD-ROM discs.	page 119
Digital Versatile Disc (DVD) Drive	Provides for up to 4.7 GB of storage on a 120-mm CD-ROM-sized optical disc.	page 120
Tape Drives (DAT and DLT)	These Drives use magnetic recording tape to store data in a fashion similar to audio tape recorders. The information is usually stored in digital form.	page 122

Alternative storage devices are discussed in greater detail below.

## Removable drives



**Figure 32.** *Removable canister drive*

Removable canister drives combine the capacity of a hard drive with the convenience of carrying or storing multiple units. A removable drive is essentially a hard drive and its entire head assembly in a rigid cartridge module that plugs into a “mother” unit. The removable part contains the platter and read/write head. The mother unit contains a power supply and may contain a hard drive controller for communicating with the computer.

**NOTE**

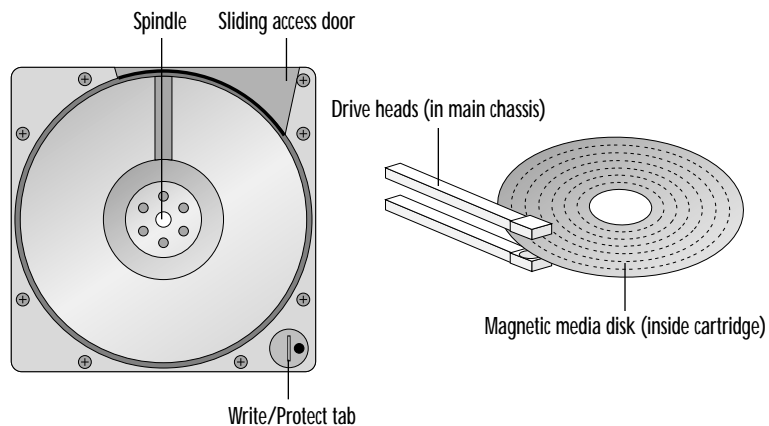


**Do not confuse removable drives with removable cartridge drives. For information on removable cartridge drives, see page 99.**

**Table 13. Advantages/disadvantages of removable drives**

Advantages	Disadvantages
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• high capacity (up to tens of gigabytes, infinite storage capability with multiple drives)</li> <li>• performance (equivalent to a regular hard drive)</li> <li>• functional versatility (arrays can be created)</li> <li>• portability of data</li> <li>• durability (cartridge modules are made of sturdy construction, although they are still hard drives and should be handled as carefully)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• high cost</li> <li>• limited compatibility due to vendor-unique designs</li> <li>• limited number of offerings compared with other types of drives</li> <li>• vulnerability Subject to wear from repeated insertions. Not as sturdy as fixed drives, subject to damage in transit.</li> <li>• low shock resistance compared to other storage</li> </ul>

## Removable cartridge drives



**Figure 33. Removable hard cartridge system**

Removable cartridge drives are devices with one or more hard drive platters in a self-contained rigid case that can be removed from the main drive unit. When the cartridge is inserted into the chassis unit, a door in the cartridge opens automatically. The read/write heads in the chassis unit are moved over the spinning platter(s) inside the cartridge and float on a cushion of air, just as in most fixed hard drives. When the cartridge is removed:

- The heads withdraw.
- The opening to the platters closes.
- The cartridge is ejected from the drive unit.

Removable cartridge drives are great for capacity-intensive activities. They are very popular among desktop publishing, graphic design, and multimedia gurus because they're easily transportable, can be used instead of hard drives, and have a wide customer base, making them excellent transportable media for jobs going to service bureaus.

The most popular base mechanisms are manufactured by SyQuest Inc. and Iomega. These companies use various designs that have some similarities.



**Iomega and SyQuest disks are not interchangeable.**

SyQuest Inc. has been making cartridges for a number of years and is considered fairly reliable. They offer both 3.5" and 5.25" disk versions that vary in capacity, compatibility, and performance. SyQuest also has a 1.8-inch PCMCIA-based removable drive.



**PCMCIA stands for Personal Computer Memory Card International Association. It's a joint effort of various special interest groups aimed at setting a standard for memory cards used in PCs. PCMCIA cards add improved computer memory capacity or enhance connectivity to external networks and services.**

Iomega Jaz platters, while newer to the market, incorporate a few design features that could be an improvement over the original design of the SyQuest units, particularly in keeping dust away from the platter surface. The initial Jaz drive accommodates Jaz media in 540 MB and 1 GB capacities, making it a great medium for storing large data files.

There are other manufacturers of similar systems. However, there are no formal international standards for media interchange on drives of this type; therefore, it's not possible to mix the media of one manufacturer with the drive of another.

**Table 14.** *Advantages/disadvantages of removable cartridge drives*

Advantages	Disadvantages
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• portability of media</li> <li>• speed (as fast as most hard disk drives)</li> <li>• cost (some cartridges are relatively inexpensive)</li> <li>• capacity (theoretically infinite)</li> <li>• universality (wide installed base)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• limited compatibility and questionable future compatibility</li> <li>• reliability somewhat lower than a fixed hard drive (frequent use makes cartridges vulnerable to exposure to dust and other contaminants)</li> <li>• relatively low shock rating</li> </ul>

## Zip drives

Zip drives are 3.5-inch removable media drives that work on a principle somewhat similar to Bernoulli drives. They offer about one-tenth the capacity per cartridge of Jaz drives, but still enough capacity for many users.



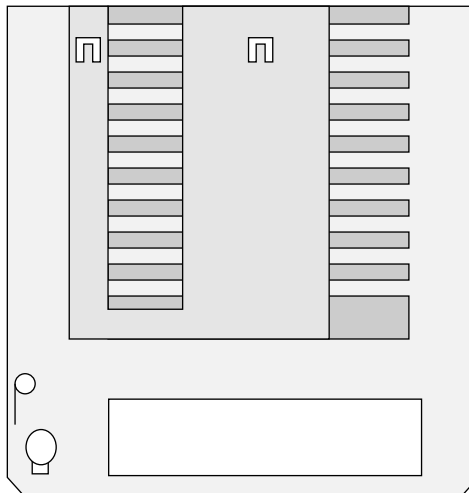
Like the Zip and Bernoulli drives, Jaz drives are manufactured by Iomega.

Zip drives are also substantially slower than Jaz drives and substantially less expensive. With a sub-\$200 price point, they are affordable to many users.

**Table 15.** *Advantages/disadvantages of Zip drives*

Advantages	Disadvantages
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• capacity (enough to accommodate a wide range of user needs)</li><li>• low cost</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• speed (slower than Jaz drives)</li><li>• low capacity compared to Jaz drives</li></ul>

## Bernoulli drives



**Figure 34.** *Bernoulli cartridge*

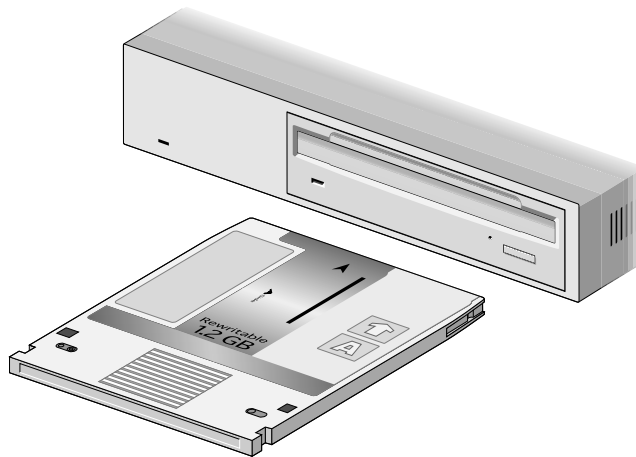
Bernoulli drives use 5.25-inch cartridges containing a flexible disk that spins within a cushion of filtered air. The drives get their name from a phenomenon called the Bernoulli Effect. The Bernoulli Effect is observed when the velocity of a fluid over a surface is increased and the pressure of that fluid on the sur-

face decreases. In the instance of Bernoulli drives, the fluid involved is air. The reduced air pressure draws the disk toward the read/write head. If a dust particle enters the filter between the head and the platter, the platter's flexibility allows room for the particle to escape, and the filtered air blows it away.

**Table 16.** *Advantages/disadvantages of Bernoulli drives*

Advantages	Disadvantages
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• flexing capability apparently makes the drive almost immune to a head crash (a Bernoulli drive has a shock rating of 1,000 g's)</li> <li>• capacity similar to SyQuest units</li> <li>• high reliability ratings (MTBF)</li> <li>• reasonably high marks for speed and data security</li> <li>• relatively low cost cartridges</li> <li>• theoretically infinite storage capability</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• slightly slower speed than SyQuest</li> <li>• more expensive hardware than SyQuest</li> <li>• small installed base</li> <li>• limited capacity per cartridge</li> <li>• only one vendor</li> </ul>

## Magneto-optical drives



**Figure 35.** *Magneto-optical drive and optical cartridge*

Magneto-optical (erasable and multifunction optical) drives use 3.5- or 5.25-inch cartridges that look like and have similar capacities to some WORM cartridges (write-once, read-many; see page 118). The difference in MO technology is that data can be stored, retrieved, manipulated, or deleted, over and over (write-many, read-many).

The recording surface of an MO disc is similar to the surfaces of other magnetic media cartridges except that an MO's disc surface is covered with a protective polymer coating. The magnetic particles on the recording surface are also somewhat different in that they consist of metals with relatively low coercivity. This means the surface metals must be heated to about 400°F in order to switch their magnetic polarity (as is necessary for write operations).

Writing is done in two passes:

1. On the first pass (the erase pass), the laser heats the particles that represent those data bits that need to be changed, while the magnetic head sets their polarity to the "0" position.
2. On the second pass, the polarity of the magnet is reversed while the laser heats up only those particles that need to represent "1s."

A low-powered laser, which does not heat the disk significantly, is used to read the disk, taking advantage of the Kerr effect.



**The Kerr effect states that when a polarized light is reflected off a metal surface in a magnetic field, the polarity of the light is rotated clockwise or counterclockwise, depending on the field's polarity. The drive detects this rotation and interprets it as data.**

Some optical drives feature direct overwrite, significantly improving performance. L IMM-DOW (light intensity modulation method direct over-write) allows data to be written in a single pass. This new method of writing requires new drives and media. The first 3.5-inch L IMM-DOW 640 MB drive was shipped by Fujitsu in 1996. The first 5.25-inch L IMM-DOW 2.6 GB drive was shipped by Nikon in 1996. In late 1997, a 7 GB version should be introduced. By the year 2000, 5.25 magneto-optical drives should be approaching a 10 GB capacity.

The magneto-optical disc is sturdier than other magnetic media. The magnetic particles do not deteriorate or fade as quickly. Information is recorded in a special translucent material. An MO disk looks somewhat like an audio CD.

There are both 5.25-inch and 3.5-inch ISO magneto-optical drives. These have slightly faster transfer rates, spin rates, and seek times than Bernoulli drives because there is less real estate to navigate, but they hold less data. MO cartridges are also less expensive than hard drives.

Some vendors have created proprietary standards with varying capacities and success rates. Beware of these products when looking for a new drive. Indus-

try-standard support allows for backwards compatibility and lower operating costs not always found in proprietary standard products.

**Table 17.** *Advantages/disadvantages of magneto-optical drives*

Advantages	Disadvantages
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• very high capacity (up to several gigabytes)</li> <li>• reliability (media stable up to 30 years)</li> <li>• durability (impervious to heat up to 300° F; not affected by magnetic sources; impervious to dust)</li> <li>• compatibility (ISO standard media)</li> <li>• versatility (most higher capacity drives read/write smaller capacity cartridges)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• high cost</li> <li>• slow performance (compared to magnetic media drives; also writing is done in multiple passes, so it is slower than reading)</li> <li>• incompatibility due to non-standardization among manufacturers</li> <li>• low spin rate (less than 3,600 RPM, increased latency)</li> </ul>

### Phase change optical drives

Phase change optical drives, like magneto-optical drives, change the physical nature of the disk to record data, but phase change drives write in one pass instead of the two passes necessary for magneto-optical drives. Phase change drives use a medium in which the data-storing material can be changed from an amorphous to a crystalline state, depending on how much it is heated by a laser. At a lower level, the laser heats the media to the point where it becomes crystalline (if it is already crystalline, it remains so). At a higher level, the laser melts the media, which returns to the amorphous state when it cools. The reflectivity of the crystalline spots is different than that of the amorphous ones. The disk is read using a low-level laser, similar to ones used on magneto-optical drives.

**Table 18.** *Advantages/disadvantages of phase change optical drives*

Advantages	Disadvantages
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• speed</li> </ul> <p>By writing in a single pass, phase change drives provide all the advantages of magneto-optical drives plus the added speed resulting from one pass writing, which makes it almost twice as fast.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• limited life of media</li> </ul> <p>The repeated heating of the media wears it down. The disks for some phase change drives are rated at 100,000 read/write cycles, while magneto-optical drives are rated at 1,000,000 cycles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• high cost of hardware (more than MO)</li> <li>• slow seek times</li> <li>• no ISO standard</li> <li>• very small installed base</li> </ul>



## Floptical drives

Floptical drives marry optical and magnetic technology. The floptical media follows standard, high-density DD and HD, 3.5-inch floppy diskette technology. As with optical discs, the servo data is perforated into the disk and then used by an optical system to position the read/write head. The magnetic data is located between these optical servo grooves. The embedded servo is indelible. It cannot be destroyed or corrupted. It allows the head to follow the eccentricities of the media. This increases track density from typically 135 tracks per inch to over 1,000. Formatted capacity is usually between 20 and 100 MB, compared to a standard floppy's 1.44 MB.

The read/write heads have two different head gaps:

- a narrow gap for use with high density floptical disks
- a wide gap for use with standard floppy disks

The drive senses which type of disk has been inserted and automatically uses the appropriate head gap and servo system. This is a low-end product that may replace current floppy drives but not hard drives.

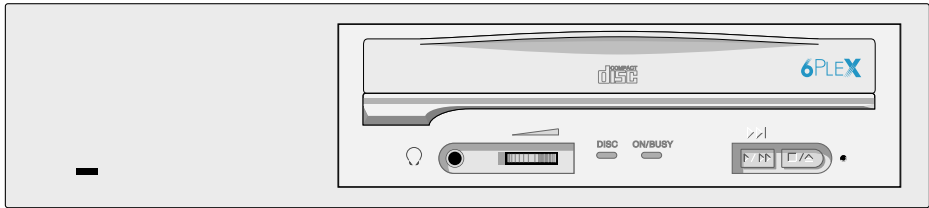


**In 1996, Compaq and 3M released information about an LS-120 floptical disk. It has 120 MB capacity, 500 KB/s data transfer rate, 70 millisecond average seek time, rotational speed of 720 RPM, and track density of 2490 tpi.**

**Table 19.** *Advantages/disadvantages of floptical drives*

Advantages	Disadvantages
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• higher densities than standard floppy disks</li><li>• compatibility with standard 3.5 floppy disks</li><li>• high capacities when used with floptical discs</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• slow performance (slower than hard drives: 135 ms seek time compared to less than 20 ms for Winchester-type drives)</li><li>• vulnerability of media to wear</li><li>• high cost At present, floptical drives are about two and a half times more expensive than standard floppy drives.</li><li>• durability (media not that sturdy compared to Bernoulli)</li><li>• slow start/stop times</li></ul>

## CD-ROM drives



**Figure 36.** 6Plex CD-ROM drive

CD-ROM (Compact Disc, Read-Only Memory) drives use laser beams to read compact discs (CDs). A CD is a combination of a reflective aluminum platter, a polycarbonate layer stamped with microscopic pits and lands, and a clear lacquer coating, which protects both the stamped polycarbonate (data side) and the aluminum platter (label side).

A pit or land represents an “on” value in binary code; the transition between them signifies “off.” The laser beam in a CD-ROM drive shines through the polycarbonate coating, bounces off the surface of the aluminum platter, and returns to be interpreted. The label side could get scratched and, depending upon the severity of the scratch, the disk could still be read. If the side with the pits got scratched, it is more likely that the disk could no longer be read. It would depend on the depth, length, and location of the scratch. CDs should have a shelf life of about 50 years.

Data is arranged on the 650 MB disc in data blocks of 2048 bytes. Each block has 304 additional bytes for error correction and overhead. This allows for an error rate of one per  $10^{13}$  bytes, which is extremely low.



**BLER is an acronym for block error rate. BLER is a measurement of how many errors are detected in the error correction code (ECC) blocks on media. BLER is usually expressed in numbers of errors per second. Different CDs have different BLERs. This is attributable both to quality of manufacturing and care taken with handling. BLER can increase from scratches, finger prints, and environmental degradation.**

Drive performance is measured in terms of data transfer rate and access time. The basic transfer rate of a CD-ROM is 150 KB/s. Drives faster than this basic speed are designated double-speed, quad-speed, or  $N\times$ -speed drives. A quad-speed drive transfers data at approximately 600 KB/s. The current limit of CD-ROM technology appears to be around 10x, due to mechanical and economic constraints.

Drive performance varies according to the location of data on the disc. Single-speed drives run at 200 RPM at the outside edge and 500 RPM at the inside. Access time for CD-ROMs is measured as it is for hard disks. Access time is in the hundreds of milliseconds, making CD-ROM drives 20 to 40 times slower than hard disk drives. Most CD-ROM drives have a RAM cache on board to speed up loading. Further performance improvements can be gained by using third-party software that extends caching.

CD-ROM drives are available in both IDE and SCSI interfaces. Because the devices are so slow, IDE is a perfect low-cost interface for these drives.

Data is structured in one of several data formats named after colored books such as Orange Book or Yellow Book.



See “Compact Disc Recordable drives (CD-R)” on page 109 for more detail on disc format standards.

CD-ROMs are available in several file system formats. The most common are ISO 9660, for PC or cross-platform CDs, and HFS, for Macintosh CDs. Table 20 lists CD file system formats and describes some pros and cons for each.

**Table 20.** *Pros and cons of CD-ROM file system formats*

File system	Pros	Cons
HFS (Hierarchical File System)	Standard Macintosh interface.	Not usable on most non-Macintosh OSs.
ISO 9660 Level 1	Usable with almost all computer operating systems.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maximum file name length is eight characters with a three-character extension.</li> <li>• Directory nesting is limited to eight total characters. Defining a file in a directory or path is limited to 256 characters.</li> </ul>
ISO 9660 Levels 2 and 3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provides ISO compatibility.</li> <li>• File name can be up to 30 characters, including three-character extension.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Directory nesting is limited to eight total characters.</li> <li>• Defining a file in a directory or path is limited to 256 characters.</li> </ul>
Rock-Ridge	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provides versatile file naming.</li> <li>• Based on ISO 9660 Level 2.</li> </ul>	Supported almost solely in Unix environments.
Hybrid	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Compatible with most operating systems.</li> <li>• Provides HFS support on Macintosh, ISO for non-Macintosh systems.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Limits disc capacity slightly due to duplicated directories.</li> <li>• Requires extra set-up time.</li> </ul>
Generic	Allows exact duplication of a device or volume, including partitions unusable in the native OS.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Features are not often needed.</li> <li>• Requires special driver to mount.</li> </ul>

**Table 20.** Pros and cons of CD-ROM file system formats (Continued)

File system	Pros	Cons
Generic XA	Generic with extended architecture.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Features are not often needed.</li><li>• Less widely supported than Generic.</li></ul>
CDRFS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Provides support for packet-written discs.</li><li>• Necessary driver is freely available.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Not ISO "standard," but ISO "compatible."</li><li>• Requires separate driver or OS support.</li></ul>
CD-UDF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• "Universal" file system.</li><li>• Extensible to non-CD media.</li><li>• Provides packet support.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Not ISO "standard," but ISO "compatible."</li><li>• Requires separate driver or OS support.</li></ul>

CDs are a standard way to publish large amounts of information, such as databases, directories, and graphic and font libraries for desktop publishing and multimedia uses. The cost to stamp out a CD-ROM has fallen below \$1.00 each when done in large quantities.

Common stereo audio CD players, while based on the same laser-etched pits technology, use different electronics than CD-ROM drives. They cannot be used as a data storage and retrieval device for the computer. However, computer CD-ROM drives can also play audio CDs.

There are many CD-ROM drives on the market, sometimes making it difficult to choose the model that will best suit your needs. Table 21 lists some of the features you should look for when you shop for a CD-ROM drive.

**Table 21.** Features to look for in CD-ROM drives

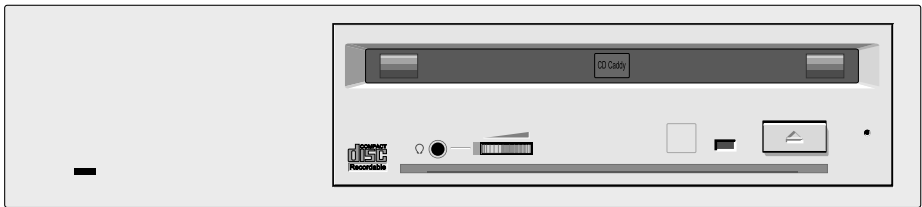
Feature	Why you want this
Multiple Platters	Some drives can hold 4, 7, or many more CD-ROMs at one time and switch between them on the fly.
Digital Audio Extraction	Some CD-ROM drives can transfer digital audio from a compact disc to the computer for saving into files.
PhotoCD Compatibility	Some drives are incompatible with the Kodak PhotoCD format.
Multisession Compatibility	Some CD-ROM drives cannot read CD-ROM's that have multiple sessions on them.
Tray vs. Caddy Loading	Different CD-ROM drives load the disk differently. Some use a caddy; others have a tray onto which you place the CD.
CD-Extra Support	Some CD-ROM drives cannot read audio disks with data tracks.

In 1994, 22 million CD-ROM drives shipped. Approximately 33 million were shipped in 1995, making CD-ROM drives commonplace on virtually all new shipping computers.

**Table 22.** *Advantages/disadvantages of CD-ROM drives*

Advantages	Disadvantages
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• standardization It is a standard format supported by all personal and workstation computers.</li> <li>• low cost hardware and media</li> <li>• wide availability of titles</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• slow access time</li> <li>• read-only capability</li> </ul>

### Compact Disc Recordable drives (CD-R)



**Figure 37.** *CD-Recorder*

The desktop CD-Recordable drive (CD-R) market is relatively new. The viability of CD-R technology has resulted from a combination of factors:

- technical refinements
- material cost reductions
- growth in the installed base of CD-ROM readers

This technological evolution is bringing about a revolution within many areas of personal computer usage, including:

- electronic publishing
- multimedia
- imaging and archiving

This revolution along with continued reductions in price are going to lead to one of the steepest growth curves ever experienced by a data storage product. We are at the beginning of a huge opportunity for those who will manufacture, resell, integrate, or use CD-R technology.

CD-R has been the longest anticipated and perhaps most frequently requested data storage technology of the past ten years. Shortly after audio CDs were introduced in 1983, users began requesting a means to record their own audio mixes to CDs. When CD-ROM was introduced for computer data distribution in 1984, demand for writing to CD formats on the desktop increased further. Rewritable magneto-optical drives were released in 1987 and one of the most common end-user questions became, “Why can’t this drive read and write CD-ROM discs?”

Finally, the pricing, feature set, and software support of CD-R drives has reached the point where it is practical, affordable, and easy for a typical end-user to create a CD-ROM disc on a personal computer. This capability, coupled with explosive growth of the installed base of CD-ROM readers over the past three years, ensures the CD-R drive market huge growth for many years to come. Analyst reports consistently position CD-R as the fastest growing segment of the data storage market.

CD-Recordable is an international standard sometimes referred to as “Orange Book, Part II.” This standard defines the technology by which CDs will be written—by means of laser rather than stamping—so that the discs may be created quickly with relatively low investment by the creator. It also ensures that those discs will conform to the standards created for each disc format (such as audio disc and CD-i) and will thus be compatible with all drives and software designed to use CDs of that format. Because of this standard, it is possible for anyone with a fairly decent personal computer to choose a CD-R drive and media from more than 15 manufacturers, buy off-the-shelf software, and create a CD that is readable by any CD-ROM reader in the world.

**NOTE**



For more information on standards, see Table 23 on page 113.

Standardization also sets up competitive situations where all manufacturers find themselves on a level playing field assured of a broad potential market. This in turn leads to steadily decreasing costs, improvements in performance, and disciplined market growth.

#### Typical CD mastering

The typical CD or CD-ROM disc is created at a factory or “mastering facility” on a piece of equipment called a stamper. Stampers are capable of producing large volumes of discs very quickly. But there are disadvantages, too: stamping is analogous to paper printing on a large scale. The equipment is specialized and very expensive. It is designed for high-volume reproduction with a relatively long and costly set-up process. Trained personnel are required to operate and set-up the equipment. The whole process is cost-effective only when a large quantity of discs is required. Such a process requires that the disc’s author:

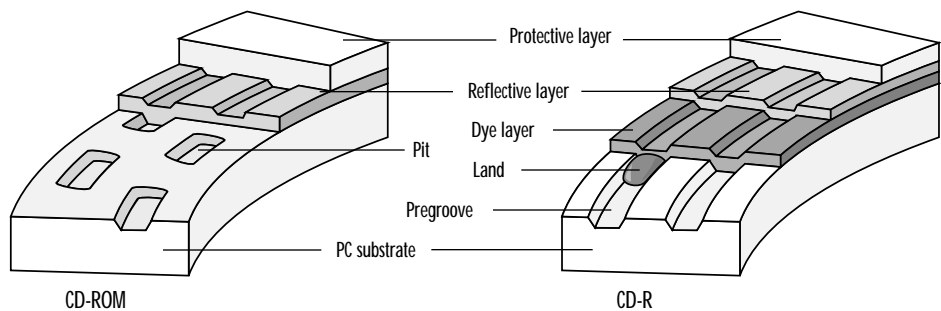
- send data off-site to the mastering facility
- wait for set-up
- wait for creation of a check disc
- wait for the check disc to be shipped
- review the check disc
- provide approval
- reshipe the check disc to the manufacturer

Finally, a few days after approval, the discs are produced and shipped back to the author. This process requires considerable preparation, involves numerous possibilities for delay, and introduces additional costs, such as shipping and handling.

#### Desktop CD mastering

CD-R technology moves CD mastering onto the Desktop. Just as the Macintosh computer and laser printers revolutionized the paper publishing world with Desktop Publishing, personal computers and CD-R solutions will radically change electronic publishing by decreasing costs and time-to-market while increasing flexibility. Mastering can be done on-site, on a Desktop, from creation to testing. Stamping will remain very important, and will even grow, because those facilities will still be required for mass duplication of discs.

CD-R media is similar, but not identical to, a “normal” CD or CD-ROM disc. Both media use a polycarbonate substrate, covered by one or more other layers, all of which are encased in a protective layer of lacquer. Normal CDs have only one additional layer, a reflective aluminum layer that is sandwiched between the substrate and the protective coating. CD-R discs also have a dye layer that lies between the substrate and the reflective layer. Most CD-R discs use gold for the reflective layer because of its higher reflectivity, resistance to corrosion, and greater ability to protect the dye.



**Figure 38.** Comparison of CD-ROM and CD-R media

On a conventional CD, data, represented digitally by 1s and 0s, is recorded as pits and lands (flat spots) in the pre-grooves of the media. On a CD-R disc, rather than a physical pit or depression in the groove, a dye is used to change the reflection of the laser in the same way that a pit would. This dye is activated by a laser beam of a somewhat higher intensity than that used to read data. The use of this dye allows discs created by a laser to be just as readable on conventional CD readers as discs created by a stamper.

Two types of dye are used in CD-R media:

- cyanine
- phthalocyanine

The proponents of phthalocyanine claim that media using that dye has a longer shelf life based on extended life testing. Proponents of cyanine dye claim that it is more tolerant of CD-R drives whose lasers are on the edge of being within specified ratings. To date, no conclusive impartial tests have been published on this topic. In reality, the actual chemical formulation of the dyes and other coatings varies somewhat with each manufacturer. Some media are clearly superior to others. CD recorders and readers should work equally well with either dye. However, some recorders do seem to work better with one manufacturer's media than another. When in doubt, use only the media recommended by the drive manufacturer.

CD-R discs come in three capacities, 650 MB, 550 MB, and 150 MB. Because they can also be used to record audio data, the capacity is sometimes described in minutes: 74, 63, or 18.

It is very important that recording surface (the underside) of CD-R discs not be touched, scratched, or contaminated in any way until after the disc is completely recorded. Oil, grease, and other contaminants can prevent data from being written accurately to the disc. After the disc has been written, it can be treated like any normal CD.



**The recording side of a CD-R disc typically has no label or printing on it.**

Currently, most CD-R drives require that the media be put into caddies. In the future, most mechanisms will probably change to tray loading. In the meantime, make sure you have caddies if you want to write CDs.

Fortunately for the user, while CD-R technology has been growing in popularity, CD-R media prices have been shrinking. In 1993, the street price for a single blank disc was at least \$20. In 1995 was \$10. The price will likely drop to \$5 and below in the near future.



CD-Recordable drives are very similar to CD readers. In fact, many recorders are based substantially on manufacturers' reader mechanisms. However, the differences are both important and complex. The primary differences include:

- the laser diode
- the electronics
- the firmware

Unlike CD readers, recorders need a laser diode that is capable of emitting beams of two different intensities. The read beam is the same as a CD-ROM readers. The write beam is more powerful since it's used to create a chemical reaction rather than just a reflection. Other circuitry that allows the drive to receive incoming data and perform error correction is also necessary. CD-R drives need larger RAM buffers to prevent data underruns and firmware that supports all of these new features.

Virtually all CD-R drives use a SCSI interface. SCSI offers a good combination of performance, software features and versatility, plug-and-play installation, and relatively low cost. CD-R drives appeared with other interfaces, such as ATAPI, in 1996.



**For more information on ATAPI, see Chapter 7, “Other Storage Interfaces.”**

There are many different formats for compact discs. Many of these formats are also international standards. These standards are often named for the color of the book in which their specifications are published. Table 23 lists CD formats and standards with an explanation of their applications.

**Table 23. Overview of CD formats and standards**

CD Format	General Information	Standard
CD-DA	Compact Disc Digital Audio. The format used for conventional audio CDs. It is readable on all audio CD players and most CD-ROM readers as well as a wide variety of other multimedia devices.	Red Book
CD-ROM	Compact Disc Read-Only Memory. The format used for almost all CD-ROM applications. It is readable on all CD-ROM drives and some multimedia devices. (See page 106.)	Yellow Book
CD-ROM XA	CD-ROM Extended Architecture. A seldom-used CD format that allows for the interleaving of data, audio, video, and graphics for smoother playback of multimedia content. It is only readable on XA-ready (i.e. XA compatible drives). Most—but not all—readers sold after 1991 are XA-ready.	Yellow Book
CD-i	CD interactive. Used for some home entertainment systems. Philips, which developed the standard, has been the most vocal proponent of this technology. Like CD-G, many readers support the format but there are few computers or applications that allow the discs to be used.	Green Book

**Table 23. Overview of CD formats and standards (Continued)**

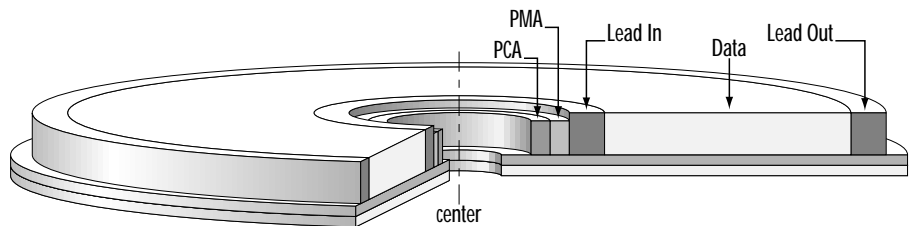
CD Format	General Information	Standard
CD Bridge	This format is used for Kodak Photo CDs and Video CDs. Many readers support the format but it has not yet become important globally. Software support and demand for discs in these formats is still somewhat immature. The standard for PhotoCD was created and is enforced by Kodak. Standards are proposed, but not in place.	Proposed: White Book Blue Book (see CD-Extra)
CD-G	CD Graphics. The format used for Karaoke CDs. The format is readable on a variety of devices, but most of them are consumer audio components. While the discs may be readable on CD-ROM drives, special software is required to see the graphics.	White Book
CD-R	CD-Recordable. The format used for CDs that can be written to.	Orange Book, Part II
CD-Extra	A new standard for combining audio and data on a disc in such a way that the audio may be played on any consumer CD player, while both the audio and the data can be enjoyed on a computer with a compatible CD-ROM drive. This standard is very new and many CD-ROM and CD-R drives do not support it.	Blue Book

There are several different methods of writing to a CD-R disc. The method to use depends on the following criteria:

- what the drive supports
- the application for which the disc it is being created
- the audience it is intended to reach

What follows is a description of the various methods of writing to a CD-R disc.

Disc-at-Once



**Figure 39. Order of information on a DAO CD**

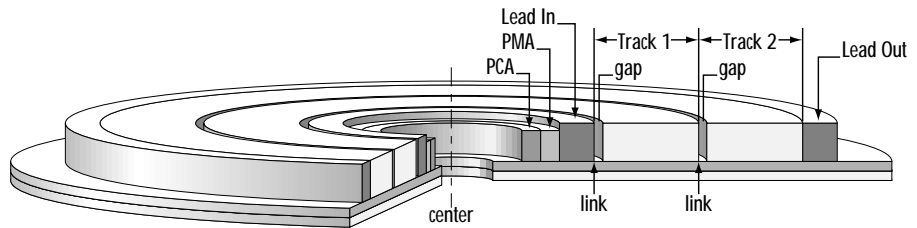
Disc-at-once, also known as uninterrupted write and DAO, is a writing method in which the entire disc is written in one uninterrupted session. Data cannot be added to the disc later. A DAO disc is Red and Yellow Book compliant. DAO is 100 percent compatible with all CD-ROM drives. It is used for

creating final discs for electronic publishing, audio, and any other application where complete compatibility is crucial.



A session is defined as a group of data containing a Lead In area, a Data area, and a Lead Out area. A session can be recorded in one sitting or can be recorded incrementally, depending on the formatting software's capability. Each session carries about 15 MB of overhead for the Lead In and Lead Out areas.

Incremental



**Figure 40.** Order of information on an incremental CD

Incremental recording is a method in which data can be added to a CD-R disc in segments. There may be, but does not have to be, interruptions in the data flow between segments. Data can be added using track-at-once (TAO) or packet writing and single-session or multisession recording. These discs are Orange Book compliant.

**NOTE**



See below for more information on TAO, Packet, and single- or multisession recording.

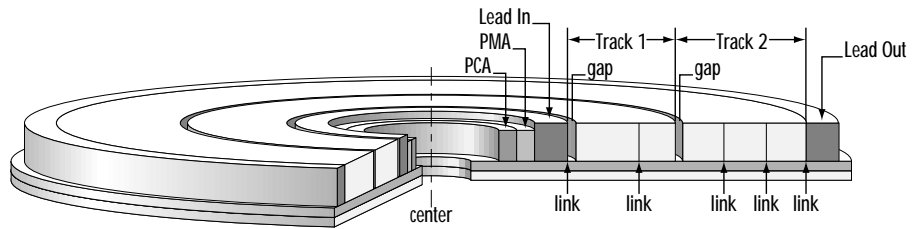
Track-at-Once

With track-at-once (TAO), the user can copy one track of data at a time to a CD-R disc. Up to—but no more than—99 tracks of data can be stored on a disc, space permitting. TAO recording can be used with either single-session or multisession recording. The finalized disc is 100 percent backward compatible.



A track is a logical group of data, not a physical track.

## Packet



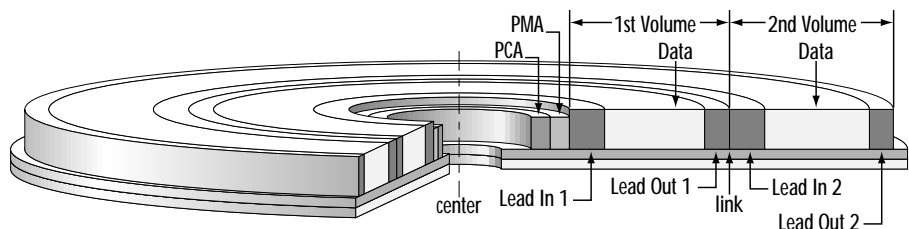
**Figure 41.** Order of information on a packet CD

The user can copy a packet of data at a time to a CD-R disc. Like a track, a packet is a logical group of data. However, while a disc can hold no more than 99 tracks, it can hold up to 1,000 packets, space permitting.

About 20 percent of each packet is overhead space. This method can be used in single-session or multisession recording. It eliminates buffer underrun problems—where the source of data supply is unable to keep pace with the CD-R device’s recording speed—allowing reliable recording from slow sources. It also lessens the need for a dedicated source or buffer drive.

Packet writing is still undergoing standardization and is not yet widely supported. The compatibility of packet-written CDs will not be known until the standard is complete. It is fairly certain, however, that packet writing will not be well-suited for writing audio discs.

## Multisession



**Figure 42.** Order of information on a multisession CD

A multisession disc is a CD-R disc containing more than one session. Each session carries 15 MB of overhead for the Lead In and Lead Out areas. A multisession-capable writer is necessary for writing to the disc. A multisession

capable reader is necessary for reading the disc, although the first session can be read by any CD-ROM drive.



A session is one, contiguous, spiraling string of data written to, or stamped into, a disc. There may be more than one session on a disc. A track is a portion, possibly all, of a session. A session may contain many tracks, but a track may not contain a session.

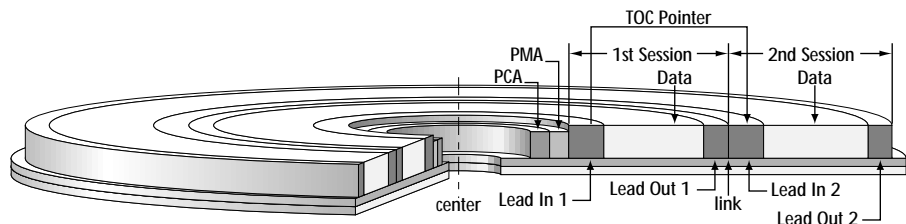
An audio CD will have several tracks that are stamped into the disc as one, contiguous, spiraling string of audio data—the silence between tracks is data that makes no sound. If a conventional CD contains digital and audio data, it is stamped with at least two tracks in one session, that is one, contiguous, spiraling string of data: first the digital data, then some silent data, then the audio data.

If a CD is made with two sessions, the boundary between the sessions also forms a boundary between tracks. The two sessions are recorded as two, contiguous, spiraling strings of data, one following the other. The boundary between the sessions is not soundless data in this case, but a small bit of smooth, unmarred, CD surface. Sessions are physically separate where tracks are separated by silent data.

### Multivolume/Multisession

Multivolume/multisession is a format where each session appears as a separate volume of data. On a PC, different volumes can be displayed as different drive letters. On a Mac, different volumes can be displayed as different icons. This is the most common type of multisession disc.

### Kodak<sup>®</sup> Multisession



**Figure 43.** Order of information on a Kodak multisession CD

Kodak multisession is a format where all sessions appear as one unique volume. On a PC, the disc can be displayed as one drive letter regardless of how many sessions are on the disc. On a Mac, the disc can be displayed as one volume icon.

## WORM drives

WORM stands for “write-once read-many.” There are many different types of WORM drives. They come in various form factors with various media formulations. They use a number of different writing techniques. Examples of WORM drives include 12-inch platter drives from companies such as Sony and Hitachi, multifunction magneto-optical drives from many different manufacturers, phase change optical drives designed by Panasonic, and the currently popular CD-Recordable drives.

Some WORM drives, including many multifunction drives, prevent over-writing or erasing data through a series of software flags and special data bits that tell the firmware of the drive not to write to certain data blocks. Others, such as the 12-inch drives and CD-R, are ablative—meaning the writing process changes the physical properties of the media in a way that cannot be undone.



**One meaning of ablation is reduction or dissipation, as by melting. The “ablative” in “ablative WORM” refers to the creation of permanent pits in the media surface.**

Ablative WORM is the ultimate archive device, because the information is written physically and therefore is less prone to incidental data loss from things such as magnetism and viruses. The primary benefit, however, is that the data cannot be tampered with. Ablative WORM media is an excellent choice for storing legal, medical, and other important documents.

**Table 24.** *Advantages/disadvantages of WORM drives*

Advantages	Disadvantages
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• durability Disks can last up to 100 years.</li><li>• high capacity—from 650MB for CD-R up to 15GB for a 12" platter</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• high cost media and hardware CD-R is an exception to this.</li><li>• data inflexibility As the name suggests, once data is written, it is there for good, occupying disk space.</li><li>• slow access time relative to hard discs</li><li>• lack of standards</li><li>• lack of interchangeability</li><li>• incompatibility</li></ul>

## CD-ROM Rewritable drives (CD-RW)

CD-ROM Rewritable is a new proposed standard for creating a rewritable compact disc. Unlike CD-R, CD-RW discs can be reused many times. CD-RW specifies a 650 MB drive with an access time in the 300 ms area. CD-ROM drives capable of reading these disks will be called MultiRead-capable and will be available in 1997. Older CD-ROM drives will not be capable of reading this

format. Most DVD-ROM drives will also be able to read this format. In October 1996, Sony and Philips announced the first physical and logical file format specification for the new standard. The CD-RW physical format specification is set forth in Orange Book, Part III. While the logical data format is based on UDF (Universal Disk Format) version 1.5.



Originally, this technology was called CD-ROM Erasable (CD-E). On October 25, 1995, Philips announced the release of the first draft of Orange Book, Part III. Version 1.0, which contains the CD-E specification, was set to follow in the first quarter of 1996. According to the specification, CD-E discs were to be readable in CD-ROM drives, readable and writable in CD-R drives, and readable, writable, and rewritable in CD-E drives. CD-E drives were to be capable of reading all existing disc formats. Ricoh developed media for CD-E using an aluminum reflective layer, rather than the CD-R's gold. Additionally, it was to save data using phase change technology. For more information on phase change technology, see “Phase change optical drives” on page 104.

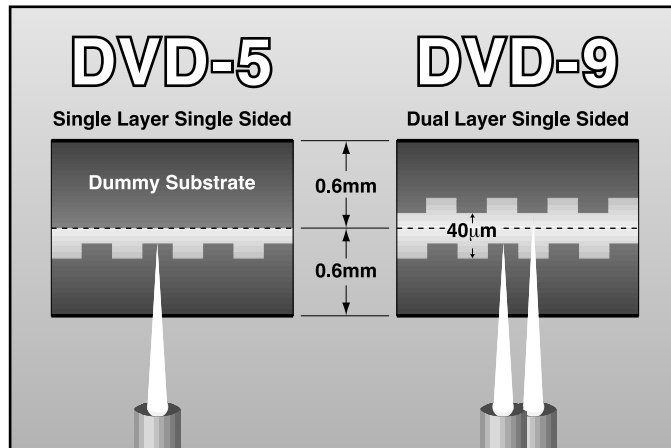
## Jukeboxes

Jukeboxes are similar to the music machines often found in restaurants and bars. A large chassis contains multiple optical cartridges, tapes, or CD-ROM discs that get shuffled around by a mechanical device. A particular platter is fetched and moved to the enclosed drive when the data on that cartridge has been requested.

Jukeboxes have differing capacity for the number of drives in the unit and number of disks supported. The more drives in the unit, the faster data can be accessed and the more data can be accessed by multiple users at one time.

**Table 25.** *Advantages/disadvantages of jukeboxes*

Advantages	Disadvantages
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• massive storage capacity, usually many gigabytes</li> <li>• multiple-user access</li> </ul> <p>Suitable for networked computers and large operations that need centralized archival storage.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• high hardware costs and possibly high maintenance costs</li> <li>• durability               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>More moving parts to wear out, so more things can go wrong.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• slow access time               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Slow when going from one cartridge another.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>



**Figure 44.** Comparison of single- and dual-layer DVDs

Digital Versatile Disc (DVD) is a new standard designed to be the successor to CD-ROM discs and VHS video cassettes. The DVD standard was first announced in 1995. At that time the 650 MB limit to CD-ROM capacity was becoming a barrier. Due to advances in multimedia, programs were growing beyond 650 MB. VHS, with its costly cartridge, terrible picture quality, and slow duplication times, has been looking for a successor for a while.

The DVD standard provides for up to 4.7 GB of storage on a 120-mm, CD-ROM-size optical disk (DVD-5). In the consumer format, DVD-VIDEO, it has room for up to 133 minutes of high-quality, 500-line, MPEG-2, compressed video with AC-3 Dolby Digital surround sound. The format achieves this capacity boost by using a smaller dot pitch allowing it to use a shorter wavelength red laser (650/635 nanometers).



**Dolby AC-3 is audio decoding that allows for 5.1 channels of digital surround sound.**

DVD discs use two bonded 0.6 mm substrates, reducing the distance between the disc surface and the physical pits. Lasers don't have to penetrate as far as they do on CD-ROMs, so pits can be more finely positioned. Also with two substrates, a separate layer could be added. It would be read by a different lens, allowing for increased capacity.

Other parts of the specification call for a dual-layer disk, DVD-9, with up to 8.5 GB capacity. Also specified are dual-sided flippable disks, DVD-10 and DVD-18, with capacities up to 9.4 and 17 GB. Write-once DVD versions,



known as DVD-R, are specified at up to 3.8 GB capacity. DVD-RAM specifies a rewritable version that provides more than 2.6 GB per side, utilizing phase change technology.

When used as a CD-ROM, DVD is called DVD-ROM. DVD-ROM may utilize the Universal Disk Format (UDF) ISO 13346 standard for formatting data on discs. This standard has been spearheaded by the Optical Storage Technology Association (OSTA). This would allow disks to be read/written on any platform, ensuring full data interchange.

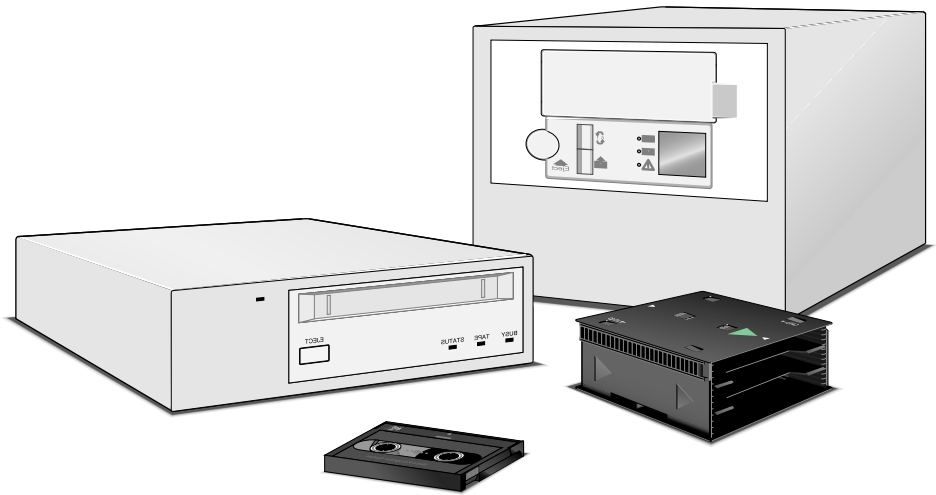
Most DVD products will be backward compatible with current CD-ROM discs because they include two separate optical pickup lenses. Initial drives should be about twice the price of current CD-ROM or CD Players. Future versions should rapidly fall in price. DVD drives included in computer systems will require MPEG-2 and AC-3 decoders to play DVD discs. These decoders could be placed on the drive or on an expansion card.

Because the DVD disc is higher density, it offers a basic quad speed transfer rate of 1.35 MB/s, equivalent to a 9x CD-ROM drive. The system's peak data rate is 10.8 Mb/s with an average sustained data rate of 4.94 Mb/s.

When used in consumer applications, this type of disc provides up to 100 minutes of D-1 quality digital video with Dolby AC-3 digital surround sound. Movies can now be stamped out quickly and cheaply. DVD disks can be manufactured using very few changes to current CD production techniques.

Due to copyright issues raised by the motion picture industry, DVD was not released as planned in 1996. The computer and motion picture industries finalized an encryption scheme in October 1996 that allowed the first DVD products to be shipped that same month. The first DVD-ROM drives for computers will ship in 1997.

## Tape drives



**Figure 45.** DAT and DAT autoloader tape drives

Tape drives use magnetic recording tape to store data in a fashion similar to audio tape recorders. One difference is that information is usually stored in digital form. The primary difference between the different types of tape drives is their capacity and the type of tape cartridge they use (such as 4 mm digital audio tape, 8 mm tape, quarter inch tape [QIC], Travan, and half-inch DLT).



Travan is a subset of the mini-cartridge format QIC (quarter-inch cartridge). At .315 inches, Travan tape is slightly wider than standard QIC. It allows a 750 foot tape length, which translates to larger capacity—up to 10 GB for proposed TR-5—and data transfer rates up to 1.2 MB/s.

Most tape drives include a compression feature that compresses data written to (or decompresses data read from) the tape drive on-the-fly. Compression ratios range from 4:1 for spreadsheets, to 2.4:1 for text files, to 1.3:1 for graphics files. The amount of compression you get depends on the type of data.

The most common tape drives are the low-cost QIC tape drives. They populate almost 80 percent of the market. These QIC drives are very popular on PCs. Next in popularity is the 4 mm DAT drive with about 15 percent market share, with the remainder in the 8 mm and DLT markets.

### Digital Data Storage (DDS)

DDS is a high-performance, high-capacity, streaming tape device designed for use on mid-range and high-end computing systems. They are used for local

and network backups or archiving. They allow you to back up a larger data capacity at a higher speed than many other types of tape drives.

Digital Data Storage (DDS) is a standard format for 4 mm tapes using helical scan recording. It was developed by Hewlett-Packard and Sony. Originally developed to replace the audio cassette, DDS has found homes in both pro-audio and computer areas.

- The first generation standard is DDS-1 (or simply DDS).
- Data compression was added to DDS-1 to produce the DDS-DC standard.
- Further enhancements, notably narrower tracks and thinner tape, led to DDS-2, the third generation. DDS-2 provides twice the capacity of DDS-1.
- DDS-3 will appear in 1996, offering higher capacity and faster data transfer rates due to the use of PRML read/write channels and a higher density metal particle MP++ tape.

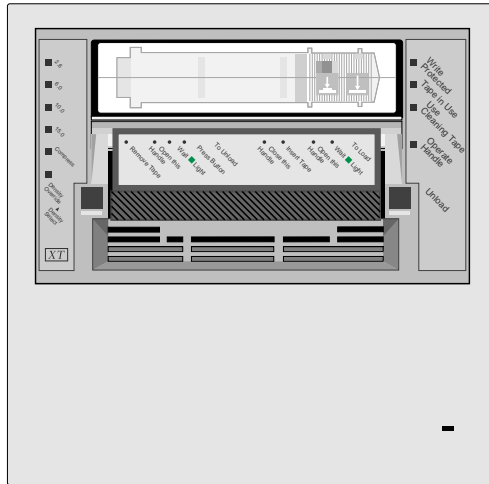


**PRML stands for partial-response maximum-likelihood. It is a technique used by a read/write head in a drive mechanism for detecting data. Instead of spacing out analog peaks as in peak detection, digital filtering is used to compensate for signal overlap. After filtering, the scheme identifies what are the likeliest sequence of data bits written to the media.**

**Table 26.** Comparison of features of DDS-1 through 4

Feature	DDS-1	DDS-2	DDS-3	DDS-4
Tape Length	60 or 90 m	120 m	125 m	180 m
Native Capacity	1.3 or 2 GB	4 GB	12 GB	24 GB
Compressed Cap	2.6 - 4 GB	4 - 8 GB	12 - 24 GB	24-48 GB
Channel	8,10 mod	8,10 mod	8,10 PRML	8,10 PRML

## Digital Linear Tape (DLT)



**Figure 46.** DLT tape drive

DLT is a high performance, high capacity, streaming cartridge tape device. It's often used for data backup or archiving. The design often includes:

- dual-channel read/write head
- Digital Lempel-Ziv (DLZ) high-efficiency data compression
- tape mark directory for maximum throughput and minimum access time

DLT allows you to back up more data at higher speeds than other personal computer-oriented tape products. In non-compressed mode, the drives have a maximum sustained transfer rate of 1.5 MB/s. In compressed mode, the maximum transfer rate is 3 MB/s write and 3.5 MB/s read.

Capacities range all the up to 40 GB on a single tape in compressed mode.

**Table 27.** Advantages/disadvantages of tape drives

Advantages	Disadvantages
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• low cost Most inexpensive way to back up data.</li> <li>• potential capacity Multiple cartridges increase capacity.</li> <li>• fast transfer rates Transfer rates up to 1.6 MB/s and beyond possible.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• slow access times Due to slow access and sequential access, inappropriate for on the fly, primary data storage.</li> <li>• reliability Not a very reliable medium over the long term. Subject to warping and shrinking.</li> </ul>

---

## All About SCSI

### Overview

---

Chapter 5 begins with SCSI background and basics, skims the surface of SCSI's technical waters—occasionally diving a bit deeper into computer-specific surf—and finally deposits you firmly at the shores of information beyond and outside the SCSI scope.

If you're unfamiliar with SCSI, you'll want to read Chapter 5 from beginning to end. Even SCSI gurus will benefit from this refresher. You'll get the most out of it if you've already read through Chapter 2, "All About Drives."

### SCSI Is Simple ...

---

Storage products need a way to connect and communicate with the rest of the computer. SCSI has emerged as a very popular method of interfacing storage products to a personal computer. SCSI, pronounced "scuzzy," stands for Small Computer System Interface. It is a standard specification that defines how computers and their peripherals connect and communicate with each other. SCSI is best known as the interface for Apple Macintosh hard disk drives.

In June 1986 SCSI-1 was adopted as an American National Standard by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI). It qualified as ANSI standard X3.131-1986.



**ANSI is a private, nonprofit membership organization that performs two functions:**

- **It coordinates the United States' voluntary consensus standards system.**
- **It approves American National Standards.**

**ANSI ensures that a single set of non-conflicting American National Standards are developed by ANSI-accredited standards-developers, and that all interests concerned have the opportunity to participate in the development process. ANSI does not develop standards. However,**

- **It provides the means for determining the need for standards.**
- **It ensures that qualified organizations develop those standards.**
- **It coordinates standards approval.**

ANSI established the X3 category for information technology. Some of the current technologies that fall under the ANSI X3 category are listed in Table 28.

**Table 28.** ANSI X3 categories for current technologies

ANSI Category	Technology
X3T10.1	Serial Storage Architecture (SSA)
X3T11	Fibre Channel, HIPPI and IPI
X3T12	Fibre Distributed Data Interface (FDDI)
X3T13	Advanced Technology Attachment (ATA) and Advanced Technology Attachment Packet Interface (ATAPI)

ANSI follows these steps to set standards:

1. Study group assembles to develop project proposal (six months).
2. Work group develops draft of proposed standard (six months)
3. Technical committee reviews and (possibly) approves draft (one year).
4. Standard is submitted to ISO (International Standards Organization) for installation.

The entire process can take from two to ten years.

ANSI's endorsement of particular guidelines, though not binding, exerts a powerful standardizing influence in the computer industry.

... and Complex

---

SCSI defines a command set that improves data exchange and enables use of several different kinds of peripheral devices with one or more host computers. The SCSI specification defines an input/output (I/O) interface that is variously described as:

- nonproprietary
- device-independent
- flexible
- low- and high-level
- intelligent
- eight-bit
- parallel
- peer-to-peer

These terms are explored in the sections that follow.

## Essential Terminology

---

SCSI jargon is esoteric but critical to understanding the underlying concepts. Here is terminology to acquaint you with some of the fundamentals. You'll also find these and other useful terms in the Glossary.

- **Bus**

The wires that provide the physical means for conveying electrical signals. Think of a bus as a conveyance for electrical signals rather than people.

- **Host**

The computer—specifically, its central processing unit (CPU) and SCSI chip.

- **Initiator**

A SCSI device, usually the computer—or more specifically its SCSI chip—capable of initiating an operation. In multiple-host systems initiators (hosts) may also be targets.



**A multiple-host system is a system that has more than one computer connected to the SCSI bus.**

- **Target**

A SCSI device, usually the peripheral, that carries out the initiator's request.

## The Origin of SCSI

---

A discussion of SCSI's origins almost begs the issue: SCSI is still evolving. What's happening today will no doubt later be considered part of its origin. SCSI-2 is already in place, and SCSI-3 is under development. Assume all references to SCSI herein mean SCSI-1, the original specifications from 1986.

**NOTE**

**For more information about SCSI-2, see “SCSI-2: A Transition From SCSI-1” on page 193. For more information about SCSI-3, see “SCSI-3” on page 202.**

Once the non-mainframe computer industry got started, its sprawling development defied control. Technologies spawned technologies, which were brought to market in many forms by manufacturers who pursued specific goals and niche markets. Some believed their implementation was superior to all others or hoped to establish a de facto standard that would reap substantial long-term rewards, perhaps even market domination.



There are two types of standards: **de facto** and **agency**. **De facto** standards are set by users over time. **Agency** standards are received, reviewed, passed, and published by a standards agency. **ANSI** and **IEEE** are standards agencies.

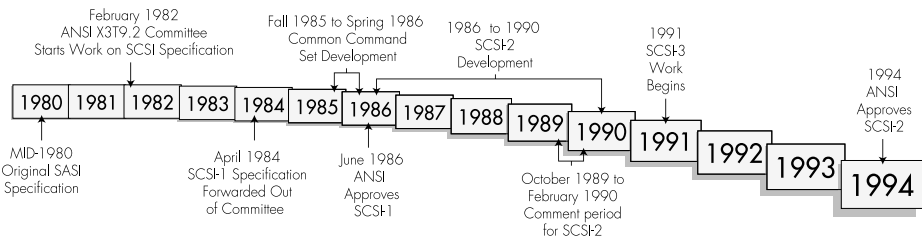
The good news: without imposed uniformity, creativity was not constrained:

- From a developer’s perspective, it meant they could try anything.
- From a buyer’s perspective, it meant everything was available.

The bad news? Many of these products wouldn’t work with anybody else’s.

This pervasive incompatibility among different vendors’ devices eroded buyer confidence and effectively limited the growth of the industry. In time, a consensus formed about the need for an open, or nonproprietary, standard that addressed host-to-peripheral communications. Device communications, particularly given the critical nature of data storage, was too important to ignore.

## SCSI History



**Figure 47. SCSI time line**

A wide-ranging confluence of factors created SCSI, and not everybody agrees on all the details. Here is our version:

In the 1960s IBM Corporation developed a bus that later became the most common way for third-party vendors to connect peripherals to IBM mainframes, most often its Model 360. It was called the block multiplexer or OEM channel. It became so popular that the federal government made it a processing standard (FIPS 60). It allowed multiple peripherals to intercommunicate at the same time. Other computer manufacturers objected, alleging that such an adoption gave IBM an unfair advantage, and took this decision to the courts.



**OEM** stands for **original equipment manufacturer**. It applies to a product that is manufactured by one enterprise then sold to another, where it is bundled and sold with the purchasing enterprise’s own products.



The suit was unsuccessful, but the pressure it exerted may have later kept ANSI, which was looking to create an I/O bus standard, from adopting the OEM channel as it stood. ANSI, wanting to create a standard for a nonproprietary I/O bus, did consider the OEM channel before beginning work on the intelligent peripheral interface (IPI) in the early 1980s.

**NOTE**



For more information on IPI, see Chapter 7, “Other Storage Interfaces.”

About 1981, Shugart Associates, a disk drive maker, joined forces with NCR Corporation and came up with an interface based on the OEM channel architecture called SASI, for Shugart Associates System Interface.



The individuals responsible for SASI later went on to found Adaptec, Inc.

Unlike the OEM channel, SASI was intended as a low-cost, peer-to-peer interface. Shugart wanted a logical interface to data on drives, while NCR wanted extensions for large devices and differential cabling. Three manufacturers—DTC, Xebec, and Western Digital—embraced SASI and built controllers for it. SASI eventually evolved into what is known today as SCSI.



A peer-to-peer interface involves two systems that communicate as equal partners, sharing the processing and control of the exchange.

In 1982, the ANSI committee founded the X3T9.2 standards accreditation group to create the SCSI standard. In 1983 the first SCSI chip from NCR appeared, the 5385, even before the SCSI-1 standard was finalized. A year later, the 5380 appeared with on-chip drivers, making inexpensive SCSI implementations possible.

## Apple's SCSI Influence

---

Apple Computer Inc. hopped on the SCSI bandwagon before any other major company. They introduced a SCSI-ready Macintosh Plus in 1986. The Macintosh line has relied on SCSI ever since.



Apple has not relied exclusively on SCSI, however. In 1995 they implemented IDE drives in some of their newer machines, including PowerBooks. For more information, see “IDE” on page 225.

Apple chose the SCSI interface primarily for its speed, device independence, and expandability. Formerly—in the Macintosh 128 and 512, and in fact with most computers manufactured prior to 1986—hard disk drives were connected to an existing port designed for a slow device. This was usually a serial

port, which was very slow and allowed connection of only one device. Connecting to the floppy drive port was not much better, although it was faster and allowed connection of two devices. Because neither were designed for hard drives, an inconvenient boot floppy was necessary to start the drive.



**The serial port is a connector on a computer or peripheral device that can send and receive data one bit at a time. A floppy port can send a receive data in parallel but provides much slower performance than a SCSI port.**

When Apple began shipping all Macintosh computers with a hard drive port that was standardized on SCSI—an interface that allowed the attachment of up to seven devices—a clear signal was sent to third-party vendors that here at last was something upon which they could standardize. This was a critical endorsement of the new interface.

Unlike many computers, the Macintosh “speaks” SCSI directly via a dedicated port, or connector. Because SCSI support is built-in, no adapter is required. This is true even of the low-end Macintoshes with one or no internal slots for peripherals. Every Macintosh can use basically the same SCSI peripherals.

PCs rarely have SCSI on the motherboard. Typically they require a host bus adapter card to provide SCSI support and connectors.

## A Good Start...

---

To an ever increasing degree, SCSI works.

- It works for connecting different devices to operate together as part of a system. This is called interoperability or connectivity.
- It works for boosting I/O performance.
- It works for hardware economy.

## Interoperability or connectivity

The SCSI specification enables diverse peripheral devices and one or more computer systems to work together. As many as seven SCSI devices can be connected to a computer in what is called a daisy chain.



**Devices are distinguished by SCSI ID numbers. SCSI ID determines the priority a device will have when it seeks to gain control of the bus. For more information on daisy chains, see “Physical connections” on page 147.**

SCSI is device-independent. It masks the internal operation of a peripheral from other peripherals and the computer. This way the computer doesn't need to know much about them to communicate. SCSI does this by treating peripherals as logical units (rather than physical, or actual units) responding to a known language, also known as a protocol. SCSI treats devices as storage abstractions. SCSI's ability to view its world in abstract terms is a powerful facilitator of its operations.

Each peripheral can comprise eight logical unit numbers (LUN—the numerical representation of the peripheral's address). Consequently, the capability to daisy chain seven peripherals to a host means that you are allowed a total of 56 logical units on a SCSI bus.



**LUNs allow for addressing subunits within a peripheral device. Using a CD-ROM jukebox as an example, the jukebox is identified by its SCSI ID, and the individual drive mechanisms within the jukebox are identified by LUNs.**

In principle, SCSI is like the United Nations. It's a universal forum that can accommodate a diverse world of manufacturers. Through SCSI, manufacturers can offer products that are both unique and compatible with other vendors' hardware. Even implementations of emerging technologies can be connected easily to a computer system if they speak SCSI (and more and more of them do).

Still, device independence is not complete. Special software is required to fully exploit new or dissimilar device types. This special software is called a device driver. It enables the host computer (initiator) and a peripheral device (target) to communicate with each other. For example, a device driver is needed if a system that previously included only the initiator and a hard disk drive expands with the addition of a scanner or CD-ROM drive.



**A device driver is the software program that translates commands between the computer's operating system and the storage I/O interface. For more information, see "Device drivers" on page 181.**

All devices on the SCSI bus are treated as equals in terms of their capability to communicate directly with other devices on the bus. Because of this, SCSI is considered a peer-to-peer interface.

Because SCSI defines standard physical and electrical connections for devices, connecting the parts of your system is easy.

SCSI also reduces software incompatibility. Drivers must use a SCSI Manager, or else much of SCSI's potential would be just be so much dead code. If drivers bypassed a SCSI Manager, they would have to be rewritten every time a machine shipped with a different SCSI chip or addressing mode.



For more information, see “SCSI Manager” on page 178, “Device drivers” on page 181, and “Call Chain” on page 183.

## Boosting I/O performance

The SCSI bus operates in parallel. Each byte of information is separated into bits and sent simultaneously along eight parallel wires in the SCSI cable.



**Bit is a contraction of “binary digit.” A bit is always either a 0 (off) or a 1 (on). It is the basic unit of information used by a computer. There are eight bits of data per byte. Byte is a contraction of “binary digit eight.”**

Because the SCSI specification describes such wiring—as well as other electrical operations and physical connections—it is considered a low-level interface. Yet SCSI also presents programmers with a nonphysical abstraction (a logical perspective) that can be manipulated with software. Because the SCSI specification details this command structure, it is also considered a high-level interface.

SCSI uses complete logical commands. For example, when accessing data on a hard disk drive, SCSI lets the initiator request a particular data block without having knowledge of where that data block physically resides on the drive. The SCSI drive takes this abstract (or logical) request and translates it into the specific request required to locate the data block. This reduces the inherent delay when information changes direction on the bus as devices communicate along the eight-bit-wide data path. It also reduces the amount of information that is exchanged, because one command takes care of several operational aspects at once.

By contrast, the OEM channel had to initiate these commands and responses:

1. Go to *X* place.
2. Wait to be told *X* has been found.
3. Act on what resides in *X*.

SCSI is more efficient and direct. It says:

1. Find *X* wherever it is, and act upon it in such and such a way.

SCSI is more logical and complete.

A SCSI peripheral’s controller (a SCSI chip) provides intelligence, allowing the peripheral to store and manipulate data. This frees the host CPU to perform other tasks. Typical drives have embedded microprocessors on the controller board, such as Intel’s 80C188 or 80C196, to control these operations. Drives using servos usually have dedicated servo processors that control actuator

movement, motor speed, and motor spin up. The SCSI chip can also free up the CPU by reducing an operation's dependence on the CPU during I/O.

NOTE



For more information, see “SCSI Integrated Circuits (Chips)” on page 135.

Because only one SCSI device at a time may use the bus to send its signals and await a response, most SCSI peripheral devices are capable of leaving the bus, completing a time-consuming operation, and then returning. This is known as disconnect capability. In the meantime, the host can work with other devices, or another host can use the bus. The result: multiple operations are performed simultaneously.



**A computer or peripheral using the bus is said to have gained control of the bus, and that's what we will use to describe that event. But it may help your understanding to bear in mind the bus-as-carrier analogy, and to think of data as riding the bus between stations (the devices or a device and the CPU).**

NOTE



See “Signal lines” on page 143 and “Bus Phases” on page 169 for more information.

## Hardware economy

SCSI relaxes constraints on the physical limits of the bus. The cable that connects SCSI devices can now reach 25 meters (about 80 feet) if used in a differential configuration. Apple and most PC host adapters, however, use the single-ended electrical specification, which is more restricted—six meters in length, or up to about 19 feet.



**Differential SCSI is a SCSI cabling scheme that uses the difference between two lines to indicate whether a logic “1” or a logic “0” is being encoded. The benefits include longer maximum cable lengths, greater protection from noise, and faster data transfer rates. For more information, see “Physical connections” on page 147.**

## ... But It Needs Work

---

A widely acknowledged problem with SCSI is that its early strength—flexibility—is now a problem. The specification lacks specificity.

Revision 17B of SCSI-1 defined classes and formats of commands, but except for one required command, Request Sense, SCSI devices were on their own. It was too easy for vendor-unique commands to proliferate, which they did. Consequently, few SCSI controllers could plug-and-play with any SCSI peripheral. This was especially true between 1984 and 1987, and particularly for devices other than hard drives. Without the benefit (constraint?) of a market “tradition,” implementations of newer technologies proliferated.

**NOTE**

See “SCSI Manager” on page 178 for more information on SCSI commands.

There is, however, a more comprehensive de facto standard for commands, called the Common Command Set (CCS 4B), which was included in SCSI-2. Since 1988, virtually all hard drive manufacturers have incorporated CCS or a subset of it, resulting in a reduction or elimination of vendor-unique commands. SCSI-2 also described CCS-like commands for non-hard disk devices.

**NOTE**

For more information, see “SCSI-2 commands” on page 195.

## Who Uses SCSI?

---

SCSI is becoming increasingly associated with high-end PCs, workstations, and fast hard drives. It also has virtual exclusivity as the interface for state-of-the-art storage technologies, such as external magnetic and optical disc drives, DAT drives, WORM drives, and CD-R drives.

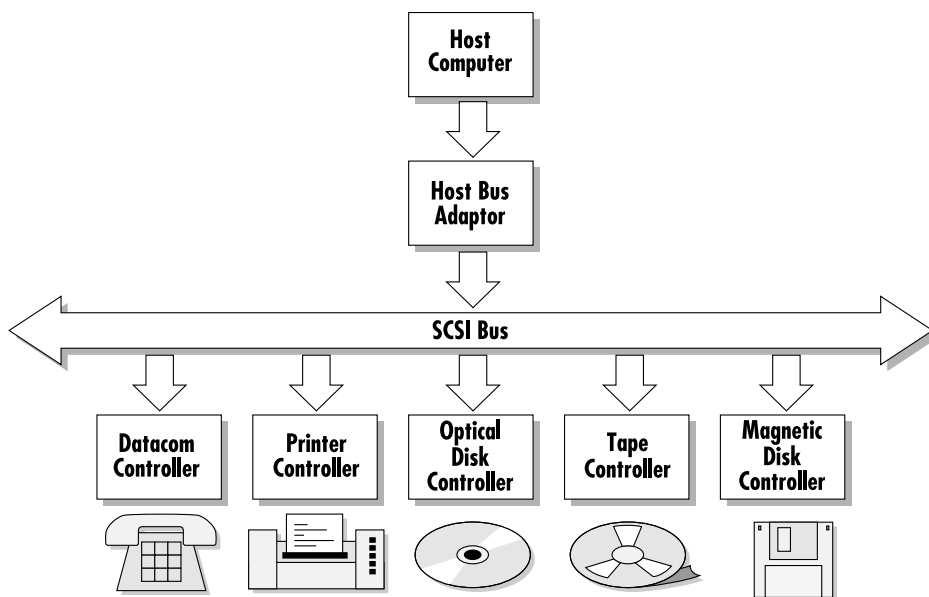


The “Small” in Small Computer Systems Interface (SCSI) has become a misnomer.

SCSI is also gaining popularity as computer systems continue to evolve into increasingly complex configurations, connecting such diverse peripherals as:

- hard drives
- scanners
- printers
- tape drives
- magneto-optical drives
- removable cartridge drives
- CD-ROM drives
- cameras
- plotters

Even IBM, long a staunch hold-out, is beginning to offer SCSI on most of its latest computers.



**Figure 48.** Single host/multiple controllers

### Chip overview



Manufacturers of SCSI chips include Adaptec, Qlogic, and Symbios Logic.

The computer with SCSI or a SCSI host adaptor uses an integrated circuit (IC) dedicated to handling SCSI operations. This IC is known as a SCSI interface controller. ICs are also called chips, because all ICs, SCSI or otherwise, reside on a silicon chip. The SCSI Manager controls the operation of this chip and provides it with an interface to the operating system software.

#### NOTE

For more information, see “Call Chain” on page 183 and “SCSI Manager” on page 178.

The latest wave of SCSI chips on add-in cards dramatically reduces the amount of programming needed to perform a SCSI transaction by performing in hardware (the chip) many of the functions formerly handled by software. This frees the computer’s CPU for other tasks.

The SCSI chip shipped in most current computers, however, does require some assistance, so the CPU is not entirely absolved from SCSI operations.

Chip sophistication—how much of the SCSI operation the chip can handle by itself—affects overhead and performance.



**Some machines have a microprocessor dedicated to assisting the SCSI chip.**

Among the chip's more critical responsibilities is managing the timing constraints defined in the SCSI specification, including the signal delays that are central to changing bus phases. This will be discussed in greater detail in the sections that follow.



**Communication across the SCSI bus is divided into stages known as phases. There are eight possible bus phases:**

- **Bus Free**
- **Arbitration**
- **Selection**
- **Reselection**
- **Command**
- **Data-In/Out**
- **Status**
- **Message-In/Out**

**For more information, see “Bus Phases” on page 169.**

## SCSI chip families

### Symbios 53C8X/53C9X family

Symbios was formerly known as NCR. The original Macintosh line relied on Symbios 5380 and 53C80 chips.



**The “C” in 53C80 is shorthand for CMOS, or Complementary Metal-Oxide Semiconductor. CMOS chips require less power to run.**

The 5380, found in early Macs such as the Macintosh Plus, is fairly simple. It offers the lowest hardware cost to implement the SCSI specification, and controls the following interactions:

- arbitrates for use of the bus
- performs retries
- selects a target
- sends commands
- transfers data



However, it needs the CPU to control many SCSI bus interactions, including:

- instigating the SCSI bus phase transitions
- reading the status
- handling data transfers

All of the interactions that the 5380 controls take place in hardware. The 5380 also operates independently of the main CPU's clock speed (expressed in megahertz), which lets Apple use the chip in any Macintosh.

The Mac IIfx as well as most other Macs use the 53C80; the Mac IIfx uses a customized 53C80 array. The IIfx integrates the 53C80 and a DMA controller on a single custom chip on the motherboard. The IIsi and the LC use the 85C80 chip, which offers on-board serial support in addition to SCSI, minimizing the number of chips needed to create the machine.



**DMA stands for direct memory access. It is a code-based mechanism that enables the transfer of data to or from a computer's main memory without using the CPU. For more information, see "Modes" on page 138.**

Later Macs such as the Quadra family utilized the 53C9X family of SCSI chips. The Quadra840AV/Centris 660AV used the 53C94. The Centris 610/650 and Quadra 605/700/800/900/950 used the 53C96. These chips combined faster 5 MB/s SCSI-2 performance with highly automated operation, and eliminated the need to tediously drive the chip through each SCSI phase.

Symbios Logic 53C7XX/53C8XX families

The Symbios 53C700 family includes an integrated DMA controller, a separate IC to handle bus sequences, and a two-million-instruction-per-second RISC (Reduced Instruction Set Computing Chip) I/O processor core, which can read commands from external memory and control one or more complete I/O transactions without CPU intervention.

The 53C700 allows the SCSI bus to be closely coupled with the host CPU without having to add an intelligent host adapter. This minimizes overhead and avoids degrading the CPU's performance. The 53C700 family interfaces to Intel's 80X86 and Motorola's 68000 family with virtually no fuss, and can also be used on host adapter boards and with other ICs.

Most chips available today cannot move data faster than 5 MB/s, although many peripheral vendors claim their products support the 10 MB/s rates offered by Fast SCSI-2.

The Symbios 53C710, introduced in 1990, supports Fast SCSI-2's 10 MB/s synchronous transfer rates. The 537C20, a 1991 entrant, also meets the 10 MB/s data rates, and supports 16-bit 20 MB/s "Wide SCSI" transfers.



For more information on Fast/Wide SCSI, see “SCSI-2: A Transition From SCSI-1” on page 193.

The 53C8XX family takes the 7XX family one step further by adding a PCI interface to the chip and by increasing the scripting and performance features.

- 53C810 is a Fast SCSI-2 10 MB/s chip.
- 53C825A is a Fast/Wide SCSI-2 20 MB/s chip.
- 53C875 is an Ultra SCSI 40 MB/s chip.
- 53C895 is an Ultra-2 SCSI 80 MB/s chip.

Qlogic ISP chip family

The Qlogic ISP family is a line of RISC-based SCSI chips designed for high performance. They combine a 7- to 18-MIPS RISC processor with a programmable SCSI back-end.

- ISP1000 interfaces Fast/Wide SCSI-2 to the Sun S-Bus.
- ISP1020 interfaces Fast/Wide SCSI-2 to the PCI bus.
- ISP1040 interfaces the 40 MB/s Ultra SCSI to the PCI bus.
- ISP1080 interfaces the 80 MB/s Ultra-2 SCSI to the PCI bus.
- ISP2100 chip interfaces Fibre channel to the PCI bus.



**MIPS stands for million instructions per second. It is a measure of a CPU's execution speed. RISC stands for reduced instruction set computing. It speeds up processing by employing as few computation instructions as possible to complete tasks. It improves on complex instruction set computing (CISC).**

Apple custom SCSI chips

Apple designed a chip called the Curio which combined Ethernet, SCSI, and Serial Communications. This chip was used in the initial PowerMac family (6100/7100/8100). It was also used in many PowerBooks. Following the Curio, Apple designed the MESH chip. It debuted in the first generation of Power Macintosh with PCI, the PowerMac 7500, 8500, and 9500. It is designed to provide Fast SCSI-2 10 MB/s performance with minimal overhead.

Modes

The SCSI chips function in one of three communications methods of operation, or modes:

- Normal
- Pseudo-DMA
- DMA

Normal

In Normal mode the Macintosh's CPU manages I/O communications. Normal mode is a drain on the CPU, which slows I/O performance. Normal mode is also known as Polling method, in which the CPU checks that there has been a Request/Acknowledge handshake with every byte of information that is transferred.

**NOTE**



For more information, see “Data Transfer Options” on page 139.

Pseudo-DMA

In Pseudo-DMA (direct memory access) mode, the SCSI chip oversees data transfer, letting the CPU tend to other tasks. This is also known as the Blind Data Transfer method because the CPU checks data block-by-block instead of byte-by-byte. Blind transfers are much quicker than the polling method because larger chunks of information are transferred at a time.

**NOTE**



See “SCSI, Apple-Style” on page 173 for a discussion of problems with Blind transfers.

DMA

In DMA (direct memory access) mode, the SCSI chip is programmed to transfer data to and from the SCSI bus directly into main memory, eliminating the need for CPU intervention.

In practice, the modes operate in tandem, with data transfer starting out in Normal mode and then turning to Pseudo-DMA or DMA mode. During the data transfer, the processor checks the status register to ensure that transfer is occurring.

## Data Transfer Options

---

### Essential terminology

- **Handshake**

To understand data transfer options, it's important first to understand the concept of the “handshake.” As in human affairs, the SCSI handshake signifies completion of a deal. Only here, it's between the initiator and the target.

Whenever data is transferred between the initiator and a target, it is marked by a Request/Acknowledge handshake. Either the initiator or target makes a request, and that request is acknowledged by its recipient.



For more information on handshakes, see the Request and Acknowledge entries in “Control signals” on page 144.

- **Data Transfer Modes**

Data transfer occurs in one of two modes, or protocols:

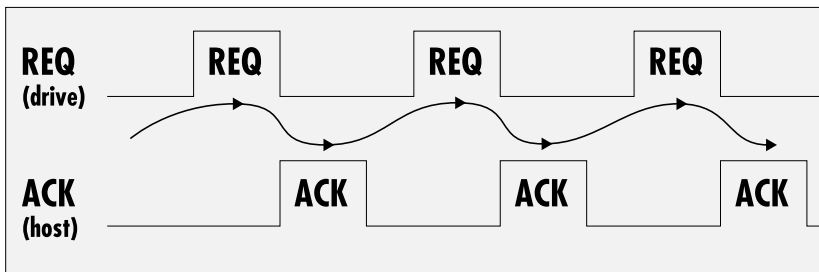
- Asynchronous
- Synchronous

The mode used is determined by the SCSI chip via messages between the initiator and target, usually after a bus reset.

- **Bus Reset**

A bus reset is a method of clearing (and consequently stopping) all action on the SCSI bus and returning to a known, free state.

### Asynchronous data transfer



**Figure 49.** Asynchronous data transfer mode

Asynchronous is a mode of data transfer that requires a Request/Acknowledge handshake for the movement of every byte of information. It has been used by many computers for all bus phases.



However, PCs have used synchronous mode from their inception.

For machines that use the asynchronous mode, it is the data transfer default. It is in effect at power-up, after a Bus Device Reset message, and after a hard reset condition.



A Bus Device Reset is a message that is sent to reset the operation of a specific device. A hard reset is toggling a SCSI line to reset all devices on the SCSI bus.

The SCSI bus in asynchronous mode offers a transfer rate of up to 5 MB/s. The SCSI specification doesn't define an upper limit for the asynchronous transfer rate. Instead, it defines minimum timing (about 250 nanoseconds) for the Request and Acknowledge control signals, which control information transfer in the asynchronous mode.



**Fast SCSI uses a timing of about 100 ns, while Ultra SCSI uses a timing of about 50 ns.**

Asynchronous data transfer is effectively limited, however, by cable impedance and other transmission-line problems, including whether the cable is operating at its optimal temperature and voltages. Asynchronous data transfers slow down as the length of cabling increases. A system with 6 meters of cabling could have a data transfer rate that is 25 percent slower than a short one-meter setup. The SCSI-2 specification addresses such cabling limits.

**NOTE**



**For more information, see “Signal lines” on page 143 and “SCSI-2: A Transition From SCSI-1” on page 193.**

## Synchronous data transfer

Not all SCSI devices support synchronous data transfer. Synchronous transfers allow a series of bytes to be exchanged before a Request/Acknowledge handshake is required. The number of Requests and Acknowledges will eventually match, but they are allowed to get ahead of one another. Synchronous data transfer may only be used in the Data Phase following a Selection Phase in which the SCSI ID for both the initiator and target are asserted.

**NOTE**



**For more information, see “Bus Phases” on page 169.**

Synchronous mode can have a “burst” data transfer rate as fast as 5 MB/s—40 MB/s in SCSI-2. Sustained rates are much slower. This is quicker than some interfaces, but not as fast as others that employ different cabling schemes.

**NOTE**



**See Chapter 7, “Other Storage Interfaces,” for comparison.**

Synchronous data transfer rates are not as limited by cabling as asynchronous data transfer rates.

## Negotiating synchronous transfer

The target and initiator must agree to use synchronous data transfer in a negotiation process that establishes certain parameters. These parameters include the transfer period (which determines transfer rate) and the Request/

Acknowledge offset, which sets the maximum number of Request signals that may be sent before a corresponding Acknowledge signal is received. An agreement to use synchronous data transfer remains in effect until:

- a Bus Device Reset message is issued
- a hard reset condition occurs

**OR**

- one of the devices otherwise elects to modify the agreement

**NOTE**



For more information, see “Bus Phases” on page 169.

Either the initiator or the target may recognize that negotiation for synchronous data transfer is required. If the initiator recognizes the need, it asserts the Attention signal and sends the target a Synchronous Data Transfer Request message that indicates these parameters.

**NOTE**



For more information, see “Control signals” on page 144 and “Messages” on page 164.

The target chooses one of four options:

- It agrees.
- It stipulates a different transfer period and/or offset.
- It sets the offset to zero. A Request/Acknowledge offset of zero means the devices will use the asynchronous mode.

**OR**

- It sends a Message Reject, which also results in the asynchronous mode.

If the target recognizes the need, it sends the initiator a Synchronous Data Transfer Request message that indicates these parameters.

One caveat needs to be considered when using devices with synchronous data transfer capability: following a reset or power-on, when a device first receives a command that requires data transfer, it will begin the negotiation for synchronous data transfer. The host must be able to do the following:

- negotiate for a synchronous or asynchronous data transfer agreement

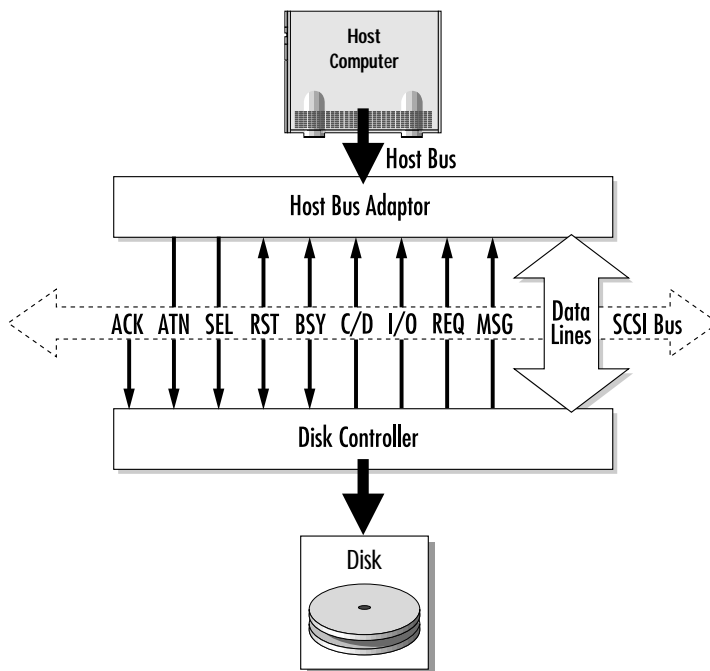
**OR**

- handle the negotiation and reject it at some point, thus forcing the asynchronous transfer protocol

**OR**

- reject the request, thus forcing the asynchronous transfer protocol

## Signal lines



**Figure 50.** Signal lines

The SCSI bus is composed of up to 68 lines, depending on the electrical specification used. Of the total, 18 are signal lines: nine transmit data signals; nine transmit control signals; the rest are connected to ground, except for line 25, which is left open.

### Data signals

Data signal lines convey data, commands, messages, bus status, and SCSI ID. Data signal lines are called DB (for Data Bus) and are numbered from 0 to 7. DB7 carries both the data and ID for the device with the highest priority, which is usually the computer. DB0 represents transmission of the least significant device. Each DB line may carry a different SCSI ID, and thus transmit data for a different device.

DB0 through DB7, however, adds up to only eight lines. The ninth data-signal line is reserved for parity, which is a self-checking code that tracks the accuracy of binary digits (zeros and ones).



SCSI uses odd parity, which requires that the total of the binary digits must come out odd. With odd parity, if the total of the digits does not come out odd, error correction is automatically initiated. Parity is a SCSI bus option in SCSI-1 but is required in SCSI-2. If used, parity must be supported by all SCSI devices on the bus. It is valid for all Information Transfer phases (Data, Command, Status, and Message) as well as the Selection and Reselection phases. The Macintosh models previous to the Quadra 840AV didn't use parity, while most PC SCSI host adapters do.

## Control signals

Control signals direct communications and determine bus phases. There are nine control signals:

- Control/Data
- Input/Output
- Select
- Busy
- Message
- Request
- Acknowledge
- Attention
- Reset

The control signals are listed and defined in Table 29 on page 145. But first, it's important to understand some related terminology.

- **Arbitration**

How SCSI devices vie for control of the bus during an optional bus phase.

- **Assert**

Usually assert means to send a control signal. For two control signals, Control/Data and Input/Output, it means selecting one or the other.

- **Negate**

Usually negate means to withdraw a control signal or indicate its absence.

- **Command Complete**

The only message supported by all SCSI devices. Command Complete is sent by the target to the initiator to indicate it has executed the command (or a series of linked commands) and that a valid status has been sent to the initiator.

Command Complete is neutral. It is up to the status byte to indicate whether or not the command was completed successfully.

**NOTE**



For more information, see "Messages" on page 164.



*The nine control signals*

Table 29 lists and describes the nine control signals. The industry-standard nomenclature is in parenthesis.

**Table 29. The nine control signals**

Signal	Description
Control/Data (C/D)	The target uses this signal to indicate whether control or data information is being transferred. If the signal is asserted (true or positive), command, status, or message information is being passed. A negated signal (false) means it's data.
Input/Output (I/O)	The target uses this signal to indicate the transfer direction. Asserted (true) means it moves from initiator to target. Negated (false) means it moves from target to initiator.
Select (SEL)	The initiator asserts Select (and a SCSI Device ID on the DB line) to select a target to perform a command. In systems that allow the target to disconnect while performing a command, the target also asserts Select to reconnect to the initiator. <b>NOTE:</b> A system that allows the target to disconnect while performing a command is called an arbitrating system. For more information, see "Bus Phases" on page 169.
Busy (BSY)	"Wired-or" or "Or-tied" signal that indicates the bus is in use. A "wired-or" or "or-tied" signal means it takes simultaneous signals from more than one device to be driven true or positive. The initiator and the competing targets assert Busy during the Arbitration Phase. During the Selection Phase, the selected target asserts Busy to acknowledge selection, while the targets that were not selected withdraw.
Message (MSG)	The target asserts Message to indicate that a message is being sent over DB lines.
Request (REQ)	The target asserts Request to initiate a data transfer. If the bus is in the Information-In Phase (the I/O signal is negated, so information is going from the target to the initiator), the initiator responds to requests by accepting data from the bus. If it's Information Out (I/O signal is asserted, so the flow is initiator to target), the initiator places data on the bus. The initiator then asserts Acknowledge.
Acknowledge (ACK)	The flip side of the Request/Acknowledge coin. The initiator asserts Acknowledge to let the target know it's complied with the request. The Request/Acknowledge handshake takes place after every information transfer. For more information on handshakes, see "Data Transfer Options" on page 139.
Attention (ATN)	The initiator asserts Attention to let the target know it has a message available. If the target supports optional messages, it can ask for the message by going into the Message-Out Phase.
Reset (RST)	"Wired-or" signal that clears the bus. RST creates a Bus Reset condition. For more information, see "Bus Conditions" on page 158. Reset may be used by any SCSI device on the bus. Usually, it is asserted only by the initiator, and typically only during power-up; however, the initiator may use it to reset a device that is not responding.



See “Appendix C: The Deep End,” for the signals asserted during different bus phases.

## SCSI ID

---

The SCSI identification (ID) number identifies the individual SCSI device, and so is sometimes referred to as a SCSI Device *address*. It has two purposes:

- It allows SCSI devices to find one another along the bus. An ID allows one device to distinguish itself and to call another device on the bus, identify itself, and query the other device for its ID.
- The SCSI ID allows the devices to be ranked, or prioritized, so that the bus can control which device gains access at a particular time. Those with higher IDs are admitted before those with lower IDs. This is important because only one pair of SCSI devices at a time—an initiator and a target—can be in active communication.

Each SCSI device must get its own unique SCSI ID number, which refers to the data signal line the SCSI device uses (Table 30).

**Table 30.** *Data buses and related SCSI IDs*

Data Bus	SCSI ID
DB0	SCSI ID = 0
DB1	SCSI ID = 1
DB2	SCSI ID = 2
DB3	SCSI ID = 3
DB4	SCSI ID = 4
DB5	SCSI ID = 5
DB6	SCSI ID = 6
DB7	SCSI ID = 7

You do not have to assign the ID numbers sequentially. For example, it's fine to have only three SCSI devices that are numbered ID6, ID3, and ID1. The IDs are not related to the physical order in which the devices are arranged along the bus. ID7 is usually reserved for the host computer.



**If SCSI IDs conflict, neither device is likely to boot, and either could be damaged. SCSI IDs are usually changed through software or by accessing a switch on the back of the device.**

DB7 carries the highest priority ID (important for arbitration) and is usually reserved for the computer; DB6 is next, and so on. If the computer has an internal hard disk, it is usually connected to DB0, with SCSI ID0.



**The SCSI ID code is transmitted during the Selection and Reselection phases. See “Pin assignments” on page 153 for more information on how this is implemented.**

Apple SCSI peripherals are shipped with pre-assigned SCSI ID numbers. If you don't have more than one of the same type of Apple SCSI device on the bus, there should be no need to change ID numbers. On other companies' external peripherals, for both PCs and the Macintosh, IDs are usually set by changing a thumbwheel or pressing push buttons. Some of these devices may require a utility program for setting IDs.

## Physical connections

---

### SCSI cables

Cabling is often overlooked when putting together a system, and that is a mistake. Sloppy or poor-quality cabling is a common source of many problems. In fact, much of the work of SCSI-2 and SCSI-3 involves improving SCSI's external cabling schemes, such as placing all data signal and parity lines on the outside of round cables and putting control signal lines at the center to minimize the effects of signal noise from the data lines. Some premium quality cables have used this scheme since the advent of SCSI-1.

#### NOTE



**For more information on upcoming cable implementations, see “SCSI-2 highlights” on page 195.**

Internal SCSI cables are usually 50-pin flat ribbon cables. They usually run from the SCSI host adapter to each drive inside the computer.

For external SCSI cables, to ensure high quality, we recommend the use of double-shielded, twisted-pair, 28 AWG wiring. REQ and ACK should be together with GND in the middle. Control signals should be placed out side of the REQ/ACK layer. The data and parity signals should be on the outside layer.

#### NOTE



**For more information on REQ, ACK and GND, see “Essential terminology” on page 139.**

Devices are connected to the computer on the SCSI bus by daisy-chaining cables: one SCSI device is plugged into the computer's SCSI port, and then a second device is plugged into the first device, and so on, up to a total of seven devices, not including the computer.

Cables typically have a characteristic impedance of 100 ohms. We recommend that you use cables with the same impedance, and ideally ones that come from the same company. Cables from different companies or with dissimilar impedances may create signal noise and other irregularities, and place an increased burden on proper termination. Cabling becomes more critical as faster data transfer rates are achieved.



**Impedance refers to a measure of the total opposition to current flow in an alternating current (AC) circuit. For more information on termination, see “Termination” on page 153.**

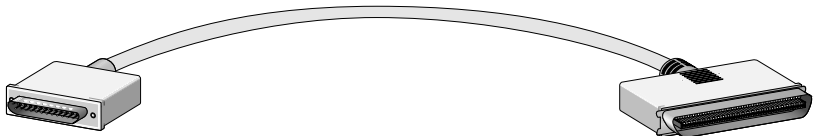
Because most SCSI devices have two 50-pin ports, standard SCSI cables include at least one 50-pin connector.

Your system may include three types of SCSI cables:

- SCSI system cable
- peripheral interface cable
- cable extender

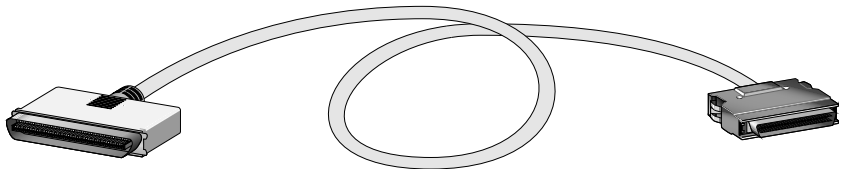
SCSI system cable

The SCSI system cable attaches the first SCSI device on the bus to the computer. Macintosh versions have a male 25-pin connector to connect to the computer, and a 50-pin connector to plug into the SCSI device. This cable is often referred to as 25-50 cable.



**Figure 51.** 25-50 Macintosh SCSI system cable

PC versions have a male 50-pin high-density connector to connect to the SCSI host adapter, and a 50-pin connector to plug into the SCSI device.

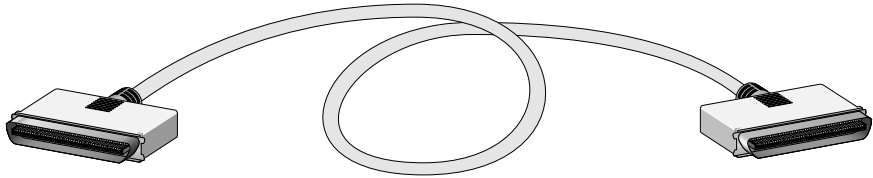


**Figure 52.** 50-high-density 50 PC SCSI system cable

## Peripheral interface cable

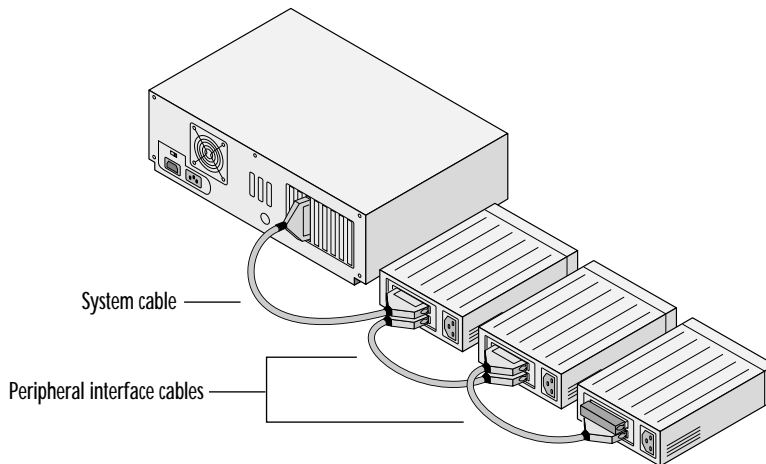
The peripheral interface cable lets you daisy chain SCSI devices, one after the other, up to a total of seven, not including the computer.

This cable typically has two (male-male) 50-pin connectors. It is referred to as a 50-50 cable.



**Figure 53.** 50-50 peripheral interface cable

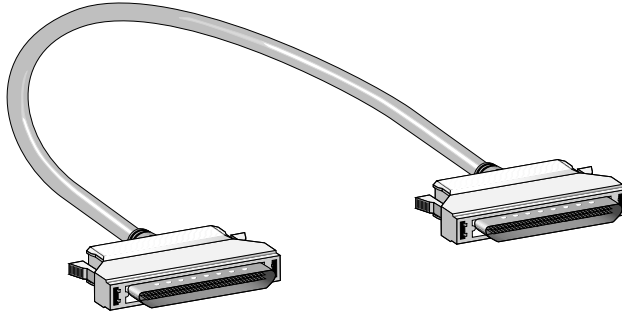
Peripheral interface cables are used to daisy chain external devices (Figure 54).



**Figure 54.** Daisy chaining external devices

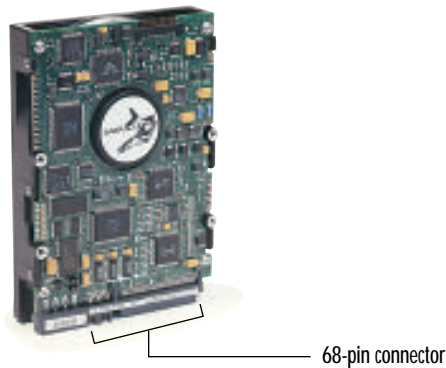
## Cable extender

The cable extender functions as an extension cord. Cable extenders can be attached to one another (male-female), to a system cable, and to a peripheral interface cable.



**Figure 55.** Cable extender

Systems that support SCSI-2 Fast and Wide have a male, 68-pin, high-density connector to connect to the SCSI host adapter, and a 68-pin connector to plug into the wide SCSI device. Some Wide host adapters include a 68-50 cable to attach narrow SCSI devices to a Wide SCSI bus.



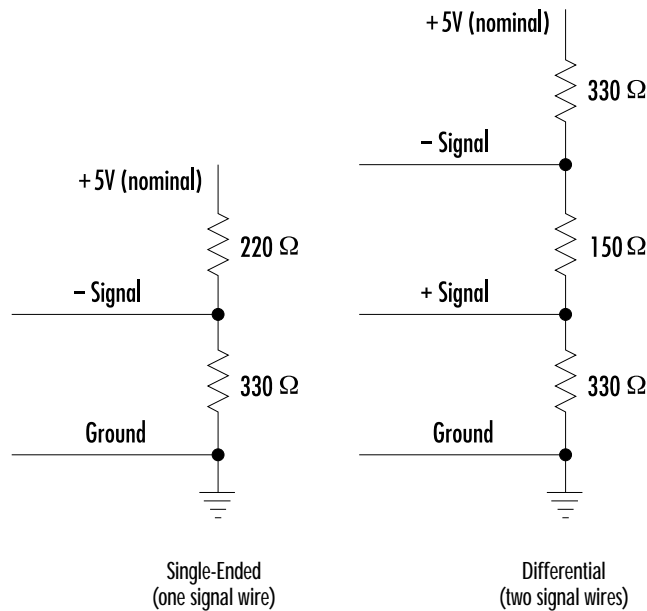
**Figure 56.** Internal fast/wide drive with a 68-pin connector

There is also a small length of a cable with connectors, called a stub, that connects internally from the SCSI port to the SCSI device housed inside its box.

There are limits to the length of the SCSI bus, beyond which the signals begin to deteriorate. A realistic and safe guideline is 3 meters (about 10 feet).



## Electrical specifications



**Figure 57.** Termination circuits: single-ended and differential

One of two electrical specifications may be used for the cabling that connects SCSI devices:

- single-ended
- differential

These cabling schemes are not compatible and therefore cannot be mixed on the same bus.

Single-ended is much more common industry-wide, because it is less expensive and is adequate for systems that perform at a low level. However, it relies on tight termination tolerances. Going beyond its narrow margin of error can cause problems. The Macintosh line uses single-ended exclusively, as do most PCs. Third-party vendors provide differential support.

## Single-ended

In a single-ended configuration, signals on a cable are differentiated according to the voltage of one wire (up to as high as 5 volts) relative to a common ground (0 volts).

A signal line will be recognized as asserted (true) or negative (false) according to the strength of its signal and whether it is active high or active low:

- Active high signals are asserted when the signal strength is above a certain voltage, which is typically over 2.5 volts (plus or minus a five percent margin of error).
- Active low signals are those that are asserted when the voltage falls below a stated level, which is typically under 0.4 volts. Windows of error may occur if the bus misinterprets a signal that is close to the cutoff. Proper termination is crucial in controlling these glitches.

This specification is intended for cables up to six meters long (about 19 feet) and for connecting internal SCSI devices. Apple ignores this convention by using single-ended cable to connect everything, both internal and external. Though outside the SCSI specification, this is not actually a violation of it.

## Differential

A differential cable configuration determines signals by contrasting the voltage difference between two wires. It is mainly intended for connecting devices externally. Differential has the advantage of allowing cable lengths up to 25 meters (about 80 feet). It is also more robust and less subject than single-ended to signal noise and other termination problems.

However, differential cabling requires more powerful drivers, which in turn require an additional chip. The device itself and the SCSI port host adapter must be designed to use differential cabling. This boosts a device's price. For these reasons, systems that use a differential electrical specification are less popular than those that use single-ended.

## Connectors

The Macintosh line primarily uses a DB-25 external SCSI connector. (The exception is the PowerBook, which uses a small, square 30-pin connector.) Twenty-five pins means the cable has 25 lines for transferring information.

### NOTE



For more information, see “Pin assignments” on page 153.



Macintosh SE II and newer Macintosh models provide two SCSI connectors:

- The standard DB-25 external connector, located in the back of the Macintosh (except PowerBooks)
- An internal, 50-pin, dual-row header connector for internal hard disks, located inside the Macintosh



Some Macintosh models have two SCSI chips for dual-channel SCSI. These models include the Quadra 900/950, PowerMac 8100, and PowerMac 7500/8500/9500. On the Quadra 900/950s, the second internal SCSI connector is hidden under the power supply. On the others, the internal SCSI connector is on a different channel than the external.

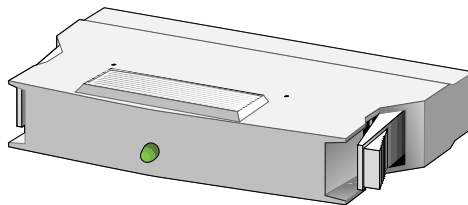
Early IBM PS/2 models used 60-pin high-density external SCSI cables. Most PC and Macintosh SCSI host adapters use high-density 50- or 68-pin cables. Most external SCSI devices have two 50-pin Centronics-style ports that accommodate the SCSI standard connector described above.



Centronics is a printer manufacturer whose 50-pin connector has become an industry standard. Instead of using projecting pins that seated in pin-holes, they designed a connector that mated flat metal strips. See “SCSI-2 highlights” on page 195 for information on upcoming connector implementations.

## Pin assignments

### Termination



**Figure 58.** 68-pin SCSI terminator

Termination means closing off the ends of the circuit. You do this to accomplish two things:

- to absorb signals at each end and thus dampen reflections and signal resonance
- to create enough difference between low and high signal levels for the devices on the bus to differentiate between the signals and thus communicate efficiently

Devices chained together on a SCSI bus form an electronic signal path. Signals tend to rebound off the end of the SCSI path and cause interference. Interference can cause problems with your computer and your SCSI devices.

Termination on a SCSI bus:

- preserves high transmission speeds
- cleans up the signal along the length of the bus
- provides a reasonable degree of immunity from electrical noise

Termination is required for the SCSI bus to work. A bad signal anywhere on the chain can cause all of the SCSI devices, in some cases the computer itself, to function improperly.

#### *Types of Termination*

Physically, terminators generally take three forms. Electrically, terminators are the same, varying only in where and how they are installed. Table 31 lists and describes types of termination.

**Table 31.** *Types of termination*

Terminator	Description
On-Device Terminators	These are known as resistor packs (or sips or dips). You only remove them to add a second drive or to add a drive to a system where the motherboard is terminated. They reside on the SCSI device itself and are almost always removable. Always note the orientation of the resistor packs before attempting to remove them. They are polarized and must not be inserted backwards. Some newer drives have resistors permanently mounted on the drive. On these drives, there is a jumper to enable or disable termination.
External Terminator Blocks or Plugs	These are short plug-like devices and are inserted between an external hard drive's SCSI connector and the SCSI cable, or on the second connector if one exists. (See Figure 58.) Don't confuse these with the on-device terminators. On-device literally means on the drive mechanism—not on the external connector. Never use the external terminator when the drive inside a cabinet has terminators installed on it.
Main logic board terminators	These may look like a SIMM or a narrow plug. They are used only when there is no internal hard drive in the Macintosh. On the Macintosh, main logic board terminators are inserted into the 50-pin SCSI connector on the main logic board where the cable for an internal drive would normally connect. These main logic board terminators are keyed (a polarity notch) and must never be inserted backwards.  The Quadra 800/900/950 have a terminator on the internal drive cable itself. This means that internal SCSI devices should not be terminated.
Switched Termination	Some SCSI peripheral vendors also use switched termination. This means they have a type of switch that controls whether or not the device is terminated. A switched termination terminator is actually either an on-device terminator or an external terminator block or plug, but is controlled electronically via a switch.

*How important is termination?*

Terminating resistors, usually referred to as either terminators or resistors, tell the computer where the SCSI bus begins and ends. They also play a role in matching the impedance of the various cables on your system (especially important if devices are daisy-chained). The significance of termination increases as cable lengths and data transfer rates increase.

Proper termination is critical for ensuring that voltages, and thus signals, are accurately conveyed on the bus. Improper termination can cause the following problems:

- erratic operation (such as power-up problems)
- signal noise (reflected or unwanted signals or voltages)
- general bus failure

Symptoms of improper termination include:

- hard disk drives that do not spin up immediately upon being powered-on
- drives that spin up but do not mount (do not appear on the Desktop or do not display a drive letter)
- a system that won't boot-up
- a system that shows a sad icon (Macintosh only)
- system error
- a system that crashes when copying a lot of data
- a "hang" during data transfer or information access

*Termination do's and don'ts*

In most cases SCSI signals must be terminated at the physical start and end-points of the bus. There should be exactly two terminators:

- one for the first physical device on the bus
- one for the last physical device on the bus

Devices considered to be on the bus include all internal and external devices. Typically, the SCSI bus starts with the host computer.

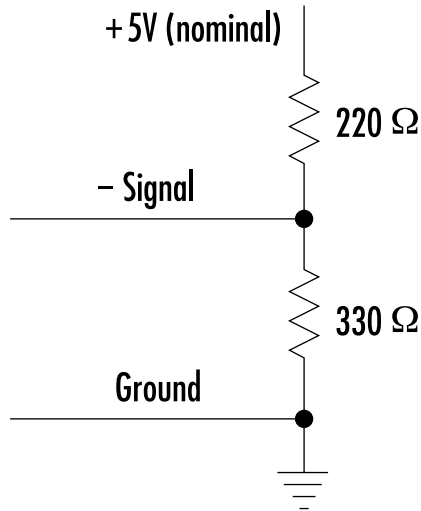
Each additional terminator beyond the recommended two increases the signal intensity and, apart from wreaking havoc with the signals, can cause damage to sensitive components. Devices in the middle of the bus must have their terminators removed. We recommend that you return the device to the vendor for this procedure unless the terminator is attached externally.

It is not always easy to tell which type of termination a device requires. Reading the device's owner's manual, contacting the vendor, or opening the chassis and poking around inside for terminators are some ways of telling which type

of terminator is needed (we do not endorse the latter approach). If a device requires internal termination, we recommend that it be set by a qualified technician. If the device requires external termination, most users are qualified to attach an external terminator to one of the external SCSI ports usually found on the back of the device.

Terminators are available in both 50-pin versions for narrow SCSI and 68-pin versions for Wide SCSI.

*Termination power*



**Figure 59.** *Termination power circuit*

A device on the SCSI bus requires terminating resistors and terminator power for those resistors. Terminator power generally runs in the 4.25V to 5.25V range, with currents in the 900 to 1500mA range.

In general, the SCSI device is responsible for providing its own terminator power via a diode that prevents power from flowing back to the SCSI device. If a device does not provide this power, it may not work properly.

Some of the devices that supply termination power (TPWR) to the SCSI bus can cause problems if they are used on the internal bus of the Power Macintosh 8100/8150/9150. Any drives attached to this bus should be configured with TPWR disabled, regardless of whether they are terminated or not.

The SCSI specification requires terminator power to be provided by the SCSI connector, but the PowerBook family and the old Macintosh Plus depart from

the ANSI guidelines here. The rest of the Macintosh line can provide terminator power to devices connected to its external SCSI port:

- If the Macintosh detects that an external SCSI device **does not** provide its own terminator power, then the Macintosh will provide it.
- If the Macintosh detects that an external device **does** provide its own terminator power, then the Macintosh won't provide it.

When the Macintosh does provide terminator power to externally connected devices, it draws that power from its own power supply. One possible disadvantage to this is that on a system with many attached devices, it could weaken the effectiveness of the power supply.

Most Macintosh and PC SCSI host adapters provide terminator power to both internal and external SCSI devices.

#### *Termination examples*

Table 32 provides examples of how to set termination for various system configurations.

**Table 32.** *Examples of termination*

System Configuration	Termination
Internal hard disk drive	It must be internally terminated. It is the first physical device on the bus.
No internal hard drive	The internal SCSI port must be terminated.
One external device on the bus	The last drive must be terminated. It is assumed to be the last device.
Two SCSI devices daisy-chained to one SCSI port	The device furthest from the host (in terms of cable length) must be terminated.

#### *Active Termination*

As SCSI performance continued to improve, newer methods of termination were needed to handle data integrity problems that arose with the faster SCSI-2 buses. The main problem was double-clocking of REQ and ACK lines, caused by coupling of parallel signal wires, especially when they were not shielded.

Active termination attempts to address impedance mismatches by compensating for voltage. The SCSI-2 specification adds a voltage regulator to provide about 24mA of current into each asserted SCSI line over a considerable range

of terminator power values. The original SCSI-1 specification provided only 20mA when terminator power was at optimal value.

#### *Forced Perfect Termination (FPT)*

FPT was developed by IBM. It uses a resistor/diode network to pull current up until the diode threshold is crossed. The diode then maintains the voltage at the desired level. These terminators brought current levels into the 30 to 40mA range. FPT is used on the REQ, ACK, and SEL signals.

#### **NOTE**



**For more information on REQ, ACK and SEL signals, see “Essential terminology” on page 139.**

#### *Active Negation*

Active Negation adds drive circuitry to SCSI bus drivers that drive the line high when it is negated. Driving the lines high ensures that REQ and ACK signals are clearly recognized. For maximum utility, all devices on the bus should use this technology. Terminators are still needed to absorb the reflections at each end of the bus.

## Bus Conditions

---

A bus condition affects all attached devices and cannot be ignored. It is a critical operation mode and thus overrides other lines. There are two bus conditions:

- Attention
- Reset

### Attention condition

The Attention condition results when the initiator signals the target that it has a message ready. The initiator asserts the Attention control signal during any phase except Bus Free or Arbitration. The target retrieves the message at its convenience using a Message-Out Phase. The initiator can assert Attention only if it supports optional messages.

#### **NOTE**



**For more information, see “Bus Phases” on page 169.**

### Reset condition

The Reset condition kicks every device off the bus. It is caused when a SCSI device asserts the Reset control signal. A Reset condition may occur at any time, forcing the bus into the Bus Free Phase. Targets may go through a com-

plete power on self test (POST) sequence and clear out pending or current operations.

Further, SCSI devices support either one of two reset options:

- Hard
- Soft

As their names imply, Hard is more severe, and Soft is more forgiving.

Hard Reset

The Hard Reset option:

- knocks out all commands in process
- drops all SCSI device reservations (for disconnects and command queuing)
- returns all operating modes to their default conditions

This condition is asserted on the Reset signal line and goes out to all devices.

Soft Reset

In contrast, the Soft Reset option will:

- try to complete commands that were in process
- hold on to all SCSI device reservations
- maintain the SCSI device operating mode

The Soft Reset option has the advantage of allowing the initiator to reset the bus without affecting other initiators in a multiple-host system.

This condition is communicated via the Bus Device Reset message and is directed toward a specific device. In this way, it is distinguished from the other bus conditions.

## Executing Commands

---

### Command Descriptor Block

The Command Descriptor Block (CDB) is a six-, ten-, or twelve-byte data structure residing in the computer's memory that contains the command code and other information needed by a target to execute a command.

A target executes a command in three stages:

1. It gets and decodes command information from the CDB.
2. It transfers or receives data, if required.
3. It sends status information.

**NOTE**



See also “Bus Phases” on page 169 and “SCSI Command Descriptor Block” on page 295.

Each command is sent from the computer to a device as a CDB. There are several groups of CDBs. Each member in a group has similar offsets (locations in the CDB where certain parameters can always be found). Group 0 and Group 1 are the most prevalent:

- Group 0 CDBs contain Group 0 commands and are six bytes long.
- Group 1 CDBs contain Group 1 commands and are ten bytes long.

Group 1 commands are more frequently used for larger capacity peripherals (more than one GB), which have greater addressing needs. There are also Group 2 commands, which, like Group 1, are ten-byte commands.

Some commands require more information than can be conveyed in even a ten-byte CDB. For these, the CDB includes a “count byte” that tells the SCSI hard drive how many bytes it should request from the computer in the data phase, after it gets the CDB. SCSI-2 provides for a Group 5, 12-byte CDB that sends more information.

**NOTE**



See “SCSI Command Descriptor Block” on page 295 for tables that illustrate the content of different groups of CDBs.

## Pointers

Pointers reside in the CDB and keep track of command, status, and data transfers. The target places pointers in each byte of the CDB to track the execution of command information. There are two types of pointers:

- Current (or active)
- Saved

The target saves the pointer values so it can return to a byte if necessary. There is only one set of current pointers per initiator, but there may be multiple sets of saved pointers—a total of up to seven sets.

Although SCSI is otherwise optimized for I/O, this command overhead—having to build and process SCSI CDBs—slows throughput because it is performed on every SCSI transaction. Minimizing the number of CDBs will speed I/O.



## Commands

Table 33 lists and describes general device commands. To understand the descriptions, you should first understand the following terms:

- **Sense Data**

Sense Data informs on errors resulting from the previous command from the same initiator. It is saved until retrieved by that initiator or until another command is received from that initiator. There is an Extended Sense format, which provides more detailed information, and a Non-extended Sense format, which supports devices not supported by Extended Sense.

- **Sense Key**

The Sense Key bit is contained in the Sense Data. It is an error code indicating a particular classification of error.

Commands marked with a plus sign (+) are accomplished without disk access. A command followed by (NON) is not part of the Common Command Set (support for which is required by SCSI-2).



See “SCSI-1 commands and opcodes” on page 298 for the operations codes and sense key descriptions used with these commands.

**Table 33.** *General device commands*

Command	Description
Test Unit Ready	Checks if the drive is prepared to accept commands requiring disk access. If it is, the completion status byte indicates Good and the sense key is set to No Sense. If it is not ready, the status byte will indicate Check Condition, with the sense key set to Not Ready.
Rezero Unit	Requests that the drive actuator be moved to the cylinder zero and head zero position.
Request Sense +	Requests that sense data be sent to the initiator. Sense data is detailed error information generated by the previous command from the same initiator. It is saved until it is retrieved by that initiator or until another command is received from that initiator. There is an Extended Sense format and a Non-extended Sense format for devices that do not support Extended Sense. The Sense Key field helps determine why the error occurred.
Format Unit	Assigns logical blocks to physical sectors, optimizing sequential access and avoiding areas known or found to be defective. Formatting options vary with different drives. Loss of data typically occurs when this command executes. We recommend backing up data first.

**Table 33. General device commands (Continued)**

Command	Description
Reassign Blocks	Requests the drive to reassign defective logical block(s) to areas of the platter reserved for this purpose. The drive keeps and updates a known defect list. Defective logical blocks that have already been reassigned by the automatic reallocation feature of Mode Select will be reassigned again.
Read	Requests that the target transfer data to the initiator.
Write	Requests that the data transferred to the target be written to the medium. It specifies the logical block address at which to begin, and the number of contiguous logical blocks of data to be transferred.
Seek	Requests that the target position its head actuator at a specified logical block address.
Inquiry +	Requests that target identification information—manufacturer, model, and parameter specifications—be sent to the initiator. This includes the device's model number and various revision levels, as well as whether it contains removable media and supports the Common Command Set or SCSI-2.
Mode Select +	No disk access required if the Save Parameters bit is not set. Allows the initiator to specify the operating parameters of the drive, and optionally to save them for future commands.  A Mode Select command overrides previous parameters. Executing Mode Select in a multi-initiator system creates a Unit Attention condition for all other initiators.
Reserve	Requests that a logical unit be reserved for an initiator or some other specified SCSI device.  The initiator will have exclusive use of the drive until one of the following conditions exists: the same initiator issues another valid Reservation command superseding the last command; a Reset message from any initiator is received; or a hard reset occurs.  No error will occur if an initiator attempts to reserve a logical unit it has already reserved. Drives already reserved will return a Reservation Conflict status; however, if disconnection is supported, the drive will queue the Reserve request and disconnect. If some other initiator issues a Release command, the reserved drive will ignore it.
Release	Requests that a drive's reservation be canceled.  The Release message is only valid when issued by the initiator that reserved the drive. No error will occur if an initiator attempts to release a logical unit that is not reserved.
Copy	Provides the means to copy data from one logical unit to another or the same logical unit. The logical unit may reside on the same or different SCSI device. This command requires that the device support disconnect.

**Table 33. General device commands (Continued)**

Command	Description
Mode Sense +	No disk access is required if Save Parameters are not read. Enables the target to report its operating parameters to the initiator in either its current, saved, changeable, or default categories. This command complements Mode Select.
Start/Stop Unit	Requests that the drive be spun up or spun down. Can cause removable media to be ejected.
Receive Diagnostic Result + (NON)	Requests that the results of the self-test be sent to the initiator.
Send Diagnostic +	Requests that the drive to perform diagnostic tests on itself. This is usually followed by a Receive Diagnostic Result command.
Prevent/Allow Media Removal +	Enables or disables the ejection of removable media.
Read Capacity (NON)	Requests the target send information regarding the capacity and block size of the drive.
Read Extended (NON)	Same as Read command, but can access more blocks.
Write Extended (NON)	Same as Write command, but can access more blocks.
Seek Extended (NON)	Same as Seek command, but can access more blocks.
Write and Verify	Requests that the drive write the data it has received from the initiator, and to verify that it has been correctly written to the medium. Useful for optical drives.
Verify (NON)	Requests the drive to verify that it has correctly written data on the medium.
Read Defect Data (NON)	Requests that the drive transfer data to the initiator regarding defects on the medium.
Write Buffer (NON)	A diagnostic command for testing the target's memory and the SCSI bus integrity. It is used in conjunction with the Read Buffer command. Neither command affects data storage.
Read Buffer	See Write Buffer command.
Read Long (NON)	Requests that the drive transfer a sector of data, followed by error-correcting code (ECC) data, to the initiator. This command is intended for diagnostic purposes and is usually followed by the Write Long command.
Write Long (NON)	Requests that the data usually transferred by the Read Long command be written to the specified logical block address. The number and order of bytes should match those in the Read Long command.

**NOTE**



The SCSI-2 specification also introduces new commands. See “SCSI-2 commands” on page 195 for more information.

## Mode Pages

---

A device's behavior, or "mode," is determined by its operating parameters. These mode parameters are grouped into related pages that are numbered for easy reference. A mode page is the minimum unit that can be specified by the Mode Select or Mode Sense command.

**NOTE**

For more information, see "Commands" on page 161 and "SCSI-2 mode pages" on page 314.

A page consists of multiple parameters that must be specified whenever a page is invoked: Changeable parameters may be set to any acceptable value. Nonchangeable parameters must be set to zero or left unchanged.

Although optional, mode pages are of interest to users who wish to customize the operation of their drive.

The Mode Parameter List is sent by the initiator to the drive during the Data Out Phase. This list contains the Header, zero or more Block Descriptors, and the mode pages themselves.

The Header specifies the type of storage medium, if any, being used in the drive and the length in bytes of all Block Descriptors. When the medium type is set to zero, which is the default, it indicates that the medium is nonremovable.

The Block Descriptor specifies the logical block length for the drive including the density code, which is the density of the medium—usually used only for tape drives, the number of logical blocks on the medium in the density code, and the block length, which is the length in bytes of each logical block described by the block descriptor.

The rest of the data consists of one or more mode pages.

## Messages

---

SCSI messages are communications between the initiator and target for the purpose of interface management. A message can be sent in both directions: message-out from initiator to target, or message-in from target to initiator.

There are three types of message formats:

- single-byte
- two-byte
- extended (three-byte or longer)

The messages in Table 34 are defined by the SCSI specification. With the exception of Command Complete, support for these messages in SCSI-1 is optional. The SCSI-2 specification mandates support for a few of them and provides additional content to the definitions of others.



“SCSI-1 messages” on page 304 contains the operations codes for all messages listed in Table 34 and lists whether the message moves from initiator to target (out) or target to initiator (in). For more information on changes introduced in SCSI-2, see “SCSI-2 highlights” on page 195.

**Table 34.** *SCSI messages*

Message	Description
Command Complete	<p>Sent by the target to the initiator to indicate:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It has executed the command (or a series of linked commands)</li> <li>• A valid status has been sent to the initiator.</li> </ul> <p>Command Complete is neutral. It is up to the status byte to indicate whether or not the command was completed successfully. All SCSI devices must support the Command Complete message.</p> <p>A Command Complete or Disconnect message must precede a target's releasing the Busy signal. If the initiator detects that this has happened—as indicated by the resulting Bus Free Phase—it should consider that an error has occurred.</p> <p>For more information, see “Control signals” on page 144 and “Bus Phases” on page 169.</p>
Extended Messages	<p>Messages that require more than two bytes to send the necessary information. The messages supported by the disk drive are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Modify Data Pointers (In)</b> Requests adding signed argument to the value of the current data pointer.</li> <li>• <b>Synchronous Data Transfer (I/O)</b> Sent to establish synchronous data transfer and its parameters, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– The transfer period, which determines transfer rate.</li> <li>– The Request/Acknowledge offset, which sets the maximum number of Request signals that may be sent before a corresponding Acknowledge signal is received. Zero means the devices are using the asynchronous mode. Other than zero indicates a synchronous transfer mode has been agreed upon.</li> </ul> <p>Macintoshes previous to the PCI versions don't support synchronous data transfers although virtually all Macintosh and PC SCSI host adapters do.</p> </li> <li>• <b>Wide Data Transfer (I/O)</b> Establishes an agreement between two SCSI devices on the width of the data path to be used for Data Phase transfers between two devices. Initiated whenever it is appropriate to negotiate a new transfer width agreement, or whenever a previously agreed transfer width agreement may have become invalid. For example, after: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– A Hard Reset condition</li> <li>– A Bus Device Reset message</li> <li>– A power cycle</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>For more information, see “Data Transfer Options” on page 139.</p>

**Table 34. SCSI messages (Continued)**

Message	Description
Save Data Pointer	Sent from the target to tell the initiator to save the present active data pointer for that target. For more information, see “Executing Commands” on page 159.
Restore Pointers	Directs the initiator to restore saved pointers to the active state.
Disconnect	<p>Sent by the target to the initiator in Arbitrating systems to indicate that it is going to release the Busy signal and thus disconnect, and that it will be necessary to reconnect later to complete the operation.</p> <p>A Disconnect or Command Complete message must precede a target’s releasing the Busy signal. If the initiator detects that this has not happened—as indicated by the resulting Bus Free Phase—it should consider that an error has occurred.</p>
Initiator Detected Error	Sent by the initiator if it detects an error. The initiator will retry the operation. The target will respond with a Check Condition status, which terminates the operation.
Abort	Clears the operation. All pending data and status for the initiator issuing the Abort message are also cleared, and the initiator and target involved enter the Bus Free Phase. No status or ending message will be sent for the operation. In multi-initiator systems, the pending data and status for other initiators will be left intact.
Message Reject	<p>Sent by either the initiator or target to indicate that the last message was either deemed inappropriate or was for some other reason not implemented.</p> <p>For the initiator to send this message:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It asserts the Attention signal.</li> <li>• Then it sends its Acknowledge for the Request/Acknowledge handshake of the message that it is rejecting.</li> </ul> <p>For the target to send this message:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It goes to the Message In Phase and sends it.</li> <li>• Then it requests additional message bytes from the initiator.</li> </ul> <p>It does this so the initiator knows which message is being rejected.</p> <p>For more information, see “Bus Phases” on page 169.</p>
No Operation	The initiator’s response to a target’s request for a message, if the initiator has no message to send.
Message Parity Error	<p>What the initiator tells the target if one or more bytes in the last message received had a parity error.</p> <p>For the initiator to send this message:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It asserts the Attention signal.</li> <li>• Then it sends its Acknowledge for the Request/Acknowledge handshake of the message that it is rejecting.</li> </ul> <p>It does this so the target knows which message has the parity error.</p>

**Table 34. SCSI messages (Continued)**

Message	Description
Linked Command Complete	<p>Sent by the target to tell the initiator that a linked command has been executed and a status byte has been sent. The initiator sets its pointers to the initial state for the next linked command.</p> <p>For more information, see "Executing Commands" on page 159.</p>
Linked Command Complete (With Flag)	<p>Sent by the target to tell the initiator that a linked command (with the flag bit set) has been executed and a status byte has been sent. The initiator sets its pointers to the initial state for the next linked command.</p>
Abort Tag	<p>When one or more initiators have multiple I/O processes to be queued by a target, each I/O process must have its own queue tag. In such circumstances, the Abort Tag message is active (usable). Otherwise, it is unavailable.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The initiator sends the Abort Tag message to the target and, following successful receipt, creates a Bus Free phase.</li> <li>• The target clears out the identified I/O process whether it has started or is waiting.</li> <li>• All other pending status, data and commands for other queued or executing processes are not affected.</li> </ul>
Clear Queue	<p>When one or more initiators have multiple I/O processes to be queued by a target, each I/O process must have its own queue tag. In such circumstances, the Clear Queue message is active (usable). Otherwise, it may or may not be usable.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The initiator sends the Clear Queue message to the target and, following successful receipt, creates a Bus Free phase.</li> <li>• All I/O processes from all initiators in the queue for the specified logical unit are cleared from the queue.</li> <li>• All similarly identified executing processes are stopped.</li> <li>• All pending status and data for that logical unit for all initiators are cleared.</li> <li>• No status or ending message is sent.</li> </ul>
Terminate I/O Process	<p>Terminates current I/O processes without corrupting the medium (e.g., hard disk).</p>
Simple Queue Tag	<p>Specifies that the I/O process be placed in the disk drive's I/O process queue for execution. The order of execution can be arranged by the disk drive in accordance with an algorithm. This message is also sent by the target when it reconnects to the initiator.</p>
Head of Queue Tag	<p>Specifies that the I/O process be placed first in the identified logical unit's queue for execution. In-progress I/O is not preempted. A subsequent I/O process received with this message goes to the head of the queue for execution in last-in, first-out (LIFO) order.</p>
Ordered Queue Tag	<p>Specifies that the I/O process be placed in the disk drive's I/O process queue for execution in the order received, with respect to other commands with this message.</p> <p>NOTE: Processes with Head of Queue Tag messages jump ahead of processes with Ordered Queue Tag messages.</p>

**Table 34. SCSI messages (Continued)**

Message	Description
Ignore Wide Residue	Used with wide (16-bit) data transfer. Indicates that the number of valid bytes sent during the last REQ/ACK handshake of a Data-In phase is less than the negotiated transfer width. The "ignore" field indicates the number of invalid data bytes transferred.
Identify	<p>Sent by either the initiator or target to establish the physical path connection between the two. The Identify bits are set as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Bit 7 is always set to one to distinguish Identify from other messages.</li><li>• Bit 6 may be set only by the initiator, and indicates whether or not it supports disconnection and reconnection. It also indicates whether Save Data Pointer, Restore Pointer, and Disconnect messages are supported.</li><li>• Bits 2 to 0 specify a logical unit number in a target, and must be set to zero.</li></ul> <p>Identify is required in SCSI-2.</p>
Bus Device Reset	<p>Issued by the initiator to clear all current commands and pending operations. It forces a Bus Free Phase for all devices on the SCSI bus, but does not affect Mode Select command parameters. This message initiates a Soft Reset.</p> <p>For more information, see "Mode Pages" on page 164.</p>



## Bus Phases

Communication across the SCSI bus is divided into stages known as phases. There are eight SCSI bus phases:

- Bus Free
- Arbitration
- Selection
- Reselection
- Command
- Data-In/Out
- Status
- Message-In/Out

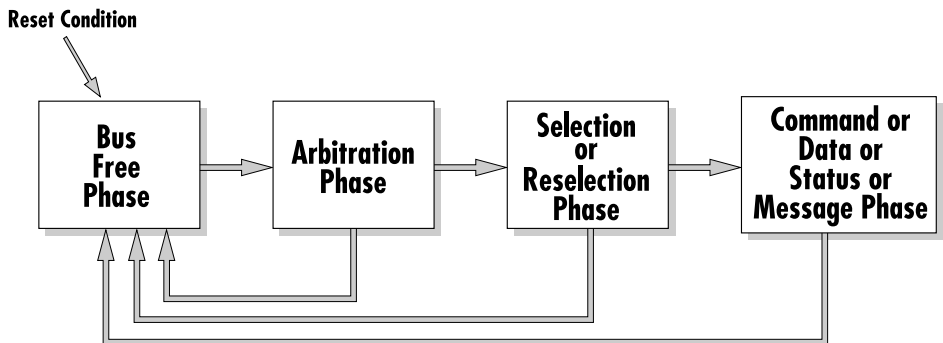
**NOTE**



See Table 35 on page 171 for a description of each bus phase.

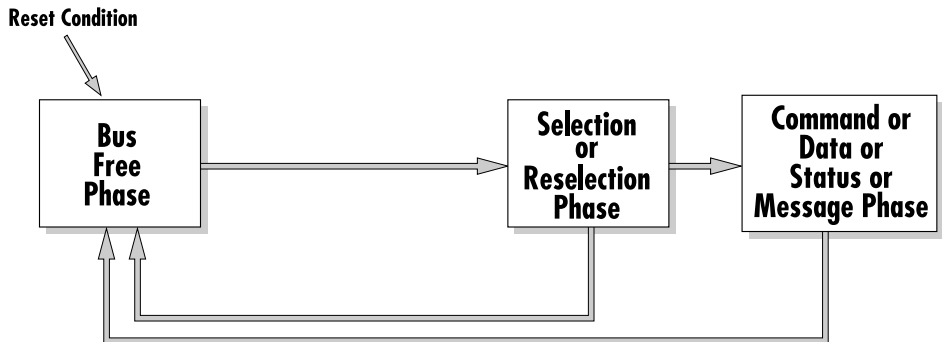
Phases are driven by control signals and preceding phases. The SCSI bus incorporates numerous time delays to ensure all the signals are at the right voltage level before changing phases. However, there is a maximum time delay after which the target will “time-out” and release the bus if signals don’t arrive in time. (The bus won’t wait forever.)

Figure 60 illustrates a bus phase sequence for a system that supports arbitration, where devices on the SCSI bus negotiate for bus access. Arbitration is essential to multiple-host systems and is required in SCSI-2.



**Figure 60.** Phase sequence with arbitration

Figure 61 illustrates a bus phase sequence on a system that does not support arbitration.



**Figure 61.** Phase sequence without arbitration

The first four bus phases, Bus Free, Arbitration, Selection, and Reselection, are controlled by the Select, Busy, and Input/Output control signals. The sequence of these phases is limited:

- The Arbitration Phase can only be entered from the Bus Free Phase.
- The Selection or Reselection Phases can only be entered from the Arbitration Phase.
- The Bus Free Phase, however, can be entered from any other phase.

**NOTE**



For more information on control signals, see “Control signals” on page 144.

The next four bus phases, Command, Data In/Out, Status, and Message In/Out, are called the Information Transfer phases. Unlike the first four phases, there are no restrictions on the sequence of occurrence in these phases. The Information Transfer phases are controlled by the Message, Control/Data, and Input/output control signals. The target drives these three signals and controls the changes between Information Transfer phases.



The initiator’s only way to disrupt the target’s control over the Information Transfer phases is to create a bus condition. For more information, see “Bus Conditions” on page 158. See “SCSI control signals and Information Transfer phases” on page 308 for a table describing the control signals asserted during the Information Transfer Phase.

Table 35 lists the eight bus phases and describes their related activities.

**Table 35. The eight SCSI bus phases**

Bus Phase	Description
Bus Free	<p>The bus is empty; no one is riding. This is SCSI's starting point at power-up, after a Reset, and where it returns when a command is completed.</p> <p>Both the Busy and Select signals must be negated for a defined period of time before this phase is entered.</p>
Arbitration	<p>This phase is where SCSI devices, including the computer, can vie for bus access.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Competing devices assert their SCSI ID number and the Busy signal on the appropriate DB line.</li> <li>2. The computer waits a defined period before examining the bus.</li> <li>3. The device with the highest priority SCSI ID "wins" the arbitration, gains control of the bus, and asserts the Select signal.</li> </ol> <p>Arbitration is necessary for multi-host systems, and is required in SCSI-2. Following Arbitration, the system goes to either the Selection or Reselection Phase. Non-Arbitrating systems skip Arbitration and go directly to Selection or Reselection.</p>
Selection	<p>In this phase an initiator selects a target device. Once selected, the target determines:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• What information will be sent down the bus</li> <li>• When it will be sent</li> <li>• Whether the information is going to, or leaving, the host</li> </ul> <p>(Also see the Information Transfer Phases described below.)</p> <p>An initiator, usually the computer, selects a device by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Asserting the device's ID number on the appropriate DB line.</li> <li>2. Negating the Busy and I/O signals.</li> </ol> <p>The target:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Detects its asserted SCSI ID, and the negated Busy and I/O signals (I/O is negated to distinguish this phase from Reselection. A positive I/O indicates communication flow is from the target to the initiator.)</li> <li>2. Asserts a Busy signal, causing the initiator to get off the bus.</li> <li>3. Negates the Select signal.</li> </ol>
Reselection	<p>In Arbitrating systems, a target that has disconnected from the bus (in order to perform a time-consuming task) gets reconnected in this phase.</p> <p>A target device asserts the Reselection signal and its own ID number. It gets reconnected if the bus is free or its SCSI ID has a priority higher than another device that is asserting the Select signal.</p>

**Table 35. The eight SCSI bus phases (Continued)**

Bus Phase	Description
Command	<p>In this phase the target requests command information from the initiator.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The target device first asserts the Request signal.</li> <li>2. The host, usually the Macintosh, goes to the Command Data Block (CDB) indicated by the Command Pointer, gets the information byte, sends it along the bus, and asserts the Acknowledge signal.</li> <li>3. The target picks the command information off the bus and negates its Request signal.</li> <li>4. When the host detects that Request has been negated, it gets off the bus and increments the Command Pointer in the CDB.</li> </ol> <p>This process is repeated until all bytes of information in the CDB requested by the target have been transferred.</p> <p>The target interprets the command code and locates the requested data block on the specified logical unit number. It then enters the Data-In Phase.</p>
Data-In/Out	<p>The Data-In Phase allows the target to ask for data to be sent from the target to the initiator. In the Data-Out Phase, the target asks to receive data from the initiator. Data is transferred in either the asynchronous or synchronous data transfer mode.</p> <p>In the Data-In Phase:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Target puts the first byte of data on the bus and asserts the Request signal.</li> <li>2. Host takes the data byte, puts it in memory, and asserts the Acknowledge signal.</li> <li>3. Target then negates the Request signal and puts the second byte on the bus.</li> <li>4. Host increments the data pointer in the CDB.</li> <li>5. Target then asserts Request and repeats the process until all bytes in the logical data block have been transferred to the host's memory.</li> </ol>
Status	<p>Here the target sends a byte of information to the initiator that indicates the success or failure of a command (or a series of linked commands).</p> <p>The Status Phase is critical for error detection and defect management. The status bytes and their meanings are listed below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 00 Good</li> <li>• 02 Check Condition</li> <li>• 04 Condition Met</li> <li>• 08 Busy</li> <li>• 10 Intermediate</li> <li>• 14 Intermediate-Condition Met</li> <li>• 18 Reservation Conflict</li> <li>• 22 Command Terminated</li> <li>• 28 Queue Full</li> </ul> <p>A single status byte always follows the Command Complete message. This status byte is an error code that describes any errors that may have occurred. A Check Condition status indicates that an error has occurred. The status byte is cleared if the command is completed successfully. If not successful (if an error occurred), the next command can request sense data to figure out what the problem was.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The target enters the Status Phase by putting its Status information on the bus and asserting the Request signal.</li> <li>2. The host accepts the status and puts it where the Status Pointer indicates. Then it increments the Status Pointer in the CDB and asserts the Acknowledge signal.</li> <li>3. The target then negates the Request signal.</li> </ol>

**Table 35. The eight SCSI bus phases (Continued)**

Bus Phase	Description
Message-In/Out	<p>In the Message-In Phase, the target may request to send a message to the initiator.</p> <p>The Message-Out Phase is invoked by the target only in response to an Attention condition generated by the initiator. It can be generated at any time.</p> <p>For more information, see “Bus Conditions” on page 158.</p> <p>Since not all SCSI devices support messages, this is optional. If the Identify message is not sent before the Command Phase is entered, it is assumed that messages are not supported.</p> <p>A Command Complete message is always sent at the conclusion of every SCSI command operation. The target places the Command Complete message on the bus and asserts the Request signal. The host accepts it and asserts the Acknowledge signal. The target then negates the Request signal, gets off the bus, negates its Busy signal, and the phase returns to Bus Free.</p>

## SCSI, Apple-Style

Apple has included SCSI controllers in all Macintosh CPUs beginning with the Macintosh Plus in 1986. Despite this long history, some of Apple’s SCSI implementations—as contained in the SCSI Manager and SCSI chip—have caused problems. The following subsections describe some of these.

### Fast reset

After a SCSI bus reset, devices have only 250 milliseconds to get data on the bus. Certain devices cannot meet this requirement and are locked out of the bus following a reset, which causes problems with mounting volumes on these drives.

### Unit attention condition

A SCSI device enters the Unit Attention Condition whenever it or the bus has been hit by one of the following:

- a hard reset
- a power-up reset
- a reset generated by a Bus Device Reset message



For more information, on resets see “Bus Conditions” on page 158.

It may also occur in certain other situations that cause a shock to the device. This feature is mandatory in SCSI-2.

A device in Unit Attention Condition wants to let a host know that it has been traumatized and should be queried regarding its status. If the next com-

mand the target receives is either Inquiry or Request Sense, everything is fine; the device sends a status message reflecting Unit Attention Condition and then exits that condition. If the command is anything else, however, the target completely rejects it and sends a Check Condition status code; saying, in effect, “Check me out before doing anything else.” The target tries this tack only once.

If the initiator ignores the Unit Attention Condition and the target’s request—which it can do—it will reissue the command and this time the target will comply (so much for the target’s “intelligence”).

The Unit Attention Condition feature causes power-up problems when used with Macintosh Plus ROMs:



**ROM stands for read-only memory. It is permanently stored data in memory. It usually contains the permanent instructions for a computer’s general housekeeping operations.**

1. At power-up time, the ROM code tries to read bootstrap information from each SCSI device on the bus. It only tries once, going on to the next device if refused.



**Bootstrap information is a sequence of instructions whose execution causes additional instructions to be loaded and executed until a complete computer program is loaded into storage.**

2. Because power-up causes the device to go into the Unit Attention Condition, the device refuses the command, asking instead that its condition be checked before responding to any command.
3. However, the Macintosh moves on to the next device.
4. The ROM code resets the bus if it can’t read from even one SCSI device, and tries them all again.
5. Resetting the bus puts all SCSI peripherals into the Unit Attention Condition again.
6. The loop could go on forever, and the devices would not boot up.

This was fixed in the “Platinum” colored Macintosh Plus ROMs, so that only one SCSI Reset would be sent.

Unit attention also caused problems on early Macintoshes prior to the IIci when users tried to set a drive as the startup drive.

Some manufacturers have produced special Macintosh-specific versions of their drives that don’t implement the Unit Attention Condition. Unit attention may also be disabled via jumpers or firmware changes, or by adjusting a mode parameter in Mode Page 0. Other companies resorted to cutting the RST (reset) line on the SCSI drive cable so it would never get a hard reset.

## Parity checking

Parity checking caused problems with early Macintoshes prior to SCSI Manager 4.3. Parity typically had to be disabled on drives to enable compatibility.



**The Macintosh Centris 660AV and Quadra 840AV were the first machines sold with SCSI Manager 4.3.**

## Blind data transfers

In the Macintosh Plus, the 68000 microprocessor couldn't properly handle the SCSI Req/Ack handshaking protocol because it had no physical hardware line for relaying handshaking or interrupts. The 68000 did not know if a drive was responding during handshaking. Drivers had to either handshake every byte, a very slow process called polled I/O, or had to blindly hope that data was ready.

### NOTE



**For more information on handshakes, see “Data Transfer Options” on page 139.**

Apple's answer was to include hardware support on the Macintosh SE and above for the hardware handshake line. Many Macintosh models still did not support SCSI Direct Memory Access (DMA), so if data did not show up consistently with no more than 16-microseconds between bytes, the SCSI bus would generate a bus-error and cause the Macintosh to crash or transfer invalid data.

Some devices, such as early Conner Peripheral hard drives, had hiccups during data transfers when the transfers were larger than the track buffer on the drive. Workarounds were developed that limited data transfers to smaller sizes or had the driver define synchronization points, using transfer information blocks (TIB) when calling the SCSI Manager.

## ANSI irregularities

The Macintosh SCSI port also differs from the ANSI specification in two ways:

- The Macintosh line uses a DB-25 connector instead of the standard 50-pin connector. An Apple SCSI System 25/50 adapter cable is available to convert the DB-25 to the standard DB-50 connector.
- The termination and termination power are nonstandard.

## Apple exceptions to the SCSI specification

The Mac Plus does not include internal termination because it has no internal SCSI connector. According to Apple, the devices closest to and farthest away from the Macintosh Plus should be terminated. But if there is only one peripheral attached to the Plus, only that device needs a terminator.

The Macintosh IIfx is in a class by itself. One of its features is a SCSI chip that provides faster data transfer rates than possible with earlier Macs. This necessitates the use of a combination of the following three termination parts.

- Apple SCSI Cable Terminator II. This is a black external terminator that ships with the Macintosh IIfx. It includes a “glitch-eating” capacitor, as does the filter. (See explanation below.) Only one is used on the SCSI bus.

### **AND either**

- Internal SCSI Termination Block. This provides the internal termination for IIfx machines without internal hard drives, and is installed by Apple when shipped.

### **OR**

- Internal SCSI Filter. This provides filtration of SCSI lines for Macintosh IIfx internal drives on systems that shipped prior to March 19, 1990. It was installed by Apple when shipped.

Macintosh IIfx termination configuration is simple. There is one terminator installed internally in the Macintosh itself, and another externally at the end of the SCSI chain.

The reason these parts are required is that the IIfx’s SCSI chip thinks that glitches on the Request line are genuine signals. The internal SCSI filter is actually a capacitor that may be thought of as a glitch-eater. The glitches occur when a majority of data lines change their state simultaneously, which drains the terminator power line (TPWR line) and consequently causes a power spike on the Request line. The solution is to have the internal SCSI filter provide the TPWR line with a little extra current when needed.



**A notice in the Macintosh IIfx finished goods box instructs customers to return self-terminated SCSI devices to the service provider to have the termination disabled.**

Newer Macintosh computers, starting with the Centris 660AV/Quadra 840AV and continuing through the Power Macintosh line, include automatic termination when no internal device is connected. When this occurs, special circuitry terminates the bus on the logic board near the external connector. Previous Quadoras and Macintosh II series computers required a motherboard in-line terminator to be connected when a system had external drives but no internal ones.



The PowerBook 100 and 200 series have unusual termination requirements:

- When you attach an external drive to one of these PowerBooks, you must connect it to the PowerBook with a cable that has a built-in terminator, and plug an external terminator into the second SCSI port on the external drive.
- If you daisy-chain external devices to one of these PowerBooks, you must use a cable with a built-in terminator and terminate the last device on the chain.
- If you use one of these PowerBooks in SCSI disk mode—where it is used as an external drive attached to a host computer—there must be a terminator connecting the cable leading from the PowerBook to the cable leading from the host.

**NOTE**



See the documentation that came with your PowerBook for specifics on termination for these computers.

## PowerBook SCSI

PowerBook laptops continue Apple's tradition of using SCSI. They did utilize a new proprietary, high-density, 30-pin cable (HDI-30) to save space. PowerBooks starting with the PowerBook150 and PowerBook5300 started to use IDE drives internally but continued to have SCSI ports externally.

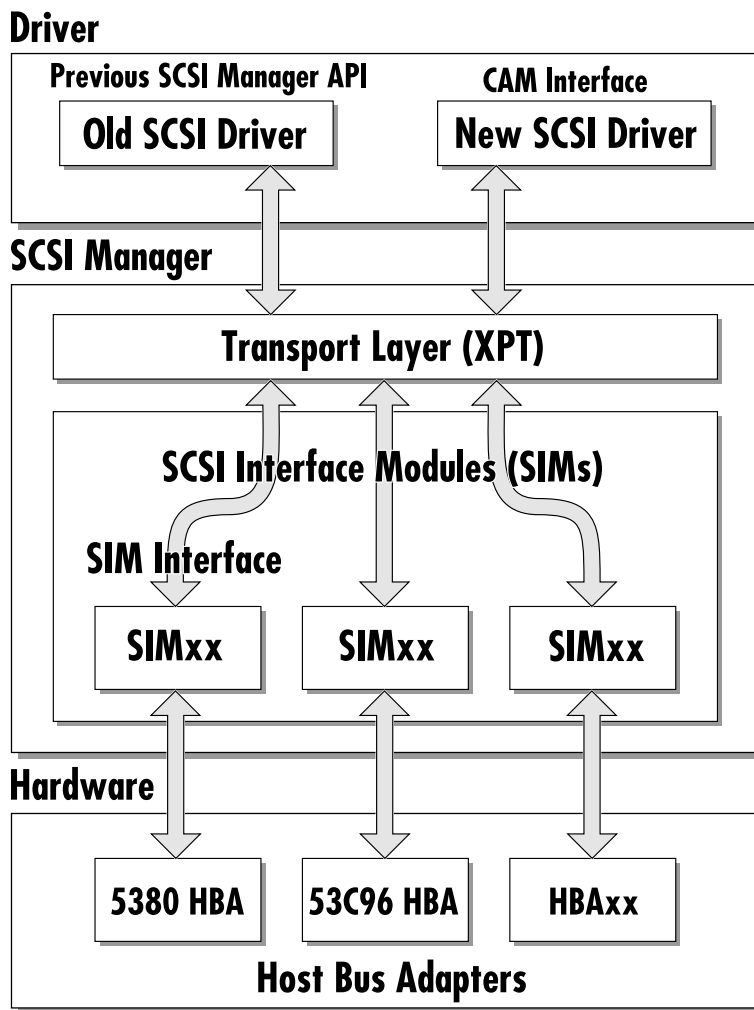


**IDE stands for Integrated Drive Electronics. It is a control system for storage devices where most of the control is contained on the device itself.**

Some PowerBook computers support SCSI disk mode, which allows the internal hard disk to be mounted and used as an external drive by another Macintosh. To operate a PowerBook computer in SCSI disk mode, the user connects a special HDI-30 SCSI Disk Adapter cable between the external SCSI connectors on the PowerBook computer and the desktop computer and then starts both computers. The adapter cable grounds pin-1 of the HDI-30 connector, causing the PowerBook computer's ROM code to bypass the normal startup procedure and enter SCSI disk mode.



**PowerBook SCSI disk mode makes even IDE drives appear as SCSI drives.**



*Figure 62. SCSI Manager software hierarchy*

The SCSI Manager provides the interface between the SCSI software (operating system drivers or application programs) and hardware (chip). The SCSI Manager offers a well-defined set of calls that allows the software drivers or applications for different SCSI devices to use any Macintosh SCSI port smoothly, without worrying about the underlying hardware.

The original SCSI Manager code includes commands for all types of SCSI operations. Table 36 lists and describes the original code.

**Table 36. Original SCSI Manager code**

Code	Description
SCSIGet	Arbitrates for control of the SCSI bus.
SCSISelect	Selects the target device.
SCSICmd	Sends the command in the Command Phase that tells the target what operation to perform. It indicates whether the command is six or ten bytes long (Group 0, 1, 2 and 5).
SCSIRead	Read data from device.
SCSIReadBlind	Read data without handshaking every byte.
SCSIWrite	Write data to device.
SCSIWriteBlind	Write data without handshaking every byte.
SCSIComplete	Tells the Macintosh how long it should wait for the target to complete the command, and returns the status and message bytes.
SCSIReset	Resets the bus.
SCSIStat	Gets bus status information.
SCSIMsgIn	Initiator receives a message from target.
SCSIMsgOut	Initiator sends message to target.
SCSISelAtn	Selects a target device and sets ATN line active.



**SCSI commands are more fully described in “Commands” on page 161.**

SCSI Manager 4.3, introduced with the Quadra 840AV in 1993, increased the power of SCSI on the Macintosh by allowing it to support most of the SCSI-2 specification, including:

- disconnect/reconnect
- parity detection
- synchronous transfers
- multiple buses and LUNs
- asynchronous operation

The new interface was much more modern. There was no need to drive all SCSI bus phases. It also enabled full support of third-party expansion cards and DMA, while maintaining backward compatibility with software. However, running old drivers under SCSI Manager 4.3 imposed a 20 percent perfor-

mance penalty. SCSI Manager 4.3 also added more overhead on small data transfers, causing a slight slowdown compared to the earlier SCSI Manager.

SCSI Manager 4.3 is also supported on all Macintosh Quadras running System 7.5 or newer. (It is loaded from a System Extension.) It is present on all PowerMacs.

SCSI Manager 4.3 is based on ANSI X3.232 Common Access Method (CAM) but adds some Apple-specific improvements. CAM documents a layered architecture with a transport layer on top (XPT). The single XPT vector calls to one or more SCSI interface module (SIM) layers. Each SIM controls a single host bus adapter (HBA).

Parameter blocks

A common SCSI Manager 4.3 data structure is the parameter block. A parameter block is the basic unit of data that is exchanged between a program and the SCSI Manager. Each client of the SCSI Manager allocates a SCSI parameter block and fills in the required fields before passing it to the SCSI Action function. A function-specific SCSI parameter block consists of two parts:

- The header (SCSIPBHdr), contained in all SCSI parameter blocks.
- The body, which contains information specific to the active function.

Figure 63 illustrates a typical SCSI parameter block header.

```
#define SCSIPBHdr \  
struct SCSIHdr *qLink;          // (internal) Q link to next PB  
short          qType;          // (unused) Q type  
ushort        scVer;           // -> version of the PB  
ushort        scPBLen;        // -> length of the entire PB  
FunctionType  scFunctionCode; // -> function selector  
OSErr         scResult;       // <- returned result  
DeviceIdent   scDeviceIdent;  // -> (bus + target + LUN)  
CallbackProc  scCompFn;       // -> callback on completion function  
ulong         scFlags;        // -> flags for operation  
// end of SCSIPBHdr
```

**Figure 63.** Typical parameter block construct

Table 37 lists and describes SCSI Manager 4.3 calls. This information would be included in the body of the parameter block.



**Calls are requests or instructions from the initiator or target.**

**Table 37.** *SCSI Manager 4.3 calls*

Call	Description
SCSIAction	Performs a SCSI action.
SCSI_ExecIO	Performs an I/O Command.
SCSI_AbortCommand	Aborts a command.
SCSI_ResetBus	Resets a SCSI bus.
SCSI_ResetDevice	Resets one device.
SCSI_TerminateIO	Terminates an incomplete I/O.
SCSI_GetVirtualIDInfo	Gets information on a specific device.
SCSI_ReleaseQ	Releases a frozen queue.
SCSI_BusInquiry	Gets information on a host bus adapter (HBA).
SCSIRegisterBus	Registers a new SCSI bus.
SCSIDeregisterBus	Deregisters a SCSI bus.
SIMinit	Initializes a SIM.
SIMAction	XPT uses this to call SIM.

SCSI Manager 4.3 is present in ROM on all machines newer than the Quadra 840AV. It is also supported on all Quadra models utilizing 53C9X series SCSI chips when running System 7.5 or newer. It was not included in any PowerBooks before 1996.



**Apple's future Mac OS, also known as Copland, is rumored to be introducing another SCSI Manager model. It may borrow heavily from DEC VMS and Windows NT's layered driver architecture.**

## Device drivers

A device driver on the Macintosh is the software program that translates operating system requests into the SCSI commands that direct the operations of a SCSI peripheral. It does this via the SCSI Manager and SCSI chip. Properly written software drivers communicate with a SCSI device via the SCSI Man-

ager and SCSI chip and maintain the device at peak performance throughout its lifetime. Among the devices that SCSI drivers control are:

- hard drives
- removable drives
- scanners
- tape drives
- printers
- film recorders
- digital cameras
- CD-ROM drives

Device drivers are required for all classes of devices. There are drivers for fixed and removable disk drives as well as special drivers used to implement drive spanning and data striping.



**Corrupt drivers cannot usually be detected by diagnostic utilities. If you are unable to get a particular device to work by itself, reinstalling the driver will often help.**

Requests

Table 38 lists the five requests to which a driver responds.

**Table 38.** *Driver requests*

Request	Description
Open	This is where the driver is first called and initializes itself, allocates memory, and generally gets ready for business. Open typically occurs in the boot-up or mounting process.
Close	At this request, the driver shuts down, deallocates memory, and usually turns off.
Prime	Following a Prime request, the driver will perform a task, typically a read or write.
Status	Seldom used in SCSI.
Control	This request queries the driver for “where” data is located, including Finder and icon data, and puts the driver in different operational modes.

## Input

The driver is capable of receiving the following input after receiving a request:

- The number of bytes the access is offset from the start of the partition.  
This is the logical address that the driver will translate into a drive's block address.
- The driver can determine if it was called as the result of a Read or Write command and whether the command was made asynchronously or synchronously.
- How many bytes of data are requested.
- The address of the I/O buffer.

If the driver was called for an asynchronous request, it will also accept the address of a completion routine that will be called when the request has been processed.

## Output

Device drivers can return the following information to the computer's operating system:

- the number of bytes actually transferred
- an error code (zero, if no error occurred)

## Call Chain

---

Now that you've waded through the command structures, understand the functioning of the SCSI chip and device controllers, and have an appreciation for device drivers, the SCSI Manager, and hard drive technology, we can fit them all together. This is a "behind the scenes" look at how information is routed in a computer system that uses SCSI.

Host computers and devices that communicate in a structured manner do so in a complicated sequence of continuous calls known as the call chain.

Calls are requests or instructions from the initiator or target. The call chain represents the many layers through which calls pass and the levels at which they are translated—in effect, readied for the next level.

The sequence is "modular"; that is, each step is distinct and self-contained. This is the result of purposeful intent by good engineers. If an aspect of the call chain is improved, only the layer affected needs to be changed.

Our example is the common call chain involved in writing data to a hard disk.

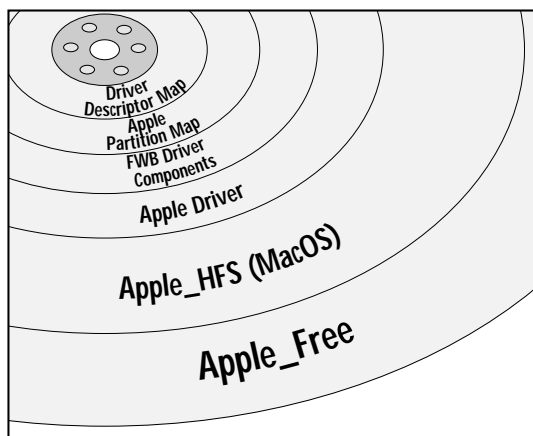
1. First, the application in which you are working makes a write call to the Macintosh's File Manager.



**The File Manager is a software library that manages I/O flow to and from files. Typically, the File Manager is located in ROM.**

2. The File Manager translates the write call into another protocol and sends it to the Macintosh's Device Manager, a lower-level software library that typically also resides in ROM.
3. The Device Manager translates the call into a parameter block the Device Driver will recognize and calls the appropriate driver for the volume to be accessed.
4. The Device Driver, residing in RAM, sends the write call, which it translates into a sequence of calls, to the SCSI Manager:
  - to gain control of the SCSI bus
  - to select a particular device for I/O
  - to send a command
  - to write the appropriate data
  - to complete the operation
5. The SCSI Manager takes these calls and turns them into a form that the SCSI chip can use to send commands across the bus.
6. The SCSI chip sends electrical signals across the bus that correspond to the above calls.
7. These signals are received by the SCSI chip on the SCSI peripheral. This chip provides the device's intelligence. It is controlled by a CPU on the device, which is part of the peripheral's controller board.
8. The controller CPU coordinates the specific operations of the original call and oversees its completion by writing data to the platter.





**Figure 64.** Partition map

Having described what drivers are, what the call chain is, and how drives function, we can now describe how the Macintosh places data on the disk.

Data is physically laid out on the disk according to specifications set forth by *Inside Macintosh V* and *Inside Macintosh: Devices*. Block zero contains the driver descriptor map (DDM). The DDM is the first data read from the disk and contains:

- number of blocks on the device
- block size
- number of drivers
- location and size of the first driver

The boot code in the ROM of the Macintosh reads in the driver descriptor map, then loads the driver into memory and executes it.

The partition map is contained on a series of blocks, beginning with block one. Each partition map entry occupies one block and contains:

- name of the partition
- processor type
- type of partition
- partition status
- partition size
- more

The partition map can vary in size from a few to hundreds of blocks. Partitions can be created for:

- HFS
- A/UX
- ProDOS
- drivers
- partition maps
- scratch space
- custom partitions (as with RAID configurations)

After the partition map comes each partition in sequence. Every block on the disk must belong to a partition. Even free space is stored within a partition.

### Inside the Mac HFS partition

The Macintosh HFS partition contains structures to help the Macintosh operating system boot the computer and locate information on files and folders. This data structure is set up when the hard disk setup utility program initializes a partition. The following data structures are written to disk:

- boot blocks
- volume information block (VIB)
- volume bitmap
- extents tree
- catalog tree
- file data area

These data structures are described in Table 39.

**Table 39.** *Data structures in the Macintosh HFS partition*

Data Structure	Description
Boot Block	The boot blocks on each HFS partition occupy blocks zero and one. They are filled in with data when a System Folder is copied into the partition. The boot blocks contain the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• information that allows the system to start up from the System Folder</li><li>• information on the maximum number of open files</li><li>• the name of the debugger</li><li>• the names of system files</li></ul>

**Table 39.** *Data structures in the Macintosh HFS partition (Continued)*

Data Structure	Description
Volume Information Block (VIB)	<p>The volume information block is a master directory block that contains important information on the volume including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• its name and type</li><li>• the number of files and folders on the volume</li><li>• the allocation block size</li><li>• pointers to the location of files</li></ul> <p>There is a backup copy of this near the end of the disk.</p>
Volume Bitmap	<p>The volume bit map is a directory structure that keeps track of allocation blocks that are in use and that are free. It is used to determine where to put data that needs space and where to free up space when a file is deleted.</p>
Extents and Catalog Trees	<p>The extents and catalog trees are data structures that track the location and statistics for all files and folders on the disk. Each file record indicates:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• name</li><li>• ID</li><li>• type</li><li>• creator</li><li>• size</li><li>• creation and modification date</li><li>• other file information</li></ul>
File Data Area	<p>The file data area is the space on the disk where data is stored in allocation block-sized chunks.</p>

## Macintosh volume limits

Systems prior to 7.5 were limited in size to 2 GB per volume. System 7.5 increased this to 4 GB per volume, while the PowerMacintosh with PCI raised the limit to 2 terabytes (TB). As a volume gets larger, its smallest unit of allocation grows because there are only 65535 block units that can be allocated to a given volume. A 1 GB volume has an allocation block size of 16 KB. This means that a file with only one character of data in it will nonetheless consume 16 KB of disk space. A 2 TB volume has a minimum allocation block size of a whopping 32 MB!



**A terabyte is equal to 10<sup>12</sup>, and is written out as 1,000,000,000,000.**

Multiple partitions can be created on larger disks to minimize allocation block size. Minimizing allocation block size allows more real data to be stored on a given drive. Partitions can be used to organize data, for example to put all applications in one partition and all data in another, and to create storage areas for password-protected and/or encrypted data.

Use disk utility software to create partitions on your storage media.

## Macintosh SCSI performance

Macintosh SCSI performance has improved significantly from the first implementation on the Macintosh Plus. Apple has remained conservative and been slow to adopt new technologies that improve data transfer rates (Table 40).

**Table 40.** *Progress of data transfer rates in the Macintosh*

Macintosh	Maximum SCSI Transfer Rate
Plus	0.3 MB/s
SE	0.7 MB/s
Macintosh II family	2.8 - 4.5 MB/s
Quadra family	3.8 - 4.5 MB/s
Power Macintosh family	3.8 - 4.5 MB/s
Power Macintosh with PCI family	4.5 - 10 MB/s

The original SCSI implementations in the Plus and SE were limited to under one megabyte a second by the SCSI hardware and software implementation. The later Macintosh II, Quadra, and Power Macintosh families increased SCSI performance but were still limited to performing slower asynchronous data transfers. The first members of the PowerMacintosh with PCI family finally introduced synchronous data transfers on their internal SCSI buses, increasing data rates to 10 MB/s.

Third parties produce SCSI accelerator add-in cards that break the SCSI bottleneck inherent in the Macintosh architecture. The data transfer rates on these cards are often two to four times faster than the standard data transfer rates. At a time when the Macintosh was transferring 10 MB/s, third parties were handling 40 MB/s.

## PC SCSI Implementation

---

SCSI host adapters were initially difficult to install on PCs. Many contained lots of jumper settings. Any single setting could conflict with another card and cause problems. SCSI was also actually slower for many single-tasking applications because it introduced a lot of overhead over the very efficient native IDE interface.



**A jumper is a pair of pins on a circuit board. A jumper block is a small plastic-covered metal connector used to connect jumpers. Jumpers and jumper blocks are used to set device parameters, such as the SCSI ID.**

SCSI has also been slow to take off on the PC because of many conflicting standards and software driver dependencies. In the early days of the PC, there were as many as three separate incompatible standards being promoted:

- Microsoft originally promoted a Layered Architecture for Device Drivers (LADDR) with the advent of OS/2.
- Adaptec presented Advanced SCSI Programming Interface (ASPI) in 1988.
- Future Domain promoted ANSI's Common Access Method (CAM).
- IBM OS/2 promoted Adapter Device Driver (ADD).
- Novell promoted Host Adapter Module (HAM).

If you had three SCSI host adapters from different vendors, you could need to load three separate sets of drivers even though all were talking SCSI. You would also need a driver for each additional operating system.

By the mid-90's things had calmed down. ASPI became the dominant standard on the PC with virtually everyone supporting it—including Microsoft, in Windows 95. Standardizing on ASPI allowed host adapter manufacturers to simply produce an ASPI layer. Application and driver developers could write ASPI-compliant software that would run on any ASPI-compatible adapter. ASPI became the SCSI programming interface of choice on DOS, Windows, OS/2 and Novell Netware.

**NOTE**

See “PC SCSI: ASPI for Win32 calls” on page 309 for a table of the calls ASPI for Win32 makes to access SCSI devices.

## DOS

Most PC SCSI host adapters include a SCSI BIOS boot ROM on board. This BIOS is used to initialize the SCSI chip on startup and to support the transparent operation of the adapter under DOS through the standard INT13 BIOS interface. Because the host adapter has its own BIOS, the drives on a SCSI card need not be set up with the computer's Setup utility. The SCSI drive appears to be a normal drive to DOS. You can use standard DOS utilities such as FDISK and FORMAT to partition and high-level format the drive. Application software runs transparently. SCSI drives co-exist with IDE drives, although the system attempts to startup from IDE drives first.



**The INT13 BIOS interface is the standard method of accessing a PC hard disk.**

Versions prior to DOS 5 supported only two drives. Versions later than DOS 5 support up to seven physical drives. DOS supports up to 24 partitions (Drive letter C: through Z:). DOS 3.x supports up to 32 MB per partition. Versions after that expanded on this limit.

## Windows®

The original Windows 3.0 communicated with SCSI drives through the standard INT13 BIOS mechanism. Bus mastering SCSI Controllers needed to support the Virtual DMA Services (VDS) standard to ensure compatibility with memory extensions such as Expanded Memory Specification (EMS). The real mode INT13 interface ensured compatibility but at the expense of performance. On every I/O, the computer needed to switch from 386 enhanced mode to real mode as many as six times. This slowed I/O.

With the advent of Windows 3.1 and Windows for Workgroups 3.11, Microsoft created a 32-bit fastdisk interface that SCSI drivers could be hooked into. Each of these fastdisk drivers was hardware-dependent. The operating system came with a built-in fastdisk driver for IDE drives smaller than 528 MB. These drivers allowed the computer to remain in enhanced mode, significantly improving performance. This was also known as 32-bit disk access. Windows for Workgroups added 32-bit file access or VFAT.386 and VCACHE.386. These drivers install 32-bit operating system components for caching and for the disk file system. The old DOS Smartdrive was now needed only to cache floppy and CD-ROM drives.

Vendors also had to produce proprietary Windows ASPI (WinASPI.DLL) implementation to support third-party storage software under Windows.

## Windows 95 and NT

These newer operating systems were designed from the ground up to accommodate SCSI. Microsoft and Intel even put together a Plug-and-Play specification to make adding SCSI host adapters easier. Windows 95 and NT feature layered driver architectures. SCSI host adapter vendors simply need to supply a small Miniport driver to support the new operating systems.



**“NT” stands for new technology. See “PC Plug-and-Play” below for details about the Microsoft and Intel developed Plug-and-Play specification.**

The Miniport driver is essentially a hardware-specific translation layer that abstracts the I/O architecture of the host adapter. It initializes and configures the adapter, starts I/O, verifies the adapter state, and resets the SCSI bus. Hard drive, removable, and CD-ROM drivers are built into the operating system. ASPI support is also available in both operating systems, with NT having a 32-bit version—ASPI32—built-in. SCSI host adapters still need BIOS Boot ROMs to facilitate booting the operating systems.

Windows NT has support for multiple requests per unit, so it can exploit tagged command queuing. It also has built in support for RAID. The workstation version includes RAID 0 and 1; the server version supports RAID 5.

### PC Plug-and-Play

The PC Plug-and-Play specification was created by Intel, Microsoft, and Compaq to make it easier to add adapter boards into PCs. It was primarily designed to make the allocation of interrupt, DMA, and I/O port addresses automatic when using ISA-based cards. (Previously you had to manually adjust jumpers.) It also mandated the need for self-resetting terminator power fuses and for a special SCSI icon on the back of the adapter. The Plug-and-Play standard required additions to the computer BIOS to be implemented.

This specification was also extended to SCSI by including a new standard called SCAM (SCSI Configured Auto Magically). SCAM is a protocol that allows a host adapter to set the SCSI ID number of devices on the SCSI bus, preventing ID conflicts, and to set termination automatically. The protocol uses a SCAM master that isolates devices by toggling SCSI lines. It is compatible with legacy devices whose IDs are not changeable. Two levels of SCAM compliance have been defined. The more advanced level allows multiple initiators and hot plugging. SCAM acceptance has been slow, with few SCAM compliant peripherals available in 1995.



**SCAM acceptance has been hindered by the fact that PCs can't have SCSI IDs moved around. Moving IDs around would cause problems with assignment of drive letters.**

## PC SCSI performance

PC SCSI performance has improved significantly from the first implementations on the ISA bus. Improvements in bus technology combined with newer SCSI chips have driven performance to new levels. Each computer model in Table 41 was coupled with the fastest available SCSI host adapter.

**Table 41.** Overview of improved transfer rates in PCs

Computer and Bus	Maximum SCSI Transfer Rate
IBM AT 80286/8 - ISA	2.5 MB/s
PC Compatible 80386/33 - ISA	3.0 MB/s
IBM PS/2 Model 80 80386/16 - MCA	7.0 MB/s
PC Compatible 80486/33 - EISA	7.5 MB/s
PC Compatible 80486/66 - VL	20 MB/s
PC Compatible P5-133 - PCI	40 MB/s

PC SCSI data transfer performance has mainly been limited by computer expansion bus limitations. Virtually all PC SCSI implementations have handled synchronous data transfers and disconnect/reconnect since inception. Manufacturers of PC SCSI host adapters were quick to add support for Fast/Wide SCSI-2 and Fast-20 SCSI.



To help you sort out the SCSI variations, we offer this list:

- **Fast SCSI-2 means transfer rates at 10 MB/s on an 8-bit narrow bus.**
- **Fast/Wide SCSI-2 means transfer rates at 20 MB/s on a 16-bit wide bus.**
- **Ultra SCSI (same as Fast 20) means transfer rates at 20 MB/s on an 8-bit narrow bus.**
- **Ultra Wide SCSI means transfer rates at 40 MB/s on a 16-bit wide bus.**



## SCSI-2: A Transition From SCSI-1

---

The SCSI-2 specification has been developed by ANSI Task Group X3T9.2 on Lower-Level Interfaces, with:

- John B. Lohmeyer, Chair
- I. Dal Allan, Vice-Chair
- Lawrence J. Lamers, Secretary

The SCSI-2 specification was approved by ANSI's Technical Committee X3T9 on I/O interfaces, with:

- Del Shoemaker, Chair
- Robert L. Fink, Vice-Chair

ANSI began work on SCSI-2 in 1986, even before SCSI-1 Revision 17B had been formally adopted. There was no technical rationale for doing so—the specification for SCSI-2 was far from complete—but at some point work must be committed to print.

SCSI-2 Revision 10c was approved in August of 1990 as an American National Standard. However, several errors and ambiguities were discovered during the review period, and it was returned to committee for correction and clarification. The result was Revision 10L, introduced in September 1993. It became a published ANSI standard before the end of 1994 as X3.131-1994. It became an ISO standard in 1996.

ANSI specified that SCSI-2 be backward compatible with SCSI-1. Devices using the new standard will work with those that use the old standard. All command, status, and message information will continue to be transferred in the eight-bit asynchronous mode.

### SCSI-2 overview

SCSI-2 builds on the SCSI-1 specification in the following ways:

- defines extensions to the SCSI-1 specification
- provides more complete standardization of SCSI-1 command sets
- describes the necessary mechanical, electrical, and functional qualities that will allow for interoperability of devices meeting the new standard

To meet these demands, SCSI-2 devices require more intelligence and firmware than their SCSI-1 counterparts.

SCSI-2 furthers the goal of SCSI-1 to promote device-independence within a class of devices. It provides for the implementation of vendor-unique fields and codes, and sets aside fields and codes for future standardization.

Another key objective of SCSI-2 is placing device-independent intelligence onto the SCSI device. This requires a command set that allows an operating system to get the necessary initialization information from the SCSI-2 device. Parameters that are not required by the operating system for operation, initialization, or system tuning will be managed exclusively by the SCSI-2 device.

The structure of the published SCSI-2 specification, although much larger than SCSI-1, makes it more understandable to the layman as well as the engineer. Rather than following a numeric sequence that caters to those who wish to memorize the message and opcode tables, alphabetization and organization are the new order of the day. The specification is organized along device class lines, with descriptions of each model's characteristics.

SCSI-1 defined the following types of devices:

- random access
- sequential access
- printer
- processor
- WORM
- read-only random access

SCSI-2 added the following types of devices:

- CD-ROM
- scanner
- magneto-optical
- medium changers (such as CD-ROM jukeboxes)
- communication devices

Separate sections of the specification that address particular devices, many of which received new command sets, include the following devices:

- CD-ROM (which replaces SCSI-1's read-only random access)
- scanners
- optical memory (which provides for WORM, ROM, and erasable media)

SCSI-2 removes support for the following SCSI-1 features and options:

- single initiator option
- non-arbitrating systems option
- SCSI-1 alternative 1 shielded connector
- non-extended sense data option
- reservation queuing option
- read-only device command set

## SCSI-2 commands

All existing SCSI-1 command sets were enhanced in SCSI-2:

- Device models were added.
- Extended sense and Inquiry data were expanded.
- Pages for Mode Select and Mode Sense were detailed for all device types.
- The Change Definition, Log Select, Log Sense, and Read and Write Buffer commands were added for all device types.
- The Copy command definition was expanded.
- The direct-access command set added cache management and greater control over defect management.
- The sequential-access device command set received several mode pages, some designed to support partitioned media.
- The Write-Once command set added several new commands.

SCSI-2 also caused the following:

- addition of device models
- expansion of extended request sense
- expansion of inquiry data
- expansion of Copy to support inexact block size and image copies



See “SCSI-2: new commands” on page 309 for more SCSI-2 commands that include descriptions, opcodes, and whether a command is mandatory or optional. See “SCSI-2 mode pages” on page 314 for a list and description of the mode pages introduced in SCSI-2.

## SCSI-2 highlights

The following excerpts have been selected from the 600-plus page SCSI-2 specification, which establishes future guidelines and helps broaden the commonality that devices must support. SCSI-2 was submitted to ANSI as X3.131-1993.

## Required features

The SCSI-2 specification mandates that SCSI-2 devices support the features listed and described in Table 42:

**Table 42. Mandated SCSI-2 supported features**

Feature	Description
Common Command Set (CCS)	<p>The Common Command Set (CCS), considered a de facto standard among SCSI hard drive manufacturers, has become a central feature of SCSI-2. Since 1988, virtually all hard drive manufacturers have incorporated CCS or a subset of it. ANSI CCS 4B (as CCS is formally known today) will represent the minimum level of commonality all SCSI-2 devices must support.</p> <p>SCSI-1's goal of manufacturer compatibility was thwarted by an industry proliferation of undocumented vendor-unique features. Differences in hardware required custom programs and unique microcode. This self-defeating diversity provided the impetus for creation of the CCS, which defines the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• data structures for Mode Select and Mode Sense commands</li> <li>• defect management of the Format command</li> <li>• error recovery procedures</li> <li>• numerous other command functions</li> </ul> <p>CCS was the beginning of SCSI-2, but it is only for disk drives. The first efforts of the SCSI-2 technical committee focused on using the SCSI interface with tapes, optical discs, and other devices. However, the SCSI-2 specification has gone far beyond applying CCS to various types of devices.</p>
Initiator Provided TPWR at 100 ohms	<p>SCSI-2 requires that initiators provide termination power, and defines an active terminator that lowers termination to 100 ohms. SCSI-1 specified 132-ohm termination for the single-ended electrical specification. Unfortunately, that was mismatched with cable impedance, which is typically below 100 ohms. The result is that the terminator allowed for greater current than the cable could handle. The signal noise thus caused errors at faster data transfer rates, or when many devices were attached.</p>
Parity Checking	<p>SCSI-2 mandates inclusion of parity checking. See pages 89, 143, and 175 for more information on parity.</p>
Required Messages	<p>A basic set of messages is defined and required (most devices already support them).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Command Complete</li> <li>• Initiator Detected Error</li> <li>• Abort</li> <li>• Message Reject</li> <li>• No Operation</li> <li>• Message Parity Error</li> <li>• Bus Device Reset</li> <li>• Identify</li> </ul> <p>For a list of SCSI messages and descriptions, see "Messages" on page 164.</p>
Bus Arbitration	<p>Bus Arbitration is now required, and the arbitration delay has been lengthened from 2.2 to 2.4 ms.</p>

**Table 42. Mandated SCSI-2 supported features (Continued)**

Feature	Description
Rotational Position Locking (RPL)	This feature causes synchronization of drive spindles, so the spinning of multiple disks can be coordinated. This is critical for faster transfer rates in disk arrays. For more information on disk arrays, see "What is RAID?" on page 79.
Contingent Allegiance	Targets in the Contingent Allegiance state reject commands until the error status is cleared. SCSI-1 did not deal with deferred errors in systems with buffers. However, deferred errors will occur if anything goes wrong after the target has accepted the data into the buffer and sent the Good status, when the target writes the buffer contents to the media.
Extended Sense Keys and Sense Codes	Sense keys and sense codes have been formalized and extended. Specifics on the type of error being reported help engineers (or their programs) analyze errors or failures in the field or on the fly.

## Optional features

The SCSI specification still allows for optional features, as well the flexibility of vendor-unique implementations. If supported, optional features must be implemented in uniform accordance with the SCSI-2 specification. Optional features are listed and described in Table 43.

**Table 43.** *Optional features allowed in SCSI-2*

Optional Feature	Description
Tagged Command Queuing	<p>Tagged command queuing enhances SCSI I/O capabilities. Rather than ask the initiator for a new command each time it finishes an operation, a “popular” peripheral can have the initiator queue, or line up, commands, so they’re ready to go when the device is free. Up to 256 commands may be queued, and the initiator can specify the order in which the target is to execute them. This ability to prioritize queued commands allows the target to operate more efficiently. For example, a hard disk drive can read from one data block to the next according to how closely they are situated, rather than hopping around from block to block according to the order in which the commands were received. Devices with this feature are compatible with devices that do not support command queuing.</p> <p>Command queuing is among the more difficult SCSI-2 benefits to implement. It may cause the vendor to run into firmware problems if attention is not paid to the types of commands being queued prior to their being sorted. For example, if a Write and a Read command were queued, and the Read command was executed first because doing so was most efficient for the target, it is possible that the Write command was sent to modify the same data block that is now being read. In this case, the Read command would read “old” data. Queuing is really only helpful when used on multitasking operating systems.</p> <p>Optional messages have been added to support command queuing capabilities. Also, the operating system must support multitasking, or multiple commands would never be issued.</p>
Command Linking	<p>Command linking allows two or more SCSI commands to be linked together. If a linked flag is set in the CDB, the completion of one command triggers the execution of the following command, saving arbitration time.</p>
Terminator Design and Drive Technology	<p>Improvements in terminator design and driver technology may be required to support fast SCSI on a single-ended cable (this is now one of SCSI-3’s goals).</p>
Fast SCSI	<p>Fast SCSI uses the standard 50-pin connector to double the maximum data transfer rate to 10 MB/s in fast synchronous mode. (Up to 10 mega-transfers per second.) It does this by cutting synchronous transfer timings in half. However, this works only with modern SCSI chips, which were not used in the Macintosh for many years, but are available through third-party add-ons.</p>

**Table 43. Optional features allowed in SCSI-2 (Continued)**

Optional Feature	Description
Wide SCSI	<p>Wide SCSI is an option that increases the SCSI data path from eight to 16 or even 32 bits. (Commands, status, messages and arbitration are still transferred as eight bits for compatibility with SCSI-1.) It does this by using a second 68-conductor "B" cable that has 24 extra data lines. The standard 50-pin cable remains, still handling eight bits. This two-cable requirement (50- and 68-pin) may be impractical for many systems because the additional cable requires space for a second connector—space that may not exist.</p> <p>SCSI-3 describes a 68-pin "P" cable that will support arbitration and data transfers at 16 bits. Most vendors have adopted this scheme. This 68-pin cable makes it difficult to daisy-chain standard 50-pin narrow SCSI devices to the 68-pin wide devices. It is possible to do this, with the wide devices connected first and the narrow ones later, but terminating the upper 8-bits and sending the lower 8-bits through is very difficult. Usually the best strategy is to connect all wide devices to the host adapter's internal or external port and connect narrow ones to the other port. Most host adapters allow for partial termination of the terminators on the card.</p> <p>Both Fast and Wide SCSI can exist on the same bus. Combined, rates of 40 MB/s are possible. However, implementing Fast and/or Wide SCSI capabilities may require silicon changes in the SCSI protocol chip. Because much information will continue to be transferred in the eight-bit asynchronous mode, fast and wide capabilities may not significantly impact the I/O rates of your system unless you use fast drives and CPUs.</p>
Optional Messages	Optional messages have been added to support wide-transfer capabilities.
Smaller, High-Density Connectors	Smaller, high-density connectors (DB-50) are stipulated to fit in tighter spaces and make room for an increased number of pins.
Asynchronous Event Notification	Asynchronous event notification (AEN) is a protocol that can be used to inform processor devices that an asynchronous event has occurred. Instead of the initiator polling, the target would notify the initiator.
Optional Extended Contingent Allegiance	Extended contingent allegiance is now optional. It is a sleep mode in which devices won't respond to other requests for access, and command queuing is suspended.
12-Byte Command Descriptor Block	<p>A 12-byte Command Descriptor Block (CDB) has been defined, allowing for more complex commands and access to a larger range of data. This format is supported by the following commands:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Read</li> <li>• Search Data Equal</li> <li>• Search Data High</li> <li>• Search Data Low</li> <li>• Set Limits</li> <li>• Write</li> <li>• Write and Verify</li> <li>• Verify</li> </ul>

## The SCSI-2 Common Access Method (CAM)

In October 1988 a group of 40 peripheral suppliers led by Adaptec, Inc. formed the Common Access Method (CAM) Committee to establish a common software interface for attaching SCSI peripherals. Such an interface would be independent of the host bus adapter (HBA) hardware implementation. ANSI completed final action on CAM in early 1996. It was adopted as ANSI X3.232:1996, SCSI-2 Common Access Method Transport and SCSI Interface Module.

CAM reduces the number of drivers needed by an HBA and its peripherals on various operating systems. Its modular design allows the use of only those software drivers that belong with the SCSI peripherals. CAM also addresses the use of a protocol chip on the motherboard and the ATA (Advanced Technology Bus Attachment) interface as a method of attaching SCSI peripherals.

Macintoshes do not require SCSI adapters, but instead offer the SCSI Manager and SCSI chips on the motherboard. However, because the SCSI Manager solution is vendor-specific, SCSI devices intended for use with the Macintosh must have Macintosh-tuned device driver software. CAM's major goal is to provide one interface across all hardware platforms, Macintosh included, to ease software development for every new system.

CAM has not become important in the PC world. There the profusion of manufacturers' HBAs and software drivers has caused significant software-compatibility problems. With PCs, ASPI is the dominant standard.

The CAM committee's proposals consider the SCSI-2 CAM Transport (or XPT) and SCSI Interface Module (SIM).



**The XPT (transport) is a layer of software that programs and peripheral drivers use to initiate the execution of CAM functions. SIMs are modules that execute the SCSI commands.**

Macintoshes were not impacted immediately by CAM development. They benefited indirectly as CAM accelerated SCSI's marketplace acceptance and helped with third-party SCSI accelerator add-ons that had no such standard (such as NuBus SCSI cards). Apple later adopted CAM as part of their SCSI Manager 4.3 interface.

### Details of CAM operation

With CAM, requests for SCSI I/O from the peripheral driver are made through the XPT interface. The XPT receives the request as a CAM Control Block (CCB), which is a data structure containing the action required. The XPT function routes CCBs to a lower level SIM.



The XPT allocates CCB resources—such as getting and releasing CCBs—dependent of the operating system. It also ensures the CCBs are properly formatted and the fields needed to accomplish a request are primed.

To prevent each driver from having to scan the SCSI bus for devices at initialization, the XPT detects all installed SCSI devices and constructs an internal table, which is accessed by drivers and programs.

The XPT function may be a separate element or incorporated with the SIM into a single module. Either way, a logical separation between the two is maintained to distinguish among SIMs that may be loaded.

The SIM function processes SCSI requests and manages the hardware-independent interface to the HBA.

SIM services do the following:

- monitor I/O behavior and perform error recovery if needed
- manage data transfer hardware, such as DMA circuitry
- queue multiple operations for single or multiple LUNs, “freezing” the queuing of requests as necessary to perform queue recovery
- post results back to the initiating device driver
- manage the selection, disconnection, reconnection, and data pointers of the SCSI HBA protocol

The CAM committee is also polishing up specifications for the ATA interface, which specifies how a peripheral controller can emulate the original IBM AT hard disk drive interface. This is important because a lot of software requires that the hardware look precisely like an IBM machine in order to run. ATA and EATA (Extended ATA) define how to create interfaces for SCSI (and other) peripherals that the operating system will “accept” as normal.

The ANSI committee responsible for SCSI-2 realized that the only way it was going to complete SCSI-2 was to begin planning SCSI-3. SCSI-3's main target is extending SCSI-2's functionality so that it is suitable for much higher performance rates, while maintaining backward compatibility with present SCSI.

The SCSI-3 specification has numerous goals, including better cabling schemes for Fast and Wide SCSI. In fact, some of these cabling schemes may be standardized before the SCSI-3 specification is released.

The SCSI-3 specification consists of many files, each covering a specific area. This allows different teams to concentrate on different areas. It also allows the different parts of the specification to be approved as they are finalized. Table 44 lists the files and topics covered in SCSI-3.

**Table 44.** SCSI-3 files and topics

File	Topic	Description
F20	SCSI-3 Fast-20 Parallel Interface (20 MB/s on 8-bit bus or 40 MB/s on 16-bit)	Also part of the specification and a proposed X3T10/855D standard is Fast-20 or Ultra-SCSI. This basically doubles the data rate and allows 40 MB/s transfers over a 16-bit wide SCSI bus or 20 MB/s over an 8-bit wide SCSI bus. This performance boost is achieved by faster synchronous negotiation speeds. It is intended to bridge the gap before serial SCSI takes off. The first drives for this standard started to appear in 1995. The main limiting factor was that cabling was now half the length of the previous generation. Cabling needed to be 90 ohms and only active termination could be used. Other cable tolerances were also more stringent. Single-ended buses could be three meters in length when using four maximum capacitance devices, or 1.5 meters when using five to eight devices. Differential buses could now be 25 meters in length.
FCP	SCSI-3 Fibre Channel Protocol (for Fibre Channel)	This part of SCSI-3 describes the Fibre Channel Protocol used in Fibre Channel implementations of serial SCSI. Fibre Channel allows for data transfer rates of up to 100 MB/s over small wires that can be up to 30 meters in length between devices. FCP defines a Fibre Channel mapping layer (FC-4) that uses the services defined by ANSI X3.230.199x (Fibre Channel - Physical and Signaling Interface [FC-PH]) to send SCSI commands and data between serial SCSI devices. This protocol involves sending and receiving this information using standard Fibre Channel frame and sequence formats. FCP functions with Fibre Channel point to point, fabrics, and arbitrated loops. It supports both the optical and electrical connections of Fibre Channel.  For more information see Chapter 6, "All About Serial SCSI."

**Table 44. SCSI-3 files and topics (Continued)**

File	Topic	Description
GPP	SCSI-3 Generic Packetized Protocol Technical Report	<p>SCSI-3 GPP describes packetizing SCSI, which allows it to be transported by cabling other than traditional parallel cable. This stretches the SCSI cable well beyond its current limits while adding support for very high-speed transfers. Serial implementations also use information packets for data transmission, a radical departure from the present SCSI architecture. It basically translates SCSI protocols into network protocols, where data is encapsulated in packets. The cable could then be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fiber-optic</li> <li>• Copper coaxial</li> <li>• Twisted pair</li> <li>• Wireless</li> </ul>
MMC	SCSI-3 Multi-Media Commands (CD-ROM command set)	<p>SCSI-3 MMC is an important new part of SCSI-3 that describes commands for multimedia devices (i.e., CD-ROM and CD-R). This document describes the various CD-ROM and CD audio disk formats. Some new and updated commands include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Read CD Recorded Capacity (25<sub>H</sub>) - Returns actual recorded capacity of CD.</li> <li>• Play Audio Track/Index (48<sub>H</sub>) - Plays an audio track on the CD from an index point.</li> <li>• Seek (2B<sub>H</sub>) - Seeks the head to a place on the CD.</li> </ul> <p>SCSI-3 MMC accommodates CD drives as fast as 16x drives. (2.8 MB/s) This specification also describes CD-R commands to do writing and incremental packet writing, and some actual examples of how to write discs.</p>
SAM	SCSI-3 Architecture Model (what it means to be SCSI-3)	<p>SCSI-3 Architecture Model describes the entire SCSI-3 specification and its functional partitioning into separate documents. It specifies a model for I/O system and device behavior that applies to all SCSI interconnects, protocols, access methods, and devices. This document contains lots of definitions and diagrams outlining basic terminology and nomenclature used throughout SCSI-3 documents. This document discusses basic SCSI events such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Request/responses</li> <li>• Resets</li> <li>• Request sense</li> <li>• Contingent allegiance</li> <li>• Task management</li> </ul>

**Table 44. SCSI-3 files and topics (Continued)**

File	Topic	Description
SBC	SCSI-3 Block Commands (for direct-access devices e.g., disks)	<p>SCSI-3 SBC is an important new part of SCSI-3 that describes commands for direct access block logical unit class devices (i.e., hard drives, worm, optical, and removables). Caching is documented more thoroughly than in the SCSI-2 specification.</p> <p>This part of SCSI-3 includes commands to support medium changer devices such as the Read Elements Status and Move Medium commands. Optical drives have the following additional commands:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Medium Scan (38<sub>H</sub>) - to scan for contiguous written or blank blocks.</li> <li>• Read Generation (29<sub>H</sub>) - to return the maximum generation address of a block.</li> <li>• Read Updated Block (2D<sub>H</sub>) - to read a specific generation and block number.</li> <li>• Update Block (3D<sub>H</sub>) - requests that the drive replace data on the medium with new data.</li> </ul>
SBP	SCSI-3 Serial Bus Protocol (for IEEE P1394)	<p>This part of SCSI-3 describes the serial bus protocol used in 1394 implementations of serial SCSI. It defines a new fixed length packet that supports the various SCSI-3 standards to deliver command, data and status over the 1394 bus. The SCSI-3 SBP command data structure (CDS) allows data and command to be linked together. SCSI-3 SBP also supports 1394's isochronous data transfers.</p> <p>For more information, see Chapter 6, "All About Serial SCSI."</p>
SCC	SCSI-3 Controller Commands (for RAID controllers)	<p>SCSI-3 SCC is an important new part of SCSI-3 that describes commands for controller devices (i.e., RAID controllers). It describes commands that are used to control RAID controllers. RAID controllers need to be commanded to set up arrays, configure arrays, rebuild arrays, and monitor arrays and their components. New commands include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maintenance (A3/A4<sub>H</sub>) - Performs logical operations on the RAID such as reporting on individual components.</li> <li>• Report Redundancy Group (BA/BB<sub>H</sub>) - Returns and sets information on how drives are grouped as RAID units.</li> <li>• Spare (BC/BD<sub>H</sub>) - Returns and sets information on drives used as spares.</li> <li>• Volume Set (BE/BF<sub>H</sub>) - Controls the generation of check data within an underlying redundancy group.</li> </ul> <p>SCSI-3 SCC also describes in detail mappings of logical units to volumes.</p>

**Table 44. SCSI-3 files and topics (Continued)**

File	Topic	Description
SGC	SCSI-3 Graphics Commands (for scanners and printers)	<p>The SCSI-3 SGC standard describes command and behavior of graphical SCSI peripherals. Graphical peripherals are capable of transferring a visual representation of data to and from the computer. The main graphical device that is covered is the scanner. SCSI Commands specific to scanners include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Get Data Buffer Status (34<sub>H</sub>) - Gets information about the data buffer in the scanner.</li> <li>• Get Window (25<sub>H</sub>) - Gets information about previously defined scan window.</li> <li>• Object Position (31<sub>H</sub>) - Provides positioning functions. Allows scanner element to be moved.</li> <li>• Read (28<sub>H</sub>) - Transfers scanned data, mask, or gamma information to the computer.</li> <li>• Scan (1B<sub>H</sub>) - Requests the scanner to begin the scan operation.</li> <li>• Send (2A<sub>H</sub>) - Sends data from the computer to the device.</li> <li>• Set Window (24<sub>H</sub>) - Sets up a image area window to be scanned.</li> </ul> <p>Mode pages supported include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Page 03 - Measurements Units Page - Specifies the units of measurement used for calculating the displacement of window and for positioning an object.</li> </ul>
SIP	SCSI-3 Interlocked Protocol (for parallel copper SCSI e.g., SPI)	<p>This is an important new part of SCSI-3 that describes SCSI link protocols used for the standard SCSI parallel interface. It describes updates to SCSI protocols that are designed to allow coexistence with SCSI-2 devices on a SCSI-3 bus. SCSI-3 SIP covers content and sequencing of SCSI bus phases. Messages are the main item discussed. A new Target Transfer Disable message allows arrays to increase their performance.</p>
SMC	SCSI-3 Medium Changer Commands (for separate medium changer devices)	<p>SCSI-3 SMC is an important new part of SCSI-3 that describes commands specific to medium changer devices (i.e., jukeboxes and autoloaders). Commands used to access medium changers include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Exchange Medium (A6<sub>H</sub>) - Switches one element in one address with another element in another address.</li> <li>• Initialize Element Status (07<sub>H</sub>) - Causes the medium changer to check all of its slots for media elements.</li> <li>• Move Medium (A5<sub>H</sub>) - Moves a unit of media from one slot to another.</li> <li>• Position to Element (2B<sub>H</sub>) - Positions the media changer mechanism over a specified element.</li> <li>• Read Element Status (B8<sub>H</sub>) - Causes the devices to report the status of internal media elements to the user.</li> <li>• Request Volume Element Address (B5<sub>H</sub>) - Transfers the results of the Send Volume Tag command.</li> <li>• Send Volume Tag (B6<sub>H</sub>) - Transfers a volume tag template to a medium changer element.</li> </ul> <p>Mode pages specific to medium changers include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1F - Device Capabilities</li> <li>• 1D - Element Address Assignment</li> <li>• 1E - Transport Geometry Parameters</li> </ul>

**Table 44. SCSI-3 files and topics (Continued)**

File	Topic	Description
SPC	SCSI-3 Primary Commands (common commands for all SCSI-3 devices)	<p>Describes common SCSI commands that could apply to all SCSI-3 devices. It describes the commands that must be implemented by all SCSI devices:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inquiry</li> <li>• Request Sense</li> <li>• Send Diagnostic</li> <li>• Test Unit Ready</li> </ul> <p>SPC updates commands, such as Change Definition and Inquiry, to support new SCSI-3 device types. It covers basic medium changer commands such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move Medium</li> <li>• Report LUNs</li> </ul> <p>Additional mode pages described in SPC include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 09 - Peripheral Device Page</li> <li>• 1A - Power Condition Page</li> <li>• 1C - Informational Exceptions Control (Failure Logging)</li> </ul> <p>In the industry, this is also known as SMART or PFA. SMART is an acronym for Self-Monitoring, Analysis and Reporting Technology. PFA is an acronym for Predictive Failure Analysis. Both of these controls protect user data from predictable degradation in drive performance by analyzing information, such as number of recoverable errors, number of retries or slowing performance, and predicting when the drive is likely to die.</p>
SPI	SCSI-3 Parallel Interface (parallel copper hardware interface for SCSI-3)	<p>SCSI-3 SPI describes the physical SCSI interconnection for standard parallel fast and wide SCSI. SCSI-3 SPI includes features such as the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 16-bit transfers on a single 68-pin connector</li> <li>• SCSI phase descriptions</li> <li>• Having up to 32 SCSI IDs per bus, which necessitates a “fairness” scheme to allow devices with low IDs to get on the bus</li> <li>• 32-bit data path on a second 68-pin cable</li> <li>• More than eight devices per bus</li> <li>• Longer cables</li> </ul> <p>It also covers hot-plugging drives and SCSI configured auto-magically (SCAM).</p>

**Table 44. SCSI-3 files and topics (Continued)**

File	Topic	Description
SPI-2	SCSI-4 (?) SCSI Parallel Interconnect 2	<p>The SPI-2 standard began to appear in 1995, before even SCSI-3 SPI was approved. This standard attempted to describe a physical layer that provides the following additional functionality over regular SCSI-3 parallel SCSI:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Minimal compatibility problems with old hardware and software</li> <li>• Cost parity between single-ended and differential SCSI devices</li> <li>• Compatibility between single-ended and differential SCSI</li> <li>• Fast 40/Ultra-2 data transfers up to 40 MB/s narrow and 80 MB/s wide.</li> <li>• Fast 80/Ultra-3 data transfers up to 80 MB/s narrow and 160 MB/s wide</li> <li>• Enabling of low voltage chips (3.3V)</li> <li>• Allow SCSI device detection and setting of bus type (single-ended/differential)</li> <li>• Enable the use of new smaller cabling scheme</li> <li>• Enable hot-plugging of devices into backplanes</li> <li>• Enable moving devices through the use of Bus Extenders or Bridges</li> </ul> <p>SPI-2 described:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Physical medium</li> <li>• Clock rates</li> <li>• Hardware drivers</li> <li>• Connectors</li> <li>• Cabling</li> </ul> <p>A major feature is Low voltage differential SCSI (LVD SCSI). LVD SCSI allows differential to be implemented without the need for expensive high voltage drivers. It's based on a networking standard. At speeds faster than Fast-20, single-ended termination is unusable and only differential is allowed. It is believed that cable lengths up to 12.5 meters can be allowed. LVD drives will automatically switch to normal single-ended mode for backward compatibility on older SCSI buses. SPI-2 will probably incorporate all of the original SPI specification.</p>
SSA	SCSI-3 Serial Storage Architecture	<p>SCSI-3 SSA corollary to the SCSI-3 specification describes the Serial Storage Architecture used in implementations of serial SCSI.</p> <p>For more information see Chapter 6, "All About Serial SCSI."</p>
SSC	SCSI-3 Stream Commands (for tapes and printers)	<p>SSC describes an important new part of SCSI-3 that describes commands related to streaming devices (i.e., Tape, DAT, and printers). This part of SCSI-3 covers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sequential access devices</li> <li>• Printer devices</li> <li>• Processor devices</li> <li>• Communications devices</li> </ul> <p>These devices handle data in a sequential fashion and cannot randomly access data. Positioning is limited to either moving forwards or backwards on the medium. A new command introduced is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Report Density Support - This command tells the caller what type of media the drive supports.</li> </ul> <p>Other commands from SCSI-2 are simply extended to support new devices or clarified for documentation.</p>

Most projects are in X3T10 (formerly X3T9.2). FC-PH is in X3T11; SSA and SSP are in X3T10.1; 1394 is in IEEE.

SCSI-3 SPI was approved as a standard in 1995 as X3T10/855D Rev 15a.

There is no concrete agenda for publishing the SCSI-3 specification, although 1997 seems realistic. Parts of the SCSI-3 specification began appearing as early as 1991, and parts of it were approved in 1995.



**For information on many other resources for facts about SCSI, see “Appendix A: Additional Information Sources,” on page 288 and “Appendix C: The Deep End on page 294.**



---

## All About Serial SCSI

### Overview

---

A revolution is occurring in the world of peripheral interconnections, bringing with it higher levels of performance, availability, fault tolerance, and connectivity.

It's coming with four primary serial I/O interfaces:

- USB
- 1394 (FireWire)
- Fibre Channel
- SSA

**NOTE**

**These interfaces are discussed in greater depth starting on page 211.**

Universal Serial Bus (USB) and FireWire are low to medium speed buses intended for desktop PC implementations. Fibre Channel and SSA are targeted at higher-end workstation and server markets and offer greatly enhanced I/O channel throughputs previously seen only in large mainframe computers.

These innovative, high-performance serial interfaces are designed to connect a wide variety of devices to personal computers, workstations, servers, storage subsystems, and networks.

Devices included the following:

- disk drives
- optical drives
- tape drives
- CD-ROMs
- host adapters
- RAID controllers
- printers
- video cameras
- VCRs

Traditionally, computer systems are tied together with parallel backplane buses (such as SCSI and ATA). Although this has served well in the past, designers are considering serial alternatives for four primary reasons:

- physical constraints
- cost
- performance
- reliability

#### Physical constraints

Systems are getting smaller, and the space available for connectors is rapidly decreasing. Connector technology is having trouble keeping pace with the changes.



**Cabling problems account for 50 percent of disk drive-related customer service calls.**

#### Cost

Semiconductor technology is still on a fairly fast evolutionary path, while connector and inter-connect technology is relatively mature. For a fixed level of performance, the cost of an interconnect drops much faster if its implementation is semiconductor intensive instead of connector intensive.

#### Performance

Parallel data is reaching its limits in subsystem topologies. It is increasingly difficult to run large amounts of data over any distance with speeds approaching 40 MB/s. Servers, networks, and video applications, to name a few, are demanding I/O in excess of 40 MB/s. This is very difficult to do with parallel interfaces.

#### Reliability

The primary point of failure in an interconnect is usually its physical connection. The fewer the signals, the simpler (and more reliable) the connector.

Now that lines are being drawn in the sand and more and more companies are starting to seriously consider using serial interfaces, what are the facts behind each of these technologies?

Current Serial Peripheral Interfaces range from low speed utility buses to very high performance network architectures. The following is a brief overview of four of these interfaces. This overview provides general information on performance and typical applications with an emphasis towards mass storage and

RAID technologies. Each of the interfaces discussed is detailed in a standards document that contains more in-depth technical information.

**NOTE**



For information on how to obtain copies of these standards documents, see “Appendix A: Additional Information Sources” on page 288.

## USB

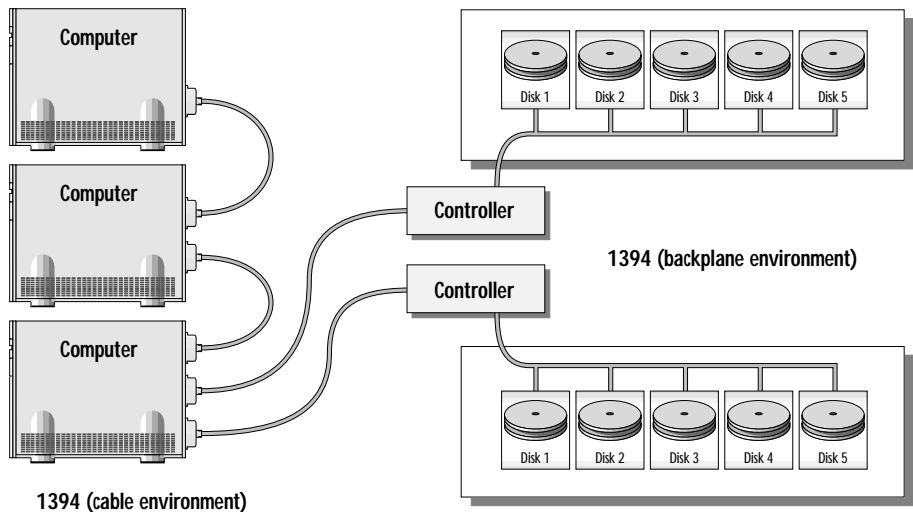
Universal Serial Bus (USB) is a specification jointly agreed upon by a working group consisting of Compaq, DEC, Intel, Microsoft, NEC, and Northern Telecom

USB is a 12 Mb/s interface supporting up to 63 peripheral devices. USB is intended to support low-speed peripherals such as keyboards and pointing devices, and is not suitable for mass storage or video applications. USB supports automatic configuration (“plug-and-play”) and hot-plugging. USB began appearing on PC motherboards in 1996.



While USB doesn’t implement Serial SCSI, it competes with 1394.

## 1394 (FireWire)



**Figure 65.** 1394 (FireWire) theoretical physical topology

1394, also known to some as FireWire, is a low-level, low-cost serial interface that is designed for multiple consumer applications. FireWire is a joint Apple and Texas Instruments (TI) implementation of the IEEE 1394-1995 SerialBus standard. 1394 was approved as an IEEE standard in December 1995. It is a high-speed (100 to 400 Mb/s) serial bus supporting up to 64 peripheral devices. It is intended to replace the Apple Desktop Bus (ADB).

FireWire includes the following features:

- The ability to layer SCSI protocols onto the interface. This allows for SCSI devices to be easily adapted.
- Support for automatic configuration (“plug-and-play”) and hot-plugging.
- Fully isochronous. This means that a fixed slice of bandwidth can be dedicated to a particular peripheral, such as video. This support of isochronous service is a complement to such LAN architectures as ISDN, ATM and FDDI-2.

I/O Interconnects can be viewed in two ways:

- as a type of extended memory space
- as an I/O “channel” interface

When viewed as memory space or registers, the target devices are accessed by processor type commands, such as “read” or “write.” A channel interface uses a higher-level protocol where commands to “read logical block” or “print page” would be used. FireWire uses the “memory space” interconnect model.

The serial bus is broken into two parts:

- The first part is the “backplane environment,” which adapts to the host parallel bus.
- The second part is the “cable environment” and is specified in the 1394 document as supporting up to 16 physical connections (cable hops) between any two devices. Each hop can be up to 4.5 meters in length, yielding a total cable distance of 72 meters.



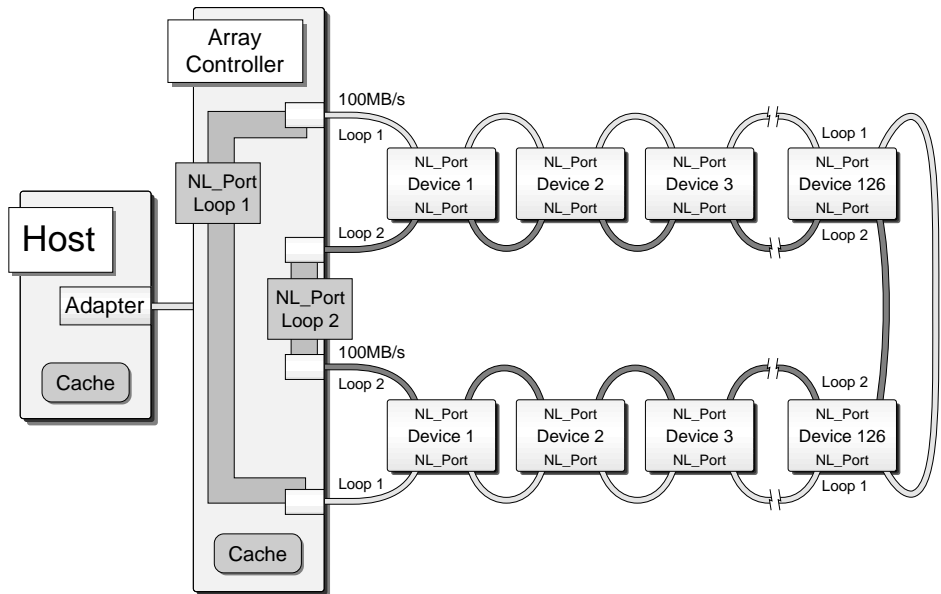
**1394 also specifies a low-voltage, GameBoy-like, differential type cable. No termination is required. It appears that 1394 will be used mainly in consumer audio/video products, set-top (cable) boxes, scanners, and printers. 1394.2, with its 1.25 Gb/s speed, should be fully specified in 1997, with products launched in 1998. It is targeted toward workstation clustering but should also be used for more mainstream applications.**

The first peripherals with 1394 interfaces were released in 1995 and included Digital Video camcorders from JVC, Sony, and Panasonic. Vendors supporting 1394 include Apple, TI, IBM, Sony, and Microsoft. In 1996, future versions of the 1394 specification were announced, referred to as 1394.1 and 1394.2. They are specified to offer throughput from 800 Mb/s to 1.2 Gb/s.



To obtain the final version of the IEEE 1394 standard, write to the Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers, Inc., Customer Service, 445 Hoes Lane, P.O.B. 1331, Piscataway, NJ 08855. Call them (800) 678-IEEE, fax them (908) 981-9667, or e-mail them [customer.service@ieee.org](mailto:customer.service@ieee.org).

## Fibre Channel



**Figure 66.** Fibre channel arbitrated loop

### Background

Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop (FC-AL) is a byproduct of a Fibre Channel-like protocol that has been around for a couple of years (used in ESCON, IBM's peripheral interface) and an extension of the IPI interface. It's geared toward connecting large host computers to storage subsystems and network hubs.

The Fibre Channel standard was initially developed by the Fibre Channel Specification Initiative (FCSI) in February 1993. FCSI was a consortium that included Hewlett-Packard, Sun Microsystems, and IBM. The Fibre Channel Association (FCA) formed in August 1993, and in 1995 inherited the development and maintenance of the Fibre Channel standard from FCSI.

The Fibre Channel interface is a loop architecture, as opposed to a bus-like standard, such as SCSI or IPI. The Fibre Channel loop (Figure 66) can have any combination of hosts and disks up to a maximum of 126 devices.

Fibre Channel supports multiple protocols: SCSI, IPI, TCP/IP, and ATM. All these protocols can run at the same time over the same cabling.

Although Figure 66 suggests that the drives are connected by a cable running from device to device, the preferred approach is to attach disk drives directly to a backplane. To eliminate cable congestion, make hot plugging practical, and simplify mechanical designs.

In fact, because the Fibre Channel drives use a shortened version of the SCA 40-pin connector used on parallel SCSI drives, they can easily be designed to fit into existing SCA drive cabinets.



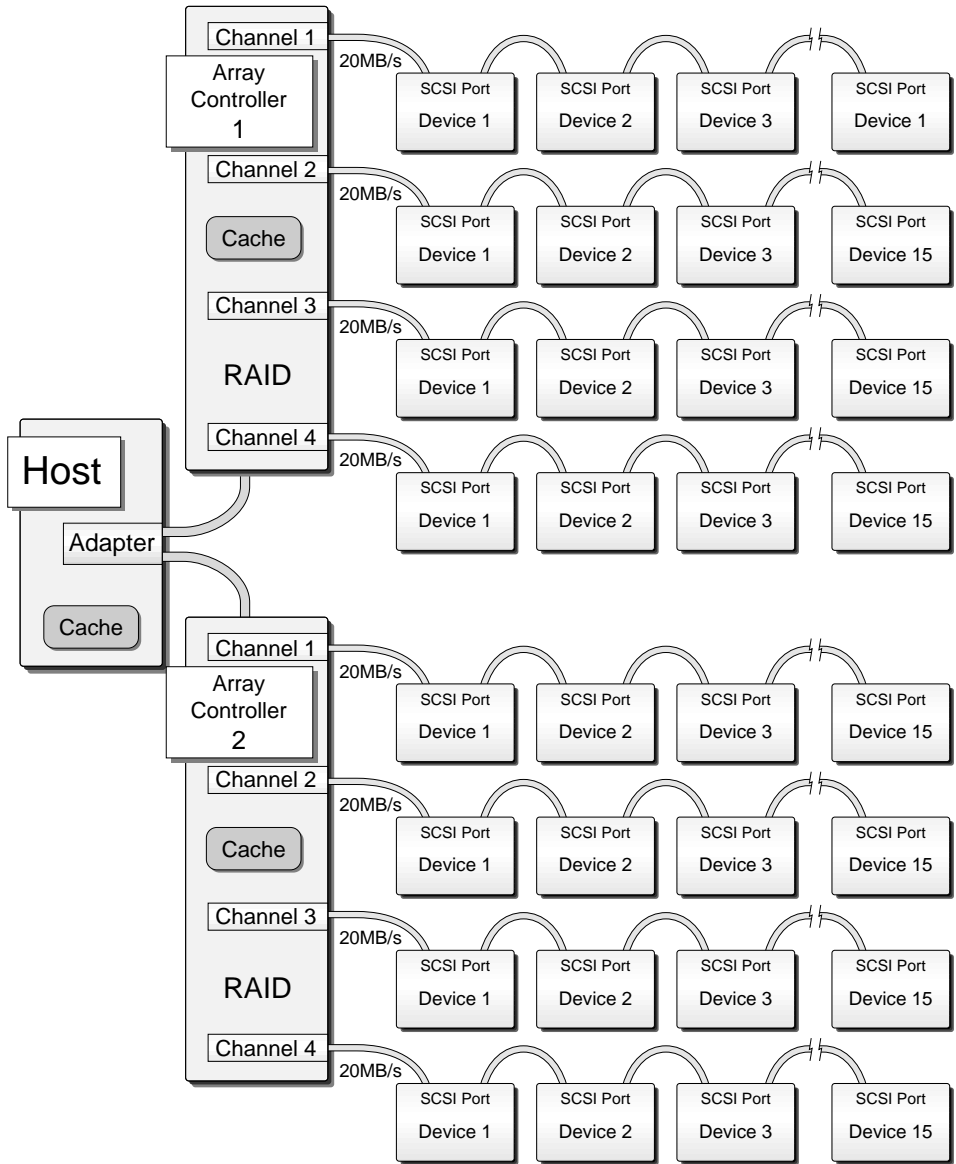
**“SCA” stands for single connector attachment. It is a high-density connector that carries every type of signal passed along a SCSI bus, including SCSI ID, LED, and spindle synchronization information. Due to its timed pins, it is particularly suitable for hot-swapping—removing and inserting removable drives while the system is powered on. Timed pins allow for removing power first and ground last when a drive is disconnected, and attaching ground first and power last when a drive is plugged in.**

Loop structure enables the rapid exchange of data from device to device. A Port Bypass Circuit (PBC), located on the backplane, is the logic that enables devices to be removed or inserted without disrupting the operation of the loop. In addition, PBC logic can take drives off-line or bring them back on-line by sending a command to any device to remove it from loop operation or reinstall it onto the loop. Contrast the simplicity of the loop architecture used by Fibre Channel (Figure 66) to the parallel SCSI implementation (Figure 67).

Features of Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop are listed in Table 45.

**Table 45. Features of a fibre channel arbitrated loop**

Feature	Value
Maximum Number of Devices	126
Maximum Data Rate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 100 MB/s (1.062 GHz using an 8B/10B code)</li><li>• 200 MB/s (dual loop)</li></ul>
Maximum Cable Distance	30 meters between each device using coaxial cable (longer, with other cabling options such as optical, which can go 10 kilometers between devices)
Cable types	Twinaxial, Coaxial, Optical, Backplane
Fault tolerance	Dual Porting, Hot Plugging Drive Switches
Jumpers	None



**Figure 67.** SCSI parallel implementation

## Why use Fibre Channel?

SCSI has become the interface of choice for medium- and large-sized computing systems. At the same time, the computer industry's experience with SCSI has brought to light the need for improvements in:

- cable distance
- data rates
- command overhead
- array feature support
- connectability

### Cable distance limitations

SCSI comes in several different versions, but the majority of products shipping today are of the single-ended variety. (That is primarily because single-ended SCSI costs less and is widely available.) If a SCSI bus is limited to connecting devices found within a single cabinet, and the interface cable length does not exceed three meters, it is usually not a problem to use single-ended SCSI. The potential for SCSI signal problems increases, however, if the bus must link several cabinets, converting from an unshielded ribbon cable in one cabinet to an external shielded cable, and then back again to a ribbon cable within the second cabinet. Differential SCSI solves this cabling issue, but usually requires that a system have both single-ended and differential ports because most non-disk peripherals use only single-ended SCSI.



**You can't attach a single-ended SCSI device to a differential bus. You can't attach a differential SCSI device to a single-ended bus. You can have single-ended and differential devices attached to the same system, but currently you can't have them attached to the same bus on the system.**

### Higher data rates

Magnetic hard disk areal density is increasing at about 60 percent per year. Bit density (measured in bits per inch) is one of the two components of areal density. It increases at about 30 percent per year, and the data rate automatically increases proportionately. Disk rotation speeds have almost tripled over the last five years from 3,600 to 10,000 RPM, and they continue to climb. They also contribute to higher data rates. In the next few years, drives will be introduced that can sustain transfers in excess of 20 MB/s, thanks solely to improvements in bit density and rotational speed. Already there are disk drives on the market that can transfer data at rates over 10 MB/s. An interface limited to 20 MB/s can support only one drive at that data rate, making it technically impractical for future applications of faster drives.



**SCSI protocols run easily on Fibre Channel, making it a cabling solution that can be quickly implemented on drives and hard drives.**



Fibre Channel also has benefits that go beyond current disk drive interface solutions. When compared to conventional interface technologies, Fibre Channel provides:

- significantly higher bandwidth
- superior drive array features
- improved network storage capabilities

### Bandwidth

A Fibre Channel loop supports data rates up to 100 MB/s. Slower versions are specified at 25 to 50 MB/s, but these aren't popular. Multiple loops of drives can achieve even more. Among the applications growing in popularity that demand this kind of data rate are video storage and retrieval, supercomputer modeling, and image processing. Moreover, as file servers replace mainframe computers, they will require ever-higher transaction rates to provide comparable levels of service. Using the FC-4 protocol, drives are attached through the Direct Disk Attach Profile protocol (DDA).

Since most UNIX and Windows servers lack the sophisticated I/O channel and controller structures of mainframe computers, they have not been able to match the large number of high-performance disk drives that enterprise systems can support. Fibre Channel loops attached to such high-performance buses as S-Bus or PCI—both of which run 70 MB/s or faster—offer I/O configurations that can sustain mainframe-like I/O rates. Performance estimates suggest that if a system requests the relatively short I/O transfers typical of business transaction processing (8 KB or less), more than 60 drives can be supported without saturating the loop and bogging down performance.

Comparing the single host adapter to the many channels and controllers mainframes employ to attach the same number of drives illustrates the remarkable economics of Fibre Channel-attached disk storage. With up to 23 GB per disk available, 63 drives on a loop would make over 1,449 GB available to a user on a single FC-AL host port. It will be possible for any workstation or system that has a single FC port or backplane slot to become a file server. No longer will file servers be characterized by large rack-mounted systems. With FC, they can be as small and unobtrusive as any office system.

### Remote Online storage

Since the Fibre Channel interface is part of (and fully compatible with) the Fibre Channel standard, optical cabling can be used in any part of a subsystem except the backplane. This makes it possible to have a disk subsystem quite a distance from the computer system it is attached to. Using single-mode Fibre optics, online disk storage could be as far as six miles away.

## Fibre Channel with optical transmission

A typical computer system could have disks within the system unit attached via the FC loop. The loop can be extended by using an electronic-to-optical adapter and lengths of fibre-optic cable. On the same loop running the internal disks, remote disks would appear to the system to be directly attached, in the same manner as the local disks. These could be used in any fashion, including mirroring the local disks.

It makes a very attractive means for having a remote online copy of critical data, which could be used to continue operations should anything happen to the original computer system.



**For sources of information on Fibre Channel, see “Appendix A: Additional Information Sources” on page 288.**

## Serial Storage Architecture (SSA)

---

SSA is based on a proven storage subsystem (the 1933) developed by IBM's European subsidiary in Havant, England. In 1993, IBM opened this system architecture and virtually gave the design to any company that asked for it. In 1995, the 1933 division bought itself out from IBM and is now called Xyratex.



**IBM still has control over the development and manufacturing of future SSA silicon.**

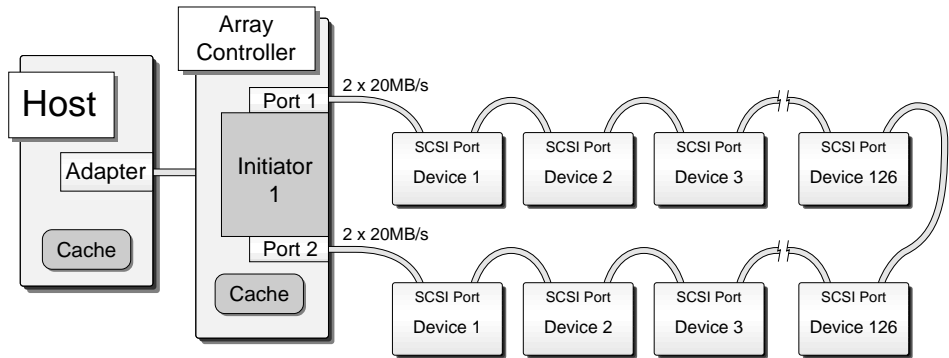
SSA is a powerful high-speed serial interface designed to connect high-capacity data storage devices, subsystems, servers, and workstations. Designed with the future in mind, SSA facilitates migration from current SCSI equipment and will accommodate implementation of future configurations, including the use of fibre-optic connections. Only four signal wires are required, compared to 68 for the closest SCSI equivalent. SSA interfaces require no address switches and no discrete terminators.

SSA architecture operates at two protocol levels. The lower level, SSA-PH (for SSA Physical), defines the electrical characteristics, coding scheme, and method of information transmission. The upper level maps SCSI commands into a form suitable for serial transmission. As a result, devices now using SCSI-2 can be upgraded to SSA with minimal code changes.

SSA offers superior performance over the interfaces commonly used today. Each SSA link is full-duplex and frame multiplexed simultaneously, resulting in data rates in the 20 MB/s range in each direction, with total throughput of 80 MB/s at each node (peripheral). As many as 127 devices can be connected per loop, with “hot plugging” supported. There can be up to 20 meters

(approximately 65 feet) between nodes (peripherals). With optical cabling, there can be up to 680 meters—approximately 2,231 feet—between nodes.

The combination of low power, fewer components, and fault isolation makes SSA highly reliable. Each node performs extensive error checking, and if errors occur, SSA provides transparent frame recovery. When SSA devices are configured in a loop (Figure 68), alternate paths to each device ensure that there is no single point of failure.



**Figure 68.** SSA single-domain implementation

Besides enjoying SSA's performance benefits, users will also appreciate its compact four-wire cables and connectors, which have an overall diameter of less than 6 mm. SSA cables provide a welcome contrast to the cumbersome maze of 50- and 68-wire cables that mark a typical SCSI installation. The reduction in cabling yields a substantial cost improvement to customers. It provides higher levels of performance, fault tolerance, data availability, and connectivity than is possible with today's parallel interfaces and is ideally suited for video applications, data servers, and "mission critical" data.



**SCSI protocols operate on top of SSA link protocols, allowing drivers and peripherals to be easily adapted.**

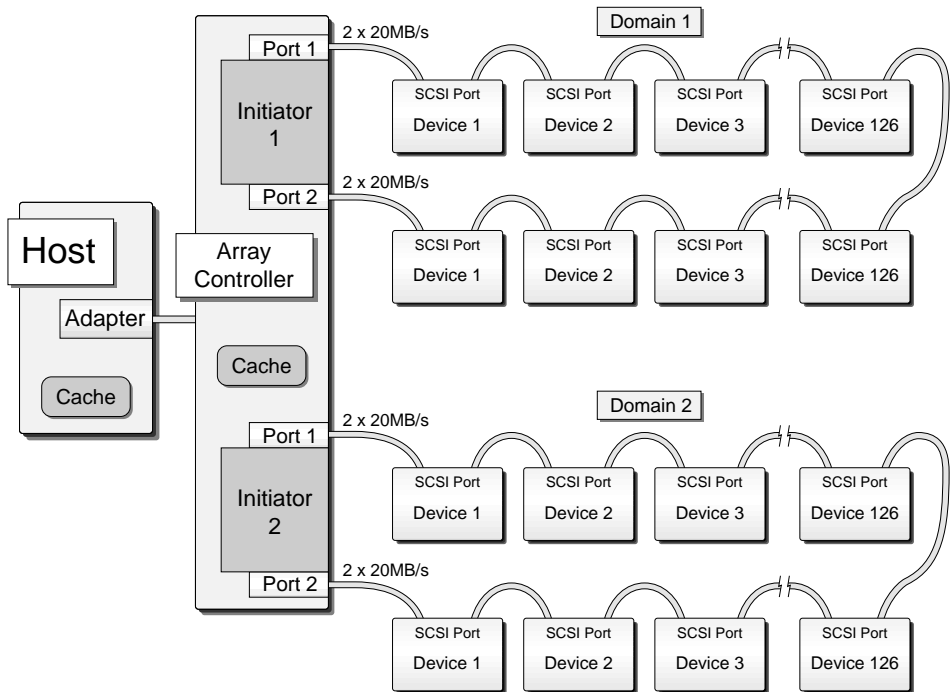
Among the functions provided with SSA is a unique capability called "spatial re-use," which allows data to be transferred concurrently at high speeds between many pairs of serially connected peripherals, without the need to route the data through the processor. This leads to more effective use of the system's resources in environments where users may be moving data from a CD-ROM to memory, from a disk drive to a tape backup unit, and from memory to a printer, all at the same time from the same processor.

SSA offers excellent performance. Its fundamental building block is a single port capable of carrying on two 20 MB/s conversations at once—one inbound and one outbound. An SSA node consists of two ports, allowing four conversations to be carried on simultaneously, for a total interface bandwidth of 80 MB/s.



**Future versions of SSA will support 40 MB/s links resulting in 160 MB/s total throughput.**

Multiple domain configurations (Figure 69) further increase reliability and performance.



**Figure 69.** SSA dual-domain implementation

SSA's dual-port, full-duplex architecture allows peripherals to be connected in loop configurations designed to contain no single point of failure. SSA's serial interface loop significantly improves connectivity, while its auto-configuration capability allows the true potential for hot-plugging, plug-and-play, and dynamic reconfiguring. Low cost is achieved through the use of compact cables and connectors and by embedding all circuitry into a single CMOS chip. SSA is fully compatible with the Fibre Channel Interface (FCI), which allows interconnection of processors separated by large distances.

SSA is supported by an increasing number of silicon, adapter, storage, and system manufacturers, including members of the SSA Industry Association (SSA IA).



**The SSA IA was formed in 1995 to promote the acceptance of the SSA standard within the industry. Its membership includes more than 25 manufacturers of systems and peripheral products.**

## Fibre Channel Enhanced Loop

---

The Fibre Channel Enhanced Loop (FCEL) standard was submitted to ANSI for consideration in September 1996. It merges FC-AL and SSA technology. FCEL was developed to reduce confusion and offer a more cohesive future growth path. Its development was led by IBM, Seagate, and the Fibre Channel Association. Look for FCEL products in the year 2000.

---

## Other Storage Interfaces

Even though SCSI dominates its niche, it's not the only player in the interface game. Other technologies preceded SCSI and in some marketplaces have displaced it, primarily because of cost, compatibility, and performance considerations. Chapter 7 describes the various other interfaces that dominate the PC-compatible marketplace.

### ST-506/ST-412

---

In 1983, Al Shugart's Seagate Technologies introduced the ST-506 as a 5.25-inch, 5 MB hard drive on the IBM XT. Seagate's interface became the most popular for low-capacity MFM (modified frequency modulation) drives. Seagate later introduced the ST-412, which provided 12 MB of capacity.



**Rumor has it that Seagate's name came about from Shugart's desire to have his company name begin with S, have a G in the middle, and T toward the end. His own name was already in use and consequently unavailable to him.**

These early Seagate models provided a low-level serial interface. They were inexpensive to implement, not very extendable, and slow, with a one-bit-at-a-time 500 to 1000 KB/s transfer rate. The initial ST-506 drive had a 625 KB/s (5 Mb/s) internal transfer rate. Utilizing a 1:1 interleave on the controller, the peak data transfer rate was about 500 KB/s. The controller needed to have a track buffer to handle a 1:1 interleave. It was used only on hard drives and was known as a dumb interface because the drives had to be told how to access data by an external controller card. Two cables were used:

- a 34-pin drive control cable
- a 20-pin data cable

The control cable contained signals to select the drive, seek the head, and select a cylinder, head, and sector of the drive.

The data cable transmitted data in a differential format. The controller card was programmed through the use of "Command Descriptor Blocks."



**A Command Descriptor Block is typically a six-, ten-, or twelve-byte data structure residing in the computer's memory. It contains the command code and other information needed by a target to execute a command. See "SCSI Command Descriptor Block" on page 295 for examples of**

**Command Descriptor Block structures.** See “ST-506 Communications” on page 317 for tables listing ST-506 commands and data signals.

Seagate wanted ST-506 to become a standard so that the computer industry could pattern its products on a single interface, assuring users of compatibility. Seagate placed the ST-506 interface in the public domain and provided specifications to anyone interested. The specifications eventually became the IEEE 412 standard.

ST-506 drives were configured for operation through the Setup program present in the ROM of the PC. The Setup program configured the CMOS configuration memory with the number and type of drives in the system. The types of drives supported were typically limited to a number of fixed choices. ST-506 controllers typically had a formatter program embedded in ROM, accessible only through DEBUG.



**CMOS is an acronym for Complimentary (symmetry) Metal-Oxide Semiconductor. It is a microprocessor (memory chip) that permits many components to be packed together in a very small area.**

With the introduction of faster, more powerful chips, manufacturers turned to RLL (run-length limited) encoding to meet enhanced I/O capabilities and storage requirements.



**RLL (run-length limited) is an encoding scheme invented at IBM that employs a set of rules to determine the pulse pattern for each bit, based on the value of the preceding bits. RLL allows 50 percent more information than MFM (modified frequency modulation) to be recorded on a track. This is accomplished by recording more fluxes for every byte and packing them more tightly onto the surface of the hard disk. It is also referred to as 2,7 RLL because the recording scheme involves bit patterns with no more than seven and no less than two successive zeros.**

ST-506 did not mandate one type of encoding, so these drives could be encoded with RLL by switching controllers. RLL encoding crammed more data onto the disk and improved data transfer rates by up to 50 percent, necessitating a faster interface. MFM drives had 17 sectors per track, whereas RLL drives had 26 sectors per track. A 1:1 interleaved RLL drive with 26 sectors per track had a transfer rate of about 800 KB/s.

**NOTE**



For more information, see “Encoding processes” on page 45.

Later in 1984, with the advent of the IBM AT personal computer, ST-506 drives were interfaced in a similar way to the IBM XT, except that all I/O port addresses were moved and a secondary port was set up for another controller. The controller was made by Western Digital and was known as the WD1003-WA2. This controller and the need for backward compatibility has impacted

the drive industry ever since. In the PC world, compatibility with standards is extremely important.



**There are two types of standards: de facto and agency. De facto standards are set by an industry over time. Agency standards have been submitted to, reviewed, and approved by, a standards agency. ANSI and IEEE are standards agencies.**

## ESDI

---

Enhanced Small-Device Interface (ESDI) is an improved ST-506 interface that was developed in the mid-1980s and was championed by Maxtor. ESDI doubled ST-506's data transfer rate and allowed for selective reformatting of tracks. Otherwise, mechanically and electronically it was virtually identical to ST-506. It was device-specific and only used for hard disk drives, mostly those with very large capacity. It offered a maximum capacity of about 1 GB. These drives typically used RLL encoding to boost capacity. Two cables were used to interface drives:

- a 20-pin data cable
- a 34-pin control cable

ESDI was slightly less expensive to implement than SCSI, but typically allowed only two devices to be connected. It could continuously transfer data at up to 24 Mb/s. ESDI didn't require device drivers, which gave it an I/O boost. ESDI drives typically used a 5.25-inch form factor. They were appropriate mainly in servers used for networking PCs.

ESDI's main improvements were due to separate data-separator chips that were responsible for:

- encoding data and clocks prior to recording on the disk
- decoding data and clocks after reading them off the disk

Seeking to different tracks required only a single step command, in contrast to ST-506, which required three. One drawback was that the controller speed had to be synchronized with the speed of the hard drive. Getting a new drive meant getting a new controller. It also required a separate controller board. Up to seven drives per controller could be connected, although only two ports were provided.

Attempts were made to add tape and optical support, but no devices ever appeared. The standard eventually became the ANSI X3.170-1990 specification.



**Some early optical drives used an ESDI interface between the drive and the drive's controller. This provided a SCSI connection to the host.**



IDE stands for Intelligent Drive Electronics or Integrated Drive Electronics. IDE incorporates controller hardware onto the disk drive, which results in significant parts reduction and cost savings. IDE combines the physical and electrical protocols of ST-506 with the speed of ESDI. IDE drives can be “directly” plugged into a computer’s expansion bus, providing the following benefits:

- A slot is saved.
- The need for a host adapter is eliminated.
- It’s extremely easy to use.
- It’s cheaper than SCSI.

The connections are identical to the PC AT bus, minus some of its 98 lines. Lines made obsolete by IDE include DMA, REQ and ACK, IRQs except 14, and memory strobe lines. It was offered in 8- and 16-bit parallel interface types.



**Eight-bit drives, such as the MiniScribe 8450XT, are referred to as XT Interface Drives. Sixteen-bit are referred to as Standard AT Interface Drives. They are not interchangeable.**

IBM even created its own version of IDE that allowed connection to its proprietary MicroChannel Architecture (MCA) bus present in early IBM PS/2 personal computers. This was now a parallel interface, offering a significant performance boost from the serial architecture of ST-506 and ESDI.



**In a serial architecture data is transmitted one bit at a time. In a parallel architecture each byte (eight bits) is sent simultaneously using separate lines. Parallel architecture allows for much faster I/O than serial.**

IDE is often used interchangeably with the terms AT or ATA, although ATA specifically references an implementation of IDE designed for the AT bus (either ISA or EISA bus). IDE denotes a drive that has a controller on board, hence a SCSI drive could be technically called an IDE drive.



**AT stands for Advanced Technology. ATA stands for Advanced Technology Attachment. ATA-2 is an ANSI agency standard, while IDE is a de facto standard.**

### Origins of IDE

In the mid-1980s the initial champions of this technology included Compaq, Conner Peripherals, Imprimis and Western Digital. Compaq wanted to reduce the cost of the computer by eliminating host adapters. It also wanted to create laptops that didn’t require that valuable slot real estate be taken up by host

adapters. These and several other hard disk manufacturers produced a Common Access Method (CAM) specification that was submitted to ANSI in 1990 and became the X3.221-1994 standard. CAM defined a common method of accessing the hard disk on a personal computer. IDE became one of the most popular implementations of CAM.

Always gaining in popularity, IDE muscled out ST-506 because it offered more performance and capacity and, like ESDI, it did not require software drivers but used a standard WD1003, chip-based translation mode instead.

IDE is typically implemented using a standard, 40-pin, 80 to 120 ohm impedance, unshielded, unterminated, flat ribbon cable. It costs significantly less to implement than SCSI:

- Single chip VLSI implementation of IDE is available for less than five dollars, compared to fifty for SCSI.
- An IDE host adapter (nicknamed “paddle card”) can cost five dollars where a SCSI host adapter can cost one hundred dollars.
- An IDE drive can be as much as fifty dollars cheaper than a SCSI drive.



**VLSI stands for very-large-scale integration. It's a chip with 20- to 900-thousand logic gates per chip. Transistors form logic gates that control the flow of electrons through chips.**

The cost differences result from a combination of cheaper parts, larger markets, and economies of scale. IDE became so prevalent that in 1995 new 2.5-inch laptop drives completely switched over to IDE and ceased to be available in SCSI, forcing Apple to switch as well.

IDE and SCSI drives share a lot of electronics in common, so you will often find the same hard drive model offered with either interface. As a rule, the drive industry produces more IDE models in the lower capacity range and more SCSI models in the higher capacity range.

Original IDE did have some severe limitations:

- Drive capacity was limited to 528 MB (up from 40 MB of ST-506).
- Burst transfer rate was limited to a range of 4.0 to 8.33 MB/s (sustained data transfer rate was in the 1 to 2 MB/s range).
- Connectivity was limited to only two drives.
- Compatibility was limited to only hard drives.

## IDE details

### NOTE



See “IDE data signals” on page 319 for tables that list and describe IDE commands, data signals, and registers.

### Masters and slaves

With IDE, one drive is a master and the other a slave, even though they don't control each other.



**A master ensures data transfer to one or more slave stations. There can be only one master on a data bus at a given time. A slave is the target selected by the master station to receive data.**

A jumper setting on the drive sets the drive into either mode. The master drive performs signal decoding for the slave. Many drives support multiple master/slave modes. These modes include:

- ISA original
- Conner
- ATA/CAM

The ATA/CAM mode is not backward-compatible with ISA or Conner. The ISA original method has a couple of drawbacks:

- It's not able to tell when the slave drive is ready.
- It doesn't have an activity indicator if two drives are connected.

Conner added a method of determining when the slave drive was ready for the host. The ATA/CAM method is similar to Conner's method, but the polarity of one pin is reversed.

### Handling bad sectors

Defective sectors on the disk are typically marked as such at the factory and not utilized. If a defect is encountered later, the drive will usually automatically map out the bad sector and utilize a spare sector. Some IDE drives can also have tracks reformatted to spare out bad sectors.

### IDE data transfers

IDE data transfers are handled via PIO (programmed I/O), where the processor handles the data transfers. These transfers are “blind” transfers because there is no handshaking to synchronize the transfer. Drives use the I/O Channel

Ready (IORDY) signal to determine when I/Os were ready. The original PIO transfer rates are listed in Table 46.

**Table 46.** IDE data transfer rates

Mode	Burst Speed
PIO Mode 0	3.33 MB/s (600 ns per word)
PIO Mode 1	5.22 MB/s (383 ns per word)
PIO Mode 2	8.33 MB/s (240 ns per word)
Singleword DMA Mode 0	2.08 MB/s (960 ns per word)
Singleword DMA Mode 1	4.17 MB/s (480 ns per word)
Singleword DMA Mode 2	8.33 MB/s (240 ns per word)
Multiword DMA Mode 0	4.17 MB/s (480 ns per word)

The typical PIO data transfer on a PC occurs in the following sequence:

1. Drive asserts IRQ14 (interrupt request) to indicate it is ready.
2. Data is transferred in 512-byte sectors.
3. Host drives IOR (I/O read) or IOW (I/O write) lines according to selected transfer mode.
4. If drive can't support or receive data fast enough it de-asserts IOCHRDY to throttle transfer.



**An IRQ is an interrupt request line. It is the line that carries hardware interrupt signals to the processor on a PC.**

The typical DMA data transfer occurs in the following sequence:

1. Host sets up DMA controller.
2. Read or Write DMA command issued.
3. Drive asserts DMARQ when it's ready to transfer data.
4. DMA controller responds with DMACK when bus control is granted.
5. Host drives IOR or IOW lines according to selected transfer mode.
6. Transfer finishes with DMARQ or DMACK dropped.
7. If drive can't support or receive data fast enough, it de-asserts DMARQ to throttle transfer.

## IDE limitations

The most severe limitations were imposed as a consequence of the requirement for backward-compatibility with BIOS software that used the INT13 BIOS call that came with the original Western Digital WD1003 controller. This backward-compatibility allowed for IDE's transparency in not requiring new drivers for DOS and Windows 3.1. Other operating systems were not affected. The INT13 call only allowed for 1024 cylinders, 255 heads, and 63 sectors to be accessed.



**8.4 GB IDE limited access to 65536 cylinders, 16 heads, and 255 sectors per track.**

The IDE task file registers limited the number of heads to 16, so the total capacity that could be accessed was  $1024 \times 16 \times 63$ , which equals 1,032,192 sectors, 528,482,302 bytes, or 528 million bytes.



**It is referred to as the 528 MB limit although it is really 516 MB in true mathematical terms.**

Table 47 illustrates the data transfer limitations on a PC imposed by the combined limitations of BIOS and IDE.

**Table 47.** *IDE data transfer limitations on a PC*

	Cylinder	Head	Sector
BIOS Limits	1024 (10 bits)	255 (8 bits)	63 (8 bits)
IDE Task File Limit	65535 (16 bits)	16 (4 bits)	255 (8 bits)
Least Common Denominator	1024	16	63

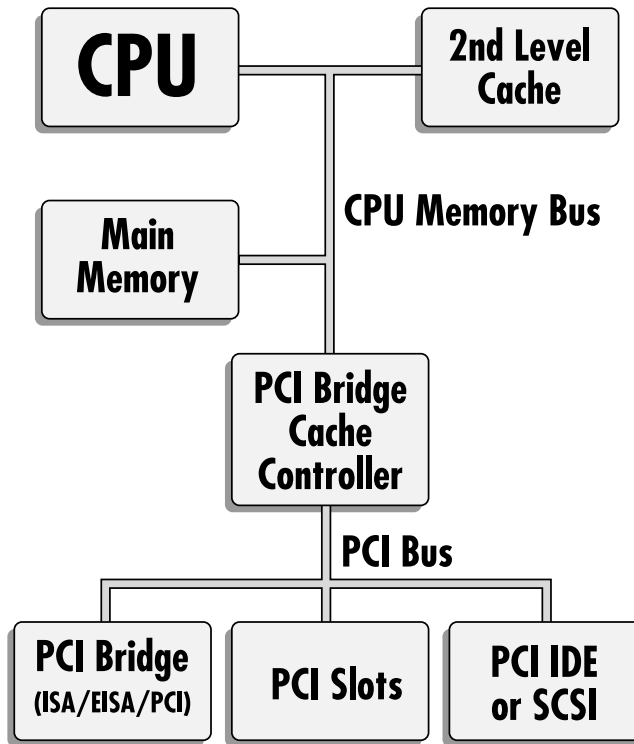
Many vendors such as AMI, Award, and Phoenix bypassed this capacity limit by extending the allowable cylinder number by two or four bits. Other disk utility software also allowed this limit to be circumvented.

The ability to daisy-chain two drives from different vendors often did not work because of loopholes in the specification. IDE still did not possess the capability to multitask multiple commands like SCSI. With IDE, once a command was issued, the operating system had to wait until the command was complete before going on to another command. Power management was included in the original specification.



**Power management is an energy-saving feature. It is the ability of a system to recognize when it has been inactive for a (usually) user-specified amount of time, and consequently to spin down.**

## PC IDE implementation



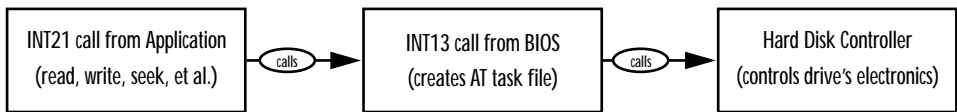
*Figure 70. PC PCI IDE implementation*

IDE drives are configured for operation in the computer's Setup utility. A modern BIOS automatically finds the capacity and configuration of an IDE drive. There is no longer a fixed amount of drive table entries in the BIOS as there was with ST-506 drives.



For information on the commands used with IDE, see "IDE Communications" on page 319.

DOS applications use interrupts to communicate with devices. With IDE, applications access the hard drive using the call chain illustrated in Figure 71.



**Figure 71.** IDE application call chain



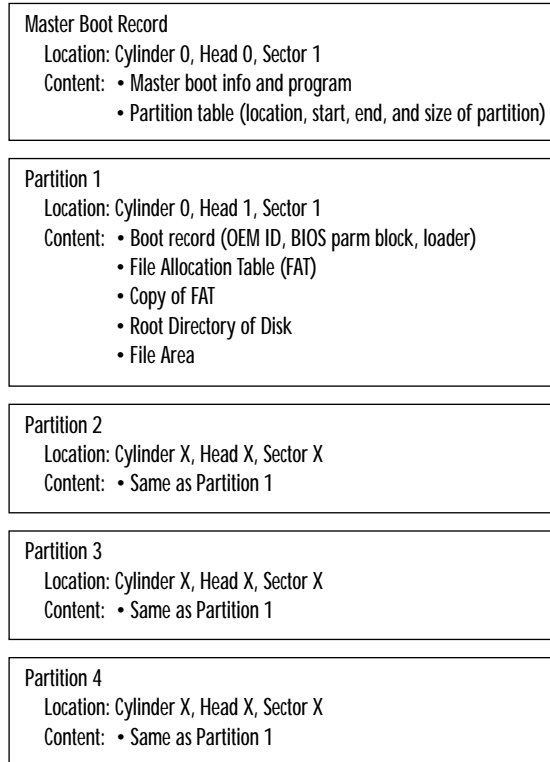
**An interrupt (INT) is a momentary suspension of processing caused by a deliberate instruction to interrupt the microprocessor.**

Applications can use INT25 or INT26 to access the drive directly through the device manager.



See “PC IDE: INT13 call codes” on page 323 for the activities available through INT13.

DOS lays out data on the disk in a specific format. This format is laid down when a drive is high-level formatted with the DOS FDISK and FORMAT commands. FDISK is used for hard disk partitioning. It contains the specifications for partition size and assignments of the boot partition and the drive letter—this will always be “C,” unless there are multiple partitions. FORMAT lays out the DOS structure on the disk and establishes how and where files can be stored. Figure 72 illustrates a typical DOS disk layout after FDISK and FORMAT have been run.



**Figure 72.** *DOS disk layout (3.0 and newer)*

A primary partition is the first active partition on the disk. Boot files are always stored on a primary partition. On any disk, there can be only four primary partitions. Older DOS versions could support primary partitions of up to 32 MB.

Extended partitions are separate logical partitions that can be up to 8 GB in capacity. There can be many extended partitions because they include their own partition tables.



**Partition tables store information on the location, starting point, ending point, and size of each partition on a hard disk.**



Table 48 lists the size limitations for partitions on various PC operating systems and the file systems each OS uses.

**Table 48.** *Operating system drive capacity access limitations*

	Drive Size	Partition Size	File System
DOS 6.X	8 GB	2 GB	FAT
Windows 3.X	8 GB	2 GB	FAT
Windows 95	137 GB	2 GB	VFAT
Windows 95 w/Service Pak 2	2 TB	2 TB	FAT32
Windows NT	2 EX	2 EX	NTFS



“EX” stands for exabyte, which is  $10^{18}$  or 1,000,000,000,000,000 bytes. FAT stands for file allocation table. Its purpose is to keep track of the locations of blocks in which the operating system has written data to a disk. (The “V” in VFAT stands for virtual.) NTFS stands for New Technology File System. It is Microsoft’s proprietary system for tracking location of data on a hard disk.

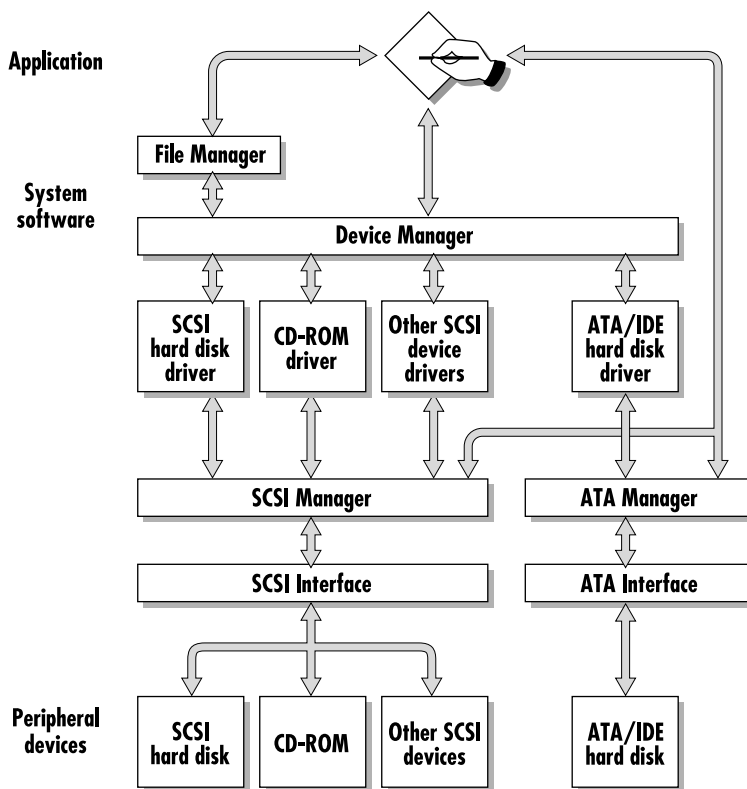
The FAT File System is also encumbered by cluster size limitations (Table 49).

**Table 49.** *FAT cluster size limitations*

Disk Size	Cluster Size
128–255 MB	4 KB
256–511 MB	8 KB
512–1023 MB	16 KB
1024–2048 MB	32 KB

Cluster size is the smallest unit of allocatable space. A file on a 1 GB drive that contains only one character nevertheless uses up 32 KB of space, because 32 KB is the smallest cluster or allocation unit allowed on a 1 GB drive. On Windows NT, the NTFS file system utilizes a 4 KB cluster size for all volume sizes.

## Macintosh IDE implementation



**Figure 73.** Mac OS IDE implementation

Several Macintosh computers have an IDE internal storage interface. Apple began using IDE in 1994, starting with the Quadra 630 and PowerBook 150. Apple's version of IDE is very similar to that used by the PC industry.

The block diagram in Figure 73 shows how IDE was interfaced to the Macintosh operating system. The ATA Manager ROM-based software provides an application programming interface between IDE drivers and the IDE interface hardware. IDE drivers provide partition, data and error handling services to the Macintosh operating system. These drivers make operating on IDE drives transparent to applications that communicate through the normal File Manager interface. Power management is supported.

**NOTE**



See "IDE pin assignments" on page 324 for a table listing the pin assignments on IDE connectors.

To match the big-endian format of Motorola's MC68030-compatible bus, the bytes are swapped:

- The lower byte of the IDE data bus, DD(0–7), is connected to the high byte of the upper word of the I/O bus, IOD(24–31).
- The higher byte of the IDE data bus, DD(8–15), is connected to the low byte of the upper word of the I/O bus, IOD(16–23).



The term “word” is used here to denote the number of bits that constitute a common unit of information in a particular computer system. In this instance a word is 16 bits.

## Special considerations

Initial limitations of IDE in the Quadra 630, PowerBook 150 and Performa 5200/6200/6300 were that these machines could physically support only one IDE drive. There was no provision for a secondary IDE channel. The PowerBook 150 also always loaded an IDE driver from its ROM. This made it impossible to load a disk-based driver. Additionally, there was no support for ATAPI and no provision for the advanced transfer rate capabilities offered by DMA mode transfers. Only PIO Modes 0 to 3 were supported. LBA addressing, part of the ATA-2 specification, was supported. Drives larger than 528 MB could be utilized.



For more details, consult Apple's Developer Note on the Quadra 630 Computer, available on many Developer CD-ROMs from Apple. See also “IDE Communications” on page 319.

## Enhanced IDE

---

In 1994, Rich Rutledge of Western Digital proposed the Enhanced IDE specification. It was designed to supplant IDE and to eliminate its most glaring limitations. It was also popularized as Fast ATA by Seagate and Quantum, but without some of the extensions, like large capacity and ATAPI support. Fast ATA was designed to minimize the need to enhance system BIOSs. Enhanced IDE was known as ATA-2 by other vendors. It became the AT Attachment Interface with Extensions standard. A committee known as the Small Form Factor Committee oversaw this effort and produced a document known as X3.279-199x, which was submitted to ANSI.

Enhanced IDE allowed support of four IDE devices when two IDE channels were present. The primary channel was designed for high-speed hard disks, whereas the low-speed secondary channel was designed for non-hard disk devices. On PCs, the primary channel was located on interrupt request 14 (IRQ14), allowing it to continue to be universally supported à la ST-506. The secondary channel was located on IRQ15. Enhanced IDE also maintained IDE's ease of use, low cost, and backward compatibility.

Enhanced IDE allowed support of non-hard disk devices such as CD-ROM and tape. New interfacing modes broke the 528 MB barrier and allowed Enhanced IDE to support drives up to 8.4 GB in capacity. Logical block addressing (LBA) allowed for the increase in capacity potential.

LBA support caused the BIOS to create an Enhanced Drive Parameter Table (EDPT) during initialization. The EDPT was proposed by BIOS maker Phoenix Technologies. It contains two sets of drive parameter information. The first set is called CHS, for cylinder, head, sector. It provides a straight translation of BIOS cylinder, head, and sector information, without reducing the number of heads supported from 255 to 16.



**“From 255 to 16” represents the difference between the addressable capacity limits of BIOS (255-head capability) and IDE (16-head capability). Because IDE was limited to 16 heads, the far greater capability of the BIOS could not be tapped. The mechanism was limited to its lowest common denominator: 16.**

The second set translates the cylinder, head, sector information into a 28-bit logical block address à la SCSI. This LBA addressing requires drive firmware support. An operating system does not need to be modified to support the larger volume capacity, but a system BIOS does need modification to support this feature.

The logical block address is derived from the formula illustrated in Figure 74.

$$\text{LBA} = \left[ \left( \text{Cylinder} \times \text{Max. Head No.} + \text{Selected Head} \right) \times \frac{\text{Sectors}}{\text{Track}} \right] + (\text{Sector} - 1)$$

**Figure 74.** *Formula for the Logical Block Address*

Faster transfer rate timings allowed data transfer rates to reach 11.1 MB/s (180 ns per word) with Mode 3 PIO transfers and 13.3 MB/s (150 ns per word) with multiword, DMA mode 1 data transfers. PIO transfers are where the processor handles the data transfer. DMA transfers are handled by the drive itself. Multiword DMA mode 1 transfers were typically implemented on high-performance local bus implementations. Enhanced IDE supports several DMA transfer rates. Type B DMA operates at 4 MB/s, while Type F DMA operates at either 6.67 MB/s or 8.33 MB/s. Type F is typically used on PCI machines. PCI also enables scatter/gather transfers, allowing for better virtual memory performance.



**Scatter/gather refers to reading logically contiguous blocks of data from a disk and storing them at discontinuous host computer memory addresses (scatter) and writing data from discontinuous host computer memory addresses to consecutive logical block addresses on a disk (gather).**

Multiple block transfers were also now possible, allowing for a 20 to 30 percent increase in transfer rate over standard ATA performance (sustained rates in the 2 to 4 MB/s range). It was also implemented using a standard 40-pin ribbon cable to maintain backward compatibility. Cables had to be shorter than 18 inches and slew-rate control was required to control rise/fall times of signals. This level of performance helped satisfy the disk needs of the Intel Pentium class of machines.

With transfer rates so high, Enhanced IDE almost requires a very fast connection to the rest of the computer. It is almost always found interfacing to the rest of the machine via a 32-bit VESA or PCI local bus connection instead of the slower ISA bus. Older PC machines could utilize Enhanced IDE drives, but typically need their BIOS updated to handle some of the new features of the faster standard.

With these changes, IDE became the industry standard for mass storage interfaces in personal computers. It now offered performance on par with Fast SCSI-2. Users also demanded storage peripheral support beyond hard drives. An entire machine's I/O needs could now be handled by the IDE interface. Even Apple Computer switched to IDE drives in some of its products in 1994 with the advent of the Quadra 630 and PowerBook 150. IDE was fast and efficient for single-user computers. Best of all, it was cheap. Intel embedded Enhanced IDE in its PCI chipsets starting with its Triton chipset in 1995, virtually ensuring total acceptance in the PC industry.

The new standard also helped establish the PCMCIA-ATA standard, allowing flash memory cards and 1.8-inch disk drive PCMCIA drives to be accessed through normal ATA protocols. The latest version of this is known as the PC Card bus, a 32-bit, 33-MHz bus that marries PCI protocols to PCMCIA 3.0 electrical specifications.

**NOTE**

See “Enhanced IDE commands and opcodes” on page 327 for a list of the commands and operations codes included in EIDE.

Enhanced IDE still did not possess the capability to multitask multiple commands like SCSI, so it was not very effective with high-end multitasking operating system environments such as Novell Netware, Windows NT, or UNIX. It could not handle large numbers of simultaneous I/O transactions from multiple users or threads. There were no features similar to SCSI's disconnect/reconnect, tagged command queuing, or zero latency transfers. Enhanced IDE still could not connect a large number of devices, nor could it handle external devices.

## Fast ATA-2

---

A slightly improved version of Enhanced IDE or Fast ATA-2 was championed by Seagate and Quantum. Fast ATA-2 supports data transfer rates of 16.6 MB/s via Mode 4 PIO or Mode 2 DMA.

## ATAPI

---

Part of Enhanced IDE is the ATAPI specification (Advanced Technology Attachment Packet Interface). ATAPI enabled Enhanced IDE to support alternative storage devices, such as CD-ROM and tape drives, using the same physical and electrical interface as standard ATA hard disks. This specification defines a standardized method for interfacing non-hard disk devices utilizing the existing IDE computer interface and cabling. It is compatible with existing IDE hardware without changes or additional cables. An ATAPI device could co-exist with a hard disk on a single channel, although it would have to be a slave. The co-existence would also cause problems with 32-bit disk access in Windows for Workgroups 3.11.

ATAPI basically converted IDE from a computer register based architecture to one that was based on more modern packet-based transport.



See “ATAPI commands and opcodes” on page 327 for a table of the commands and opcodes that allowed implementation of ATAPI with EIDE.

The packets were logically formatted by deriving SCSI counterparts. So in the end, ATAPI basically runs SCSI-2 commands across IDE wires. The specification also includes a few commands specific to CD-ROM drives to select speed, play audio, or determine if the drive is ready.

The ATAPI standard was championed by many BIOS, CD-ROM, and drive vendors, and has been forwarded to the ANSI committee as SFF 8020 Rev 1.2. ATAPI has become so prevalent in 1995 that many CD-ROM drives are either available only in ATAPI or available in ATAPI first.

ATAPI requires BIOS extensions to send ATAPI Identify Device commands at startup to locate ATAPI devices. Transfers can occur in either PIO or DMA data transfer modes.

## Basic ATAPI operation

A typical ATAPI operation integrates SCSI-like protocols with ATA protocols.

1. Initialize task file and issue Packet Command.
2. Wait for INT, write SCSI command packet bytes using PIO.
3. Wait for INTRQ, read byte count from cylinder register, transfer bytes.
4. Wait for INTRQ, read status byte, DRQ set to 0 to end command.
5. If there is an error, read error register.

### NOTE



See “ATAPI registers” on page 328 for a table of descriptions and locations of ATAPI registers. Registers are temporary hardware storage areas that assist with the speedy transfer of arithmetic/logical operations within the CPU.

Although ATAPI allows SCSI packets to cross the bus, there is no support for SCSI's command queuing, multiple logical units, and disconnect/reconnect because there's no way to tell which device on the bus generated an interrupt.

## ATAPI CD-ROM Mode Pages

The SCSI-2 specification defines additional mode pages for use by CD-ROM devices. ATAPI adds to this list. CD-ROM Capabilities & Mechanical Status Page (2A<sub>H</sub>) contains information on the capabilities of the CD-ROM drive including:

- speed
- volume levels
- modes supported
- audio commands

## ATAPI tape Mode Pages

The SCSI-2 specification defines additional mode pages for use by tape devices. ATAPI adds to this list. Capabilities & Mechanical Status Page (2A<sub>H</sub>) contains information on the capabilities of the tape drive including:

- media support
- speed support
- transfer rates
- buffer sizes

Looking to improve upon the Enhanced IDE specification, PC vendors came together again in 1995 to propose a new and improved specification known as ATA-3 to support 32-bit operating systems such as Windows 95 and NT. Western Digital advocated a similar Enhanced IDE 95/96 specification. The ATA-3 architecture was designed to be flexible and modular, abstracting the physical interface from the transport mechanism and command sets. Many vendors would like ATA-3 to add support for multitasking operating systems, support that would involve major changes to system BIOS and disk drive firmware. These changes could limit its compatibility, however.

ATA-3 supports the following:

- drives as large as 137 GB
- data transfer rates of 16.6 MB/s via Mode 4 PIO or Mode 2 DMA
- devices such as disk, tape, CD-ROM, and CD-R

Future speeds above 16.6 MB/s will take place only with DMA. With transfer rates so fast, cable quality and length become ever more important. Cables must be shorter than Enhanced IDE's 18-inch cables. Cable insulation may need to be fabricated from Teflon®. The specification recommends source and receiver termination à la SCSI and rise-time control to help reduce ringing on the ATA bus at speeds of over 15 MB/s.



**Teflon insulation provides a more constant impedance than standard PVC. In really fast data transfers, that means better signal integrity, leading to fewer errors on a cable in which the conductors are placed very closely together.**

ATA-3 also adds a password security system to prevent unauthorized access and a self-monitoring, analysis and reporting technology (SMART). SMART helps protect user data from predictable degradation in drive performance.

ATA-3 is also designed to fix a major loophole in the ATA-2 specification that forces the speed of each device to run only as fast as the slowest device on that channel. If a CD-ROM was attached to a channel with a hard disk, the hard disk would be forced to run at CD-ROM speeds. This is because the host only sees one data port with a single set of transfer rate timings.

ATA-3 should be compatible with ATA-2 devices. It's likely to be finalized in 1997.

**NOTE**

See “Appendix A: Additional Information Sources” on page 288 for additional sources of information on ATA. See “ATA-3 Communications” on page 328 for the commands and operations codes added with ATA-3.



## Ultra-ATA

---

In 1996, Quantum announced the Ultra-ATA interface for desktop hard drives. It doubled ATA DMA data transfer rates to 33 MB/s while remaining backward compatible with previous ATA standards. This protocol was designed to use both edges of the data strobe signal to indicate data was available so clock speeds did not have to be altered. It also added Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) to verify data bytes.



**Cyclic Redundancy Check is a data error detection method that employs one or several extra digits or characters generated by a cyclic algorithm.**

Ultra-ATA was designed to help reduce I/O bandwidth limitations brought on by faster CPUs, such as the Pentium Pro and PowerPC 604e. It was also introduced to counter Ultra SCSI's 40 MB/s data transfer rate.

## Other Drive Interfaces

---

### FIPS-60

FIPS-60 (Federal Information Processing Standard 60) is also known as IBM's 370-OEM interface. It provided for very fast transfers up to 5 MB/s and cable lengths over 100 meters. It has been extensively used in IBM's System 370, 3080 and 3090 mainframe families.

### SMD-E and SMD-H

In the late 1980s, Storage Module Device (SMD-E and SMD-H) was, until SCSI's rise to prominence, the preferred interface for drives used with high-end server applications, such as minicomputers and workstations. It was developed in the mid-1980s by Control Data Corporation's Storage Module Drives branch. Its separate control and data cables complicate daisy-chaining, limiting the number of attachable devices to four. Unlike SCSI, SMD uses a separate controller board for the disk controller, which contains all the intelligence. The least expensive interface for eight-inch drives, SMD-E transfers data at about 3 MB/s. SMD drives can store more 2 GB, with a fast average seek time. Its large form factor (8- and 14-inch) and heavy power consumption, however, make it unpopular in the PC world.

### IPI

IPI (Intelligent Peripheral Interface) is the successor to the block multiplexer channel, or OEM channel, popularized by IBM in the 1960s. It offers parallel

16-bit data transfer, rather than OEM's eight-bit transfer, and can be split into two eight-bit buses to work like the OEM channel. IPI's dual ports allow from one to eight devices to be connected on one port, and from two to 16 in pairs using both ports. It is largely limited to the mainframe world, typically on 8- and 14-inch drives. It offers read-ahead capability and is extremely fast for large-data transfers. IPI has bus phases, but with the host as the sole bus master. Unlike SCSI, only one control signal can change during transition from one phase to another. IPI uses nine control lines and transfers data at 80 Mb/s along cables that can be as long as 125 meters. It is designed for hard disk drives only.

IPI-2 is capable of transfer rates of 36 to 72 Mb/s, and is best when transferring very large blocks of data. Costlier than SMD, ESDI, or SCSI, IPI-2 is a device-level interface, lacks intelligent features, and has no error correction. It offers fast seek times, a storage capacity of over 2 GB, and uses a single interface cable that can be daisy-chained easily. It has emerged as the performance interface of the 1990s for workstations.

IPI-3, also known as HPPI (High Performance Parallel Interface), is a parallel interface enabling 800 or 1,600 Mb/s data transfers over 32 or 64 twisted-pair copper wires, or on fiber-optic cable. Fiber cabling can be up to 10 kilometers in length (over six miles), while the other cabling can be up to 36 meters in length (around 118 feet). Developed out of work at the Los Alamos National Lab, it is intended for supercomputing applications. It allows multiple block transfers via a single command execution, but can transfer data in only one direction at a time.

---

## All About Expansion Buses

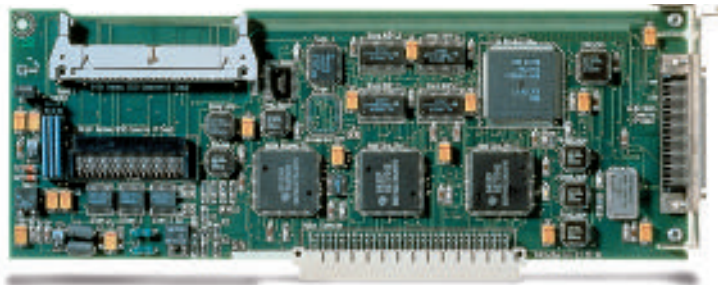
Buses are pathways between the CPU, memory, and I/O components in computers. Most computers do not come with adequate built-in interfaces for high-performance I/O. To run high-performance storage products on these computers, users must typically add expansion cards. Computer expansion cards (bus cards or host bus adapters) play an important role in the performance of storage solutions. The performance of these cards is directly related to the robustness of the particular expansion bus. In this section, we will examine some of the more important computer buses.

For buses to become industry standards they must include the following critical features:

- open standard, designed to be built upon rather than obsoleted
- expansion compatible
- high performance
- easy to use
- flexible
- inexpensive

### NuBus

---



*Figure 75. NuBus SCSI expansion card*

NuBus is the IEEE Standard for a simple, 32-bit, backplane bus (NuBus, IEEE Std P1196-R1990). It was introduced with the Macintosh II in 1987. It was

Apple's expansion bus of choice for about 8 years. MIT, Apple, and Texas Instruments helped create the bus. Apple's version deviated from the standard in that its cards were 4 × 13 inches instead of 11 × 14 inches. Apple also adjusted the specification by allowing non-master request interrupts and adding a power failure warning line.

NuBus featured the following:

- autoconfiguration without dip switches
- 32-bit architecture
- 10 MHz bus clock
- support for multiple processors
- fair arbitration
- bus mastering
- block mode transfer support



**A bus clock is an electronic circuit that regulates the synchronization of the flow of information through the bus. Bus mastering allows the bus card to pass data directly into memory, freeing the CPU to perform more useful functions. (The CPU would otherwise act as an intermediary between the card and memory.)**

Some cards were accessed through a software manager called the Slot Manager. Others could be activated transparently through the use of a configuration ROM. Each vendor of cards would register its board with Apple and in return receive a unique board ID number.



**For more information on the Slot Manager, see *Inside Macintosh Volume V*.**

Early Macintosh II systems had a problem with 32-bit addressing of NuBus memory space. This prevented cards with ROMs mapped into the top 16 MB of space from being seen. A motherboard swap fixed the problem.

NuBus promised maximum theoretical data transfer rates of 40 MB/s, but due to chip limitations, effective data transfer actually took place at much slower speeds. The original NuBus implementation did not support block mode data transfers, limiting performance to under 5 MB/s.



**NuBus block mode data transfers allow large blocks of data to be transferred quickly before releasing the bus. They require only one arbitration for the bus.**

The Quadra family added support for block mode data transfers from the card to the motherboard, effectively doubling data transfer rates. NuBus data transfers can be performed between the card and main memory or from NuBus card to NuBus card. Card to card transfers significantly benefited from block trans-

fers, allowing data to bypass main memory. Entries in the declaration ROM of each NuBus card told the system whether the card supported block transfers and the maximum number of transfers it supported.



As the Macintosh evolved, its data transfer rates escalated. Table 50 illustrates the performance gain ushered in with each new Macintosh model. Note, however, that the step between the Quadra 840AV and the PowerMacintosh family was, at best, a step sideways.

**Table 50.** *Evolution of Macintosh data transfer rates*

Macintosh Model	Maximum Data Transfer Rate
Macintosh II Family	3.7–4.5 MB/s
Quadra Family	5.5–9 MB/s
Quadra 840AV	15–18 MB/s
PowerMac Family	12–15 MB/s

Some machines had up to six NuBus Slots, others as few as one. The maximum per the specification was 14. A wide variety of cards are available with a NuBus interface:

- video cards
- digital video capture cards
- DSP accelerators
- SCSI accelerators
- serial port cards
- RAM cards

Some cards were so sophisticated that they drew more than the allotted 13.9 watts per card and pushed the computer's power supply to the limit.

NuBus-90, introduced with the Quadra family, doubled the bus clock to 20 MHz. Data transfer rates with NuBus-90 could reach about 80 MB/s burst, or about 20 MB/s sustained. This new protocol mainly sped up data transfers between two NuBus-90 compliant cards. It didn't speed up data transfers to the motherboard. NuBus-90 was not widely supported, and only a few NuBus-90 compliant cards were ever produced.

The Quadra 840AV with its MUNI NuBus chip had the fastest NuBus performance of all Macs.



**MUNI stands for Macintosh Universal NuBus Interface. This bus offered:**

- Support for the full range of NuBus master/slave transactions with single or block moves.
- Support for the faster data transfer rates to and from the CPU bus.
- Support for NuBus '90 data transfers between cards at a clock rate of 20 MHz.
- Provision of first-in, first-out (FIFO) data buffering between the CPU bus and accessory cards.

PowerMacs were more limited in NuBus performance due to the absence of the MOVE16 instruction on the PowerPC processor. A work-around known as the PBBlockMove Extension was created to maximize performance of NuBus cards in PowerMacs. NuBus cards only worked on the Macintosh, a small market, so they were typically priced much higher than PC type cards.

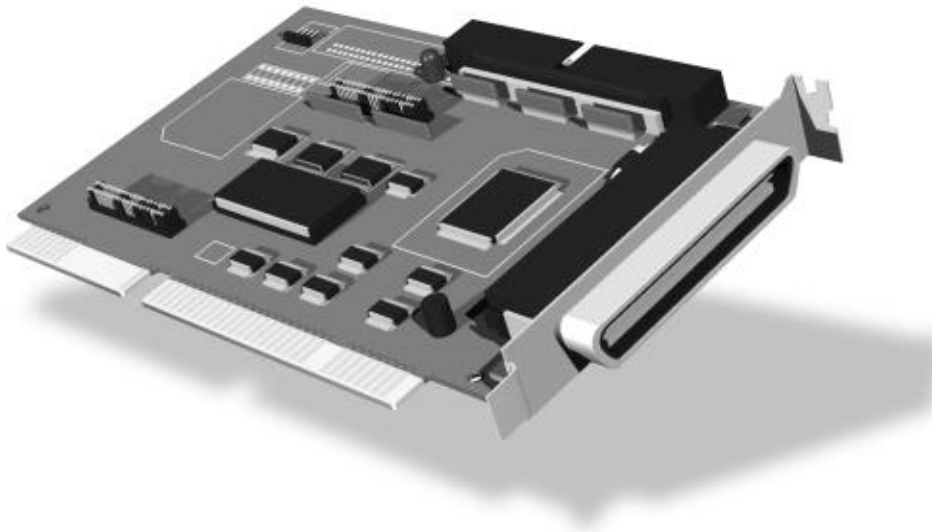


**The Move16 instruction is a 68000 instruction that moves 16 bytes of data very quickly.**

Some machines, such as the Centris 610, Centris 660AV, and PowerMac 6100, could accommodate only smaller, seven-inch NuBus cards.

## ISA

---



**Figure 76.** 16-bit ISA SCSI card

The ISA expansion bus has become one of the most popular computer buses. ISA stands for Industry Standard Architecture. It was introduced with the original IBM PC and IBM PC XT in the early 80s. Almost any type of card is available in the 62-pin ISA form factor. The original version ran at 4.77 MHz

and had 8-bits of data and 20-bits of addressing range. ISA supported both DMA and PIO.

A later version, introduced with the IBM AT, ran at 6 MHz and had a 16-bit data bus and 24-bits of addressing range. It added 36 contacts to the ISA connector. On the AT, bus mastering was supported for the first time.

The transfer rate it offered was 3 to 5 MB/s. Later IBM ATs ran the bus at 8 MHz. AT compatibles from third parties with processor speeds up to 16 MHz later ran the bus at up to 8.33 MHz, the ISA maximum. A couple of vendors even over-clocked the bus to 10 or 12.5 MHz, causing lots of card incompatibilities. Its biggest limitations included the need to use jumpers to configure cards and its use of 24 bits for addressing up to 16 MB of expansion space. With such low data transfer speeds, it made no sense to offer anything but 5 MB/s SCSI-1 or SCSI-2.

## MicroChannel

---

IBM designed its proprietary MicroChannel architecture (MCA) in 1980. It was developed along with the IBM PS/2 to improve upon and replace the aging ISA bus. IBM gave up on backward-compatibility with ISA in an effort to create a new bus designed for 32-bit processors and multitasking operating systems, such as OS/2.

MCA cards were available in 8-, 16-, and 32-bit data types, with the addressing range fixed at the full 32 bits. The main slot was contained in a 90-contact connector. Additional connects were used by 16- and 32-bit cards. These were located in front of the 8-bit connector. MCA provided for configuration without jumpers. It provided 8-, 16-, or 32-bit operation at speeds up to 10 MHz, capable of transferring 20 MB/s. Real data rates ranged in more like the 8 to 10 MB/s range. Later versions included a streaming data procedure feature that boosted data transfer rates up to 80 MB/s with 64-bit data procedures.

MicroChannel fully supports DMA and bus mastering. In fact, several CPU accelerators have been designed this way. However, this bus proved to be unpopular because it was found only on IBM machines and a few clones. Limited distribution was due to high licensing costs.

This bus continues on in IBM's RS/6000 workstation line powered by POWER and PowerPC processors.

## EISA

---

EISA stands for Enhanced Industry Standard Architecture. It was designed to supersede the ISA bus, yet retain full compatibility with ISA. PC-compatible vendors developed EISA as an answer to IBM's MicroChannel bus. EISA ran at the ISA standard 8.33 MHz clock rate and allowed support for bus masters. EISA extended ISA to 32-bit operation and sped burst data transfer rates up to 33 MB/s (these would be DMA burst type C transfers). Its sustained rate was closer to 8 MB/s.

EISA allowed for automatic adapter configuration without DIP switches. Each adapter came with a .cfg file. The EISA Configuration Utility used this to automatically configure the card so that it did not conflict with other cards.

EISA was only popular in the Intel-based server arena. This was due to high costs. It used a high-density 188-pin edge connector that was similar in size to ISA. EISA allowed old ISA cards to plug and run. Later versions of EISA allowed for enhanced master burst (EMB) data transfers of up to 66 or 133 MB/s by using both edges of clock signals to issue data transfers.

## VESA Local Bus (VLB)

---

The ISA bus became a serious limitation with the advent of Windows, multimedia, and other technologies that required megabytes of information per second. The need for high-volume, high-performance data transfer was particularly apparent with graphical software applications. VLB, the Video Electronic Standards Association (VESA) Local Bus, was designed to interface the Intel 80486 high speed processor bus to a local high-speed expansion bus.

It ran at the processor speed and provided for high-speed, 32-bit data transfers. Version 1.0 ran at either 40 or 66 MHz. Version 2.0 ran at 50 MHz. Version 1.0 provided for data transfers up to 133 MB/s, while 2.0 provided for up to 160 MB/s. Version 2.0 supported write-back caching and 64-bit addressing, which allowed for data transfer rates up to 267 MB/s.



**Write-back caching keeps track of what information in the cache has been modified by the microprocessor. This is done by marking modified information with a “dirty bit.” When displaced from the cache, all the information with dirty bits is written to primary memory. It's likely that the term “dirty bit” was coined to denote a tag that marked information that needed to be “cleaned out” (written) to the disk or to memory.**

VESA cards were 16-bit ISA cards with an additional connector to form a 124-pin VESA standard edge connector. Up to three cards were supported in each system. DMA was not supported as VLB allowed for direct transfers into main memory. The main problem with this bus is that it was X86 CPU specific and



operated at the CPU's speed, making it impractical for universal applications. VLB initially was very popular with the advent of the 80486 processor. When PCI shipped with Pentium processors, VLB slowly died off.

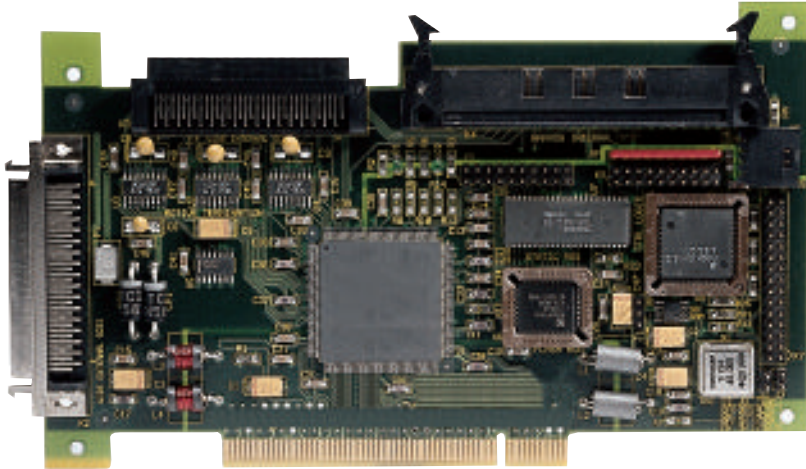
**NOTE**



For sources of more information on VESA Local Bus, see “Appendix A: Additional Information Sources” on page 288.

## PCI

---



*Figure 77. PCI SCSI card*

PCI (Peripheral Component Interconnect) is a system standard that defines a high performance interconnection method between plug-in expansion cards, integrated I/O controller chips, and a computer's main processing and memory systems. It was originally designed by Intel in the early 1990s as an alternative to other proposed peripheral expansion buses.



PCI was patented by Intel, but they agreed to license it openly and make it royalty-free.

PCI is now governed by a consortium of industry partners known as the PCI Special Interest Group (PCI SIG). This body of computer systems manufacturers, peripheral vendors, component suppliers, and software companies is organized for the following purposes:

- to insure compatibility and interoperability across the PCI standard
- to continue to refine the specification to increase throughput

The PCI SIG runs PCI-compliance test workshops every quarter, ensuring that all cards operate in all machines.



**Figure 78.** Certified PCI local bus trademark

The first release of the specification—the PCI Local Bus Specification—became available in June 1992. A second release (2.0) was published in April 1993. Version 2.1 was published in 1995 and offered the following:

- 66 MHz clock speeds
- 264 MB/s data transfer rates
- card bus support
- new latency rules to improve performance
- user-definable configuration mechanism

Other PCI-related specifications soon followed:

- PCI to PCI Bridge
- PCI BIOS
- PCI Multimedia Design Suite
- PCI Mobile Design Guide

PCI was initially difficult to implement because it required special chips with output buffer drivers that had both minimum and maximum AC currents (as opposed to traditional DC current). It also allowed only one load per bus slot, making ASICs the only feasible interface to the bus. A computer typically would have only two or three PCI slots. Adding more would require expensive PCI bridge chips or additional PCI peer bus chips that join separate PCI buses together logically.



**ASIC stands for application-specific integrated circuit. ASICs are computer chips developed for specific functions. These are used in a wide-range of devices, such as video machines, microwave ovens, and security alarms.**

The PCI family includes multifunction chips that provide two distinct features, Ethernet and SCSI, on a single chip.

## PCI features

PCI is loaded with high-performance features including:

- 32-bit bandwidth with a compatible 64-bit and/or 66 MHz upgrade path
- electrical signals of 5 volts (3.3 volts later)
- 33 MHz bus clock rate, compared to 10 MHz for Apple's fastest NuBus
- up to 132 MB/s burst transfer rate over the 32-bit bus



**Sustained rates are much lower.**

- full PCI bus master and slave support
- support for different card sizes  
Supports either a 6.875-inch (known as Short Card form factor) or a 12.283-inch (known as Standard Card form factor) card size.
- support for Open Firmware Boot Specification (IEEE1275-1994) for booting cards in an OS-independent environment
- PCI Local Bus Specification, Revision 2.1 (1995)
- operation independent of any particular microprocessor design
- ISA style mechanical bracket
- edge card connection into the motherboard
- true, Macintosh plug-and-play through recommended use of plug-in card expansion ROM
- Macintosh PCI Performance

A PCI burst transfer is defined as a single PCI bus transaction with a single address phase followed by two or more data phases. The PCI master arbitrates for ownership of the bus, then issues a start address and transaction type during the address phase. The target device latches this start address into its address counter and increments the address from data phase to data phase.

On PCI, the fastest performance is achieved with data transfer commands that transact aligned data to and from cacheable memory regions in data chunks the size of CPU cache lines.

### NOTE



See “PCI Communications” on page 329 for a table that lists and describes these commands.

Although PCI promised 132 MB/s data transfer rates, initial implementations on chips such as the Intel Mercury and Neptune were limited to much less. Later implementations, such as the Intel Triton and Orion, handled the faster

70 MB/s PCI streaming bursts (Table 51). Limitations were due mainly to PCI controller chips. Early chips could not handle PCI's high-performance bursts.

**Table 51.** *Maximum data transfer rates of Intel chipsets*

Intel PCI Chipset	Maximum Data Transfer Rate
Mercury, Saturn	30 MB/s
Neptune	40 MB/s
Triton	70 MB/s
Orion, Triton II, Natoma	70+ MB/s

Some chips did not support multiple-byte data transfers or did not optimally support the cache line size or invalidation technique of the CPU. Memory bandwidth limitations also hampered PCI performance. Data from a card needs to be put into memory, and if the memory subsystem speed is slow, the data transfer rate will be limited.

Read and write performance to and from the PCI bus were often different. PCI performance was also hampered by the fact that buses were clocked at rates slower than the 33 MHz standard. It was easier to clock the PCI bus as a divisor of the CPU's system bus.

- Pentium systems that ran at 75 MHz had system buses running at 50 MHz and PCI buses clocked at half that rate (25 MHz).
- Pentium systems that ran at 60, 90, 120, 150, or 180 MHz had system buses running at 60 MHz and PCI buses clocked at half that rate (30 MHz).
- Pentium systems that ran at 66, 100, 133, 166, or 200 MHz had system buses running at 66 MHz and PCI buses clocked at half that rate (33 MHz).

PCI has become the bus of choice on most PCs and most recently on the Apple Macintosh. Digital Equipment's Alpha line of workstations has also adopted PCI. Even their CPU has an on-board PCI interface, the first implementation of 64-bit PCI found in this line.

## Macintosh PCI

1995 will be remembered as the “Year of Confusion” for many people: Macintosh users, resellers, and even industry insiders. With the introduction of Apple’s Power Macintosh with PCI family and the dawning of the Mac™ OS clones—both PCI and NuBus—the Macintosh market offers consumers such a wide array of choices that making sure your purchase delivers real value requires significant contemplation and research.

In high-end markets where Apple has the leading position—digital video, color publishing, digital pre-press and multimedia—the requirements for mass storage in performance, capacity, and cost are dramatically influenced by the implementation of PCI on the Power Macintosh.

Apple’s SCSI interface by itself yields very low performance for the Macintosh’s high-end markets. As with the NuBus machines of the past, it will be the third-party vendors who provide high-performance, Fast and Wide SCSI-2 cards and disk arrays to meet the speed and capacity needs of digital video, color publishing, digital pre-press, multimedia, and networking. These cards and arrays allow users to realize the full potential of their solutions—something Apple’s on-board SCSI interface prohibits.



**Higher-performing storage interfaces, such as Fast-20 (also known as Ultra SCSI), Fibre Channel, and SSA, will offer bandwidths with up to 100 MB/s sustained data transfer rates—over 10 times the performance of Apple’s built in SCSI interface.**

Only with PCI on the Power Macintosh, and the performance gain PCI provides, will users be able to maximize the benefits of the current high-performance SCSI interface—Fast and Wide SCSI-2—and realize the benefits of the new coming technologies for storage.

To sort out PCI’s impact on mass storage, we’ll explore the following topics:

- What is PCI and why did Apple adopt it?
- What is the impact of PCI on Power Macintosh and how will you benefit?
- What are the implications for performance on the Power Macintosh?
- What are the issues of compatibility for hardware and software?
- How will the entrance of many “Mac-clone” companies affect you?



**This section was written under the assumption that you are a reasonably knowledgeable user of the Macintosh or Power Macintosh platform.**

Apple based its Power Macintosh with PCI family on Version 2.0 of the PCI specification, like the majority of companies that have implemented the Intel PC platform. The entire Power Macintosh with PCI family—the 7200, 7500, 8500, and 9500—fully conforms to this industry standard.

The second generation of Power Macintosh computers containing PowerPC microprocessors uses PCI buses to communicate with both internal I/O chips and plug-in expansion cards. Both 601- and 604-based Power Macintosh systems utilize the PCI bus architecture.

Four key reasons went into Apple's decision to replace its aging NuBus architecture with PCI:

1. Apple wants to offer a widely-adopted industry standard so that it can market its computers in a way that promotes commonality with other platforms while allowing Apple to market the differentiated benefits of the Macintosh experience.
2. Since PCI is an industry standard, Apple hopes to attract a more widely varied pool of cards for different solutions.
3. Apple hopes the cost of PCI products will be lower than comparable cards on the NuBus as more developers offer their products for the Power Macintosh with PCI family.
4. The addition of PCI gives the Power Macintosh platform a tremendous boost in performance over the NuBus. This will eventually open up additional markets to Apple for applications that need the added performance that only PCI can deliver.

In the past, Apple has used NuBus as its expansion bus for both Macintosh and Power Macintosh machines. With the advent of the Power Macintosh with PCI, Apple is moving from a semi-proprietary expansion bus (the NuBus) to one with much greater industry acceptance (PCI). Apple can assure its compatibility with other computer manufacturers through its compliance with the PCI standard. Apple plans to differentiate its robust architecture—with its unmatched application richness—from Intel Pentiums with PCI running Windows 3.1 or Windows 95.

PCI provides a needed standard in the computer industry. Because the PCI bus uses the same architecture and protocols to communicate with I/O chips and expansion cards, it reduces the cost and complexity of computer hardware. It allows Apple, and other systems manufacturers, to provide high-speed expandability at minimum cost.

The first implementation of PCI on the Power Macintosh with PCI utilized the Apple-designed BANDIT chip. Its performance varied depending on the PCI transaction.



**Table 52 and Table 53 illustrate that data transfers performed at the cache line size of 32-bytes result in the highest performance.**

**Table 52. Macintosh PowerPC to PCI data transfer rate**

Transaction	Size (bytes)	PCI Performance	Parallel Processing Chip Instruction
Write to PCI	4	20 MB/s	Integer Store
	8	40 MB/s	FP Store
	32	85 MB/s	PCI Copyback
Read from PCI	4	11 MB/s	Integer Store
	8	20 MB/s	FP Store
	32	40 MB/s	PCI Copyback

**Table 53. Macintosh PCI master to memory data transfer rate**

Transaction	Size (bytes)	PCI Performance	PCI Command
Write to Memory	4	20 MB/s	Mem Write
	8	35 MB/s	Mem Write
	32	80 MB/s	Mem Write & Inv
Read from Memory	4	10 MB/s	Mem Read
	8	15 MB/s	Mem Read
	32	30 MB/s	Mem Read Line/M

## Open Firmware

You may have heard the term “Open Firmware” used in reference to Apple’s PCI implementation (it is also sometimes called “Open Boot”). It refers to PCI’s independence from any particular operating system.



**Open Firmware was originally developed as Open Boot by Sun Microsystems. It debuted in 1988 with the original Sun SparcStation workstation. It provides a way of booting a computer system that is independent of both operating system and processor. Its native language is interpreted by**

the computer and is based on the programming language Forth. Open Firmware drivers are written in a Forth variant known as FCode.

During the Open Firmware process, startup firmware in ROM:

1. Searches the PCI buses and generates a data structure that lists all available peripheral devices.  
This data structure also stores the peripheral support software, such as a device driver, provided by each PCI expansion card.
2. Finds an operating system (for example, Mac OS System 7.5.5 on the Power Macintosh with PCI) in ROM or on a mass storage device.
3. Loads it and starts it running.

The operating system does not need to be Mac OS, though with the Power Macintosh it is. Hence, it is possible for PCI-compatible Power Macintosh computers to operate PCI peripheral devices using either Macintosh or third-party system software. In short, all Mac OS-compatible computers (Mac clones) can be used with the PCI bus.



**This is comparable to what SuperMac and Power Computing have done with NuBus.**

Any operating system that is compatible with the Power PC chip used in the Power Macintosh will be compatible with the Power Macintosh with PCI.

Open Boot provides Apple's PCI bus with:

- auto-configuration of devices on startup
- flexibility in system software
- wide industry acceptance

Open Boot also increases the flexibility of PCI on PCs using Intel chips by not requiring use of the system BIOS. This differs from previous expansion buses used in the Intel world—ISA, EISA, MCA, and VLB—where BIOS code is necessary to successfully utilize cards in the bus.



**This offers no advantage to the easy-to-use architecture of the Power Macintosh, and it does not exempt the card from needing a Power Macintosh-specific device driver to be fully functional.**

The establishment of the PCI bus standard offers real benefits to the Power Macintosh and to users at large:

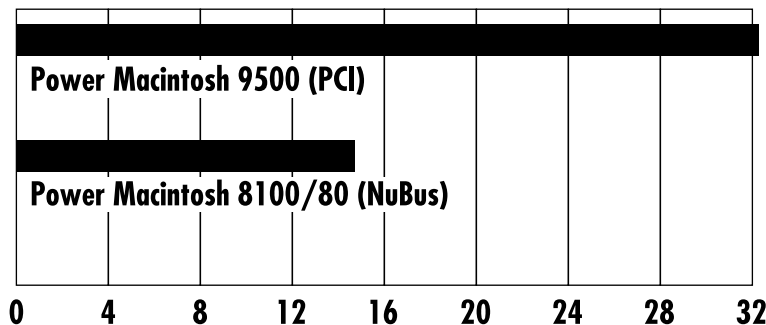
- additional ease-of-use
- future expansion
- overall lower cost



These benefits allow for incredible performance gains over NuBus. They make the Power Macintosh with PCI platform the solution for the 90s.

The performance gain PCI offers users on all Power Macintosh with PCI platforms is the most significant advantage over NuBus-based machines and PCI machines running Windows or Windows 95. PCI delivers unmatched performance gains for digital video, color publishing, and multimedia environments, particularly when coupled with the power of the PowerPC 604 chip (used in the Power Macintosh 9500 and 8500), increased native System software, and 604-optimized application packages.

Mass storage is one of the key beneficiaries of the increased bandwidth and throughput of PCI. A dramatic illustration of this improvement in performance is the comparison of a Fast and Wide SCSI-2 disk array on the Power Macintosh 9500 with the fastest NuBus machines available (Figure 79).



*Figure 79. PCI and NuBus transfer rates using Benchtest*



**NOTE** In Figure 79, the bars indicate sustained data transfer rates in MB/s. Two bus cards were used. All testing was done with the latest System software for each platform, 5 MB transfer size and FWB's Hard Disk ToolKit™ Benchtest 1.7.5. Longer bars indicate faster performance.

As Figure 79 illustrates, a fast and wide array on the Power Macintosh 9500 achieves a sustained data transfer rate of over 33 MB/s. This is more than twice the performance of the fastest NuBus Power Macintosh—the 8100/80—and almost twice the performance of Apple's fastest NuBus Macintosh, the Quadra 840AV.



**The 840AV is the fastest of all NuBus machines, Macintosh or Power Macintosh.**

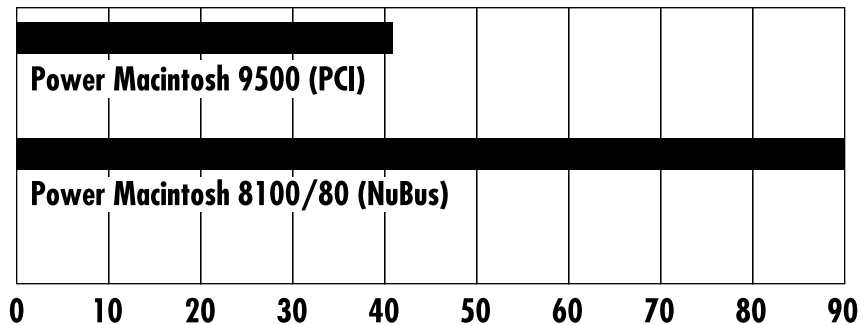
With new higher-performing storage architectures—which started appearing in the last part of 1995 and continued to develop and debut throughout 1996—

the increased power they offer will be realized only on Power Macintosh with PCI. NuBus machines cannot match the performance of these interfaces.

While artificial benchmarks are useful, Macintosh users want to know:

- “What can this really do for me?”
- “How will this increase my real productivity?”

Results for real-world applications, such as Adobe PhotoShop™, impressively demonstrate that PCI performance gains are not confined to artificial benchmarks.



**Figure 80.** PCI and NuBus transfer rates using Adobe Photoshop™



Figure 80 illustrates transfer rates achieved while using Adobe Photoshop™ to open a 100 MB TIFF. All testing was done with the latest System software and Photoshop 3.04; 32 MB of RAM was allocated to Photoshop; primary and secondary scratch disk preferences in Photoshop were set to disk array; and Photoshop and the TIFF file were launched from disk array. Shorter bars indicate faster performance.

PCI's performance gain extends to real-world applications for real-world uses. While Figure 80 focuses on color publishing, the benefit of PCI on the Power Macintosh extends to any application and/or hardware peripheral that involves significant PCI bus activity. For example, digital video card vendors were limited by the throughput of NuBus to video compression of 4:1. With PCI, these same vendors feel they can deliver 2:1 compression, and perhaps uncompressed video—virtually impossible on NuBus. Similar performance enhancements will be seen by users of multimedia, pre-press, and network applications. Overall, the Power Macintosh with PCI family sets new standards for price/performance value in the desktop computer arena.

While PCI is an industry standard, Power Macintosh users should not be lulled into the belief that all products designed to work on PCI for the Intel

platform will work in the Power Macintosh. PCI compliance is only the first step to successful integration of a third-party card with Power Macintosh.

For example, a card that is fully PCI compliant but does not support Open Boot may work fine on a Pentium with PCI, but will not work on a Power Macintosh. Even if a card fully supports Open Boot, it still requires a Macintosh device driver. In the case of storage, a PCI card must have a Macintosh disk device driver in order to operate properly for mass storage applications. Additionally, that device driver must be compliant with SCSI Manager 4.3.



**The SCSI Manager is that part of the Apple System software that controls the interaction of SCSI peripherals and the Mac OS.**

Apple has instituted a compatibility program to let customers know which products meet the minimum level of Power Macintosh with PCI compatibility.

- This program **DOES NOT** guarantee you the fastest, best engineered, or most suitable product for your application.
- However, it **DOES** indicate that the product will work in the Power Macintosh with PCI family.

Apple requires vendors who participate in the program to submit cards to Apple for compatibility testing. If the cards are deemed compatible, the vendor is allowed to use the “Designed for Macintosh with PCI” logo in its marketing materials and advertising (Figure 81).



**Figure 81.** *Apple's certified PCI trademark*



**A PCI compatibility rating from Apple indicates compatibility only. Apple does not check for optimal performance, good Macintosh technical support, or synergy with Macintosh applications.**

For the consumer, the Apple PCI logo is a valuable signal that the product meets the minimum level of Power Macintosh with PCI compatibility and is worth considering.

PCI cards introduced a new method of installation. In the NuBus era, a Euro-card connector on the bottom edge of the card tightly mated to another connector on the motherboard. For Power Macintosh with PCI, this has been

replaced with the use of edge connectors on the card that install into a slot on the motherboard. Although this is a PCI industry standard, it is, unfortunately, too easy for cards to seat incorrectly in the motherboard slot. To address this problem, Apple created a system that keeps a card in its slot by firmly locking the ISA-style fence into the machine's backplane plastic. Additionally, all the Power Macs with PCI have a locking mechanism that gently secures the cards from the top. Very few PCI implementations feature these useful innovations.

The entrance of many PC companies into the Macintosh market through PCI will create additional confusion for users already wary of the many choices available. These companies are unproven entities on the Macintosh platform, though several have established leadership positions on Intel platforms. Some of these companies are serious about Macintosh and want to offer excellent products. Others have no idea what Macintosh users expect or want in their products and just see the advent of Power Macintosh with PCI as a means to enter a new market with the same expansion bus interface. Only time will tell which PC companies can successfully deliver "real" Macintosh products on the Power Macintosh with PCI platform.

Probably the most important question you need to ask yourself is "What do I expect from a company whose products are to be used in my Power Macintosh with PCI?" Once you answer this, you can determine if a PC company has products that meet your expectations. For instance, what users expect to see in any Macintosh product is thorough documentation and excellent technical support. Thorough documentation is often only included in the best products on the PC side, and users have learned not always to expect high-quality technical support.

Other key questions users should ask about PC companies selling Power Macintosh PCI solutions include the following:

- What is the true level of Macintosh compliance I will receive?
- What help will I get in the integration of their PCI solution with my Macintosh applications and the Mac OS?
- How well will they engineer their products to work cooperatively with other Macintosh PCI cards and software products?

Many PC companies will be entering the Macintosh market via PCI. What remains to be seen is whether they can meet the higher expectations that Macintosh users have of technical support, documentation, integration, OS compliance, and synergy with complementary hardware and software.

Some of the PC companies will learn the Macintosh way and offer customers robust, quality PCI solutions. Others will just throw their current PC products at the Macintosh. If you are shopping for these products, you will need to

be just as aware and selective as you have been in the NuBus era and not be swayed by wild claims of incredible performance at incredibly low prices.

PCI for Power Macintosh brings to the Macintosh platform the real power needed for today's demanding applications. Coupled with the next generation of PowerPC chips and System software, PCI provides high-end users the performance they demand to continue to push the envelope.

**NOTE**



**For sources of more information on PCI, see “Appendix A: Additional Information Sources” on page 288.**

## PCI Mezzanine Specification

---

The PC Industrial Computer Manufacturers Group (PICMG) was established in 1994 to develop a standard for a low-end, passive-backplane CPU board that could incorporate PCI.



**A passive backplane is a board that exists merely to pass signals; no processing takes place.**

This group created the PCI Mezzanine card (PMC). The standard specifies the physical implementation of PCI as a mezzanine card. These cards generally fit on top of the industrial CPU board. PMC allows general purpose CPU boards to be customized for specific applications. These cards adhere to PCI 2.0 specifications. Standardization creates an industry of add-on boards that can leverage low-cost chips used for PCs.

## PCMCIA

---

PCMCIA stands for Personal Computer Memory Card International Association. This group was founded in 1989 and consists of about 400 members from the computer industry. This popular specification was created to standardize expansion cards for portable computers. The cards are credit card sized, 85 × 54 mm modules.

The original 1.0 specification, released in 1990, was targeted at memory cards. A later 2.0 specification in 1991 added support for I/O cards and introduced three thicknesses of cards:

- Type I cards are 3.3 mm thick.
- Type II are 5 mm thick.
- Type III are 10.5 mm thick.

PCMCIA release 2.01 allows for ATA storage cards (Flash ATA and ATA hard drives), I/O cards (such as fax, ethernet and SCSI), and memory cards (RAM, ROM, flash). This specification basically mapped the 40-pin IDE interface to the 68-pin PCMCIA connector. This is a 5 V interface that supports 16-bit, 8 MHz operation through its 68-pins.

PCMCIA defines a software layer known as card and socket services. This software handles the insertion and removal of PCMCIA cards. It sets up the PCMCIA bus chip on the computer and configures the PCMCIA card to manage its I/O ports and interrupt usage. The biggest challenge with PCMCIA has been software compatibility. This has caused some cards to be incompatible with certain computers. Hot-swapping of cards has also been problematic. Cards should be removable and insertable on the fly at any time.

The latest version of PCMCIA is known as the CardBus or PC Card 94 bus. It specifies a new mode that allows PCI devices to be packaged like PCMCIA cards and be plugged into similar sockets. It is a 32-bit, 33-MHz bus, marrying PCI protocols to PCMCIA 3.0 electrical specifications. This supports 3 V operation, bus mastering, DMA, and both 20- and 33-MHz operation. CardBus utilizes the same Card Information Structure (CIS) as PCMCIA cards. For the first time, cards such as video capture, 100 Mb Ethernet, and Ultra SCSI could be created.



**For more information on PCMCIA, see “Appendix A: Additional Information Sources” on page 288.**

---

## Storage Software

Many currently available utility software packages are designed to maximize the usefulness and performance of storage peripherals. Chapter 9 provides an overview of some of these products and gives some reasons why you might find them useful.

### Formatter Software

---



*Figure 82. FWB's Hard Disk ToolKit™*

Formatter software is utility software designed to set up hard disks for use on a computer system. These utilities can be simple or complex.

The Macintosh requires formatter software to format, partition, and install a SCSI driver on disks before they can be used by the operating system. There are several makers of formatter software, including Apple and FWB.

Apple's formatter software is called Drive Setup. It's a no-frills formatter that works on both IDE and SCSI drives. However, it works only on Apple hard drives. Other formatters, such as FWB's Hard Disk ToolKit, offer all the basics of Apple's software, work on virtually every SCSI hard drive, and contain

advanced features, such as password protection, encryption, Device Copy, SCSI Configure, and extensive drive diagnostics.

Formatter software adds support for removable-media drives to the Macintosh operating system in the form of a System Extension. The Extension loads a driver into memory that watches and provides for media insertion and removal.

PCs typically utilize formatter software bundled with the operating system. IDE drives on PCs do not need to be formatted. They are partitioned by operating system utilities such as DOS's FDISK or Windows NT's Disk Administrator. SCSI drives are usually formatted by software included with the SCSI host adapter. There are several formatter programs that provide additional diagnostics and compatibility for IDE and SCSI drives. Some also provide support for multiple operating systems on a single drive.

## RAID Software

---



**Figure 83.** FWB's RAID ToolKit™

RAID software is used to create a software-based array out of several drives. Some RAID levels increase the performance of drives, others provide fault tolerance. This software generally runs on top of any industry-standard host adapter.



**An array is a collection of drives, connected and configured so as to act and appear as one drive. Software-based arrays are created with installed software packages. Hardware-based arrays are created through logic built into a controller chip.**



Disk striping or RAID 0 is very popular on the Macintosh. Users that require the utmost in throughput use software such as FWB's RAID ToolKit to stripe multiple drives together into a high performance disk array. Apple includes with its Workgroup Servers a utility called AppleRAID that creates a more limited RAID set.

**NOTE**



To learn more about RAID, see Chapter 3, "RAID Technology."

Disk striping is slowly gaining popularity on PCs. FWB's RAID ToolKit for Windows provides striping for Windows for Workgroups 3.11 and Windows 95. Windows NT has built-in RAID 0 striping. Windows NT Advanced Server has built-in RAID 5 support.

## CD-ROM Software

---



**Figure 84.** FWB's CD-ROM Toolkit™

CD-ROM drivers are software routines that enable the operation of a CD-ROM drive connected to a computer. They also map industry-standard CD formats to native operating system structures, making it possible to mount a variety of disc formats on a wide range of operating systems.

On the Macintosh, there are several CD-ROM driver packages. Apple includes CD-ROM drivers for its CD-ROM drives. As with its hard disk drivers, Apple's CD-ROM drivers only work on Apple drives. Third-party products, such as FWB's CD-ROM Toolkit™, provide drivers and acceleration for a wide variety of CD-ROM drives on the Macintosh. Part of Apple's system software

includes translators for the various CD-ROM formats that map them to the Macintosh operating system.

Windows 95 includes integral support and caching for most SCSI and IDE CD-ROM drives, so third-party drivers are not needed. Translators for several CD-ROM formats are also included.

## Tape Backup Software

---

Tape Backup software is used to perform backups and restores to tape or DAT drives. These drives are known as sequential access devices because the stored data can be accessed only in a linear sequence—the tape has to wind or unwind and pass across the stationary tape head to position data for reading or the tape for writing. Most sequential access devices do not show up as mounted volumes on the Desktop and require tape backup software to access the media. Advanced backup packages allow for network backups to servers through the use of backup agents.

The Macintosh operating system does not have any built in support for tape backup. It relies on third-party tape backup software to operate tape drives.

Windows 95 includes integral tape backup software for some tape backup drives. The selection of functions is limited as is the support list. Only a few popular IDE and SCSI tape drives are supported. There is no support for 8 mm, DAT or Travan. Other tape backup software can be used through the ASPI manager interface.

## Compression Software

---

Compression software is used to extend the capacity of drives. Compression uses algorithms that reduce the amount of storage needed to store a given stream of data. These algorithms exploit redundancy and disk allocation units. Compression software buys extra space, but at the price of performance. Data must be compressed before it is written and uncompressed before it is read. Compression complicates the recovery of data from a malfunctioning drive. Compression will usually buy you from 20 to 40 percent more space, not the 100 percent increase some programs claim.

There is no compression built into the Macintosh System 7.5 operating system. However third-party utilities are available for adding compression.

Windows 95 includes support for compression of disk drives. The Windows 95 Plus Pak adds a 32-bit version of the compression program.



**Figure 85.** FWB's SpaceMaker Toolkit™

Hierarchical Storage Management (HSM) software automates the process of migrating files to less expensive storage. It is designed to manage mass storage devices and repositories.

The growth of information stored on-line over the last 10 years is unprecedented. More users are accessing complex applications, creating large data files, and downloading more information than ever before. Over the next five years, both users and administrators will struggle with straining storage capacities.

You can add more disk space and archive unused files, but the costs associated with these strategies can be staggering. Within an enterprise, installation and maintenance of a single disk drive costs four to five times the price of the drive. Archiving alone burdens users and administrators alike with productivity losses.

This has created the need for real storage management tools. With HSM, as a disk becomes full or as files age, they can be moved to optical or tape media to create free space on primary storage. HSM works continuously and is completely transparent to users. HSM delivers significant cost and time savings while boosting data access with near limitless storage.

## Managing data storage: the hidden costs

Most computer users don't spend much time thinking about data storage management. Nevertheless, it is a significant cost center for computer-integrated businesses. Managing two gigabytes of data over a one-year period costs the average business about \$7,000. This is the time spent administering and servicing the device, restoring or recovering lost data, and all the other activities that go into maintaining an MIS—it does not include the cost of the disk drive. Data management can also be quite expensive for home users. The objective of HSM is to save money by lowering storage hardware and support costs.

There are currently three primary techniques for addressing soaring storage requirements (Table 54).

**Table 54.** *Three common techniques for storage management*

Solution	Comments
Buy more hard drive storage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• A 1 GB disk drive can cost from \$.25 per MB to \$2 per MB for RAID storage.</li><li>• System down-time, parts, and labor can double the cost of adding a disk drive.</li><li>• Increasing capacity increases backup, restore, troubleshooting, repair, and administration costs.</li></ul>
Manually delete files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Manually grooming a disk can cost \$10-\$100 per hour for high paid end-users.</li><li>• Many users will delete important data or application files.</li><li>• It's inefficient.</li></ul>
Archive files off-line	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Like manual deletion, manual archiving is costly to perform.</li><li>• Finding and restoring archived data is labor intensive and can become a tremendous burden as archived data grows.</li></ul>

Users often choose to add disk drives to address capacity problems. But, even as storage prices fall, the exponential growth in the number and size of application, image, and data files continues to outpace cost-effective addition of storage capacity. Much of this problem could be eliminated if “inactive” data could be stored elsewhere but still be accessible. A large portion of information stored on a typical server could be moved to secondary storage. HSM software manages this process intelligently.

### On-line, off-line, and near-line storage

Storage for applications and data can be broken down into three categories:

- on-line
- off-line
- near-line

Table 55 explores these storage options.

**Table 55.** *On-line, off-line, and near-line storage*

Application	Description
On-line <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• RAM ... \$15–\$50 MB</li><li>• Array ... \$2–\$5 MB</li><li>• Disk ... \$.50 MB</li></ul>	On-line storage provides virtually immediate access to your needed applications and data. Hard disks and system memory are the most common types of on-line storage.
Off-line <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Tape ... \$.10–\$.50 MB</li><li>• CD-ROM ... \$.01–\$.15 MB</li></ul>	Backup tapes are a good example of Off-line storage. This data cannot be accessed without a user physically placing the media in the computer or drive.
Near-line <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Optical Cartridge ... \$.40–\$1 MB</li><li>• Optical Jukebox ... \$.20–\$2 MB</li></ul>	Near-line storage manages the middle ground: faster than off-line but more economical than on-line. The category comprises technologies such as magneto-optical disks and network servers.

## Archiving, backup, and HSM

There is significant confusion over the role of Archiving and Backup in an HSM system. These activities are an essential part of any storage management program and should be performed hand-in-hand with HSM.

### Archiving

Archiving is the transfer of infrequently used data files from primary storage to less expensive media—usually tape or removable disks of some sort. The files are preserved for future use, but are essentially off-line. The expensive primary storage space made available by the removal of the files can then be used for more pressing matters.

Judicious archiving can save a considerable amount of money by reducing the requirements for hard-disk capacity. On the Macintosh, archiving can be done manually by dragging files to secondary storage and erasing files in the Finder. However, for many users it will be more efficient to partially automate the process with archival software.

While archiving is good at minimizing the hardware costs of data storage, it is of no help in the case of drive failures, viruses, theft, or such disasters as fire, flood, and earthquake. This is because archiving alone only maintains a single copy of any data file.

## Backup

Backup is a process that creates duplicate copies of data files. If the original files are lost or damaged in some way, they can be restored from the duplicates. Regular backup is an essential part of a comprehensive data security strategy. Several software packages currently offer robust backup features.

## HSM

Archiving and backup are important processes in data storage management. However, they don't provide a complete solution. To achieve that, HSM software should be included in the mix.

HSM software provides the following storage-management benefits:

- prevents out-of-disk space conditions
- lowers data management costs
- improves data accessibility

Hierarchical storage management software automatically moves infrequently used data to less expensive storage devices. Unlike archiving, however, it moves the data to storage that is maintained on-line and leaves a trail as it does so, such as an alias file in the original file's location. You can use this trail to retrieve data automatically when you need it. Typically, the entire process is transparent to the user. Accessing files on the primary hard drive is virtually identical to accessing files that have been moved by HSM.

HSM solutions typically employ three levels of hierarchy:

- **Primary storage** typically consists of fast Winchester drives or disk arrays.
- **Secondary storage** typically consists of slower, higher-capacity drives or removable cartridge devices.
- **Tertiary storage** typically consists of a much slower tape device.

## How HSM software works

HSM software is designed to automatically move (migrate) and retrieve (demigrate) files based on a set of rules and filters defined by the user. These user-defined rules allow the software to compile a list of "migration candidates." This list contains the files that will be moved off-line to secondary storage. Rules determine where, when, and which files are migrated or demigrated. Filters can prevent identified types of files from migrating.

Once a user determines what rules and filters should be in effect, the software acts automatically, based on those determinations. The user can intervene at any time to change the rules and filters.

- The Watermark Rule governs how much empty space should always be available on the primary storage device (the source). For example, if the “high watermark” is set to 80 percent and the “low watermark” is set to 70 percent, whenever the source becomes more than 80 percent full, data will be migrated until the used capacity on the source is below the low watermark.
- The Cobweb Rule monitors when a file was last accessed (not just modified). Last-access date is a good indicator of whether or not a file needs to be kept on primary storage. Files not accessed for 90 days are less likely to be needed in the future.

**NOTE**



**You can use both the Watermark and Cobweb rules together. When you do, HSM software first selects unused files based on the aging criteria, then checks to see if any additional files need to be migrated, based on the defined watermark threshold.**

- Filters prevent certain files or folders from becoming candidates for migration. For example, you wouldn’t want your System Folder migrated to another drive. A filter would prevent that. Other filters might keep applications, certain file types, or specific files from being migrated.

Migration movement of candidate files takes place in several steps:

1. Once a file has been selected for migration and the user-defined migration time is at hand, HSM copies the file to a secondary storage device that has been designated as the destination.
2. HSM verifies that the copy is identical to the original file.
3. After a successful verification, HSM deletes the original file and replaces it with an alias or “pointer” bearing the same name as the original file.

When you access a migrated file through its alias or pointer, it may be demigrated immediately or “tagged” for retrieval at the next scheduled migration. If immediate demigration is selected, there may be a slight delay as HSM moves and opens the file.

The best HSM solutions are easy to configure and transparent to the end-user. Nevertheless, this software always informs the user if a recall is in progress and allows cancellation of the process if system response time is impaired.

File compression during migration is a growing trend in HSM applications. The higher capacity offered by compression is well worth the additional delay experienced when accessing infrequently used files.

Back-up software and other utilities that scrutinize files on disk can unknowingly force simultaneous demigration of files from the hierarchy. It is important that you select an HSM application that can differentiate between true file access and access by another probing application.

## The benefits of HSM software

HSM software reduces the cost of data storage by automatically and transparently moving infrequently used files to less expensive storage media. However, the files remain online. Furthermore, aliases are left behind with the exact names and locations of the moved files. This means that, as far as the user experience goes, it's as if the files had never been moved. HSM provides similar cost savings to archiving, with better data access time.

Archiving, backup, and HSM are related, but not identical. They are all components of a well-planned data storage management system. Used together, they can ensure data integrity, reduce storage costs, and maintain easy access to data. The best solutions are easily configured and operate transparently to the end-user. With a little planning, HSM can be implemented to solve the storage dilemma in an intelligent and cost-effective way.

Hierarchical Storage Management software, such as FWB's SpaceMaker Tool-Kit, is available from third-party vendors of Macintosh software.

Several vendors on the PC offer HSM software. Versions are available for single users as well as network file servers.

## CD-R Mastering

---

CD-R mastering software is used to create compact discs. The software formats data into forms that adhere to industry standards for data interchange. Data sources could be files, disks, or even other CD-ROMs. A user has the capability to produce data discs, hybrid data discs, audio discs, video-CDs, or even CD-Extra discs. The main task of CD-R mastering software is to ensure that there is a continuous stream of data from the source drive. Any hiccups in data will create a flawed disc.

CD-R mastering software is built into neither the Macintosh nor the PC operating systems. Third-party solutions for CD-R mastering are available for both platforms.

## Disk Benchmarks

---

Disk benchmark utilities are used to measure disk performance. There are several types of benchmarks, each measuring its own set of criteria. These utilities are useful in measuring performance gains when adding new drives or software.



The leading benchmark utilities for the Macintosh are FWB's BenchTest and Ziff-Davis' MacBench. BenchTest is a low-level disk benchmark program, measuring many important low-level characteristics of drives. MacBench is a file-system level benchmark program. It's good at measuring real-world performance of drives used for office-oriented applications.

The most popular benchmarks for the PC are the Ziff-Davis Benchmark suite. Ziff's PCBench, WinBench, and Winstone measure real-world and artificial performance of disk subsystems and the computer. They are good at mirroring typical office application performance.

Other popular benchmarks include CoreTest for measuring burst transfer and sustained data rates in DOS, and Drive Rocket for measuring many different transfer rates under DOS. DiskPerf and VidTest, on Microsoft's Development Platform CDs, are good benchmarks for Windows 95 and NT operating systems. They perform benchmarks for large data transfers, mirroring high-end video, and color publishing applications.

## Troubleshooting

Many things can happen to create errors and crashes on your storage device, including:

- power surges or outages
- viruses
- system errors

These errors can corrupt data the computer uses to keep track of the contents of the drive. Depending on what data has been corrupted and how badly it has been corrupted, the result can be barely noticeable or could render your hard drive unusable.

What follows are lists of common problems, probable causes, and recommended actions. If the proposed solutions fail to correct the problem, contact the technical support department of your peripheral's vendor.

### General Troubleshooting

Problem: Formatting Problems		
Symptoms	Possible Causes	Recommended Actions
Can't format a drive.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Incorrect cabling.</li> <li>• Improper termination.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure only the first and last device are terminated.</li> <li>• Make sure that total cable length doesn't exceed the SCSI maximum (3 meters for SCSI-2).</li> </ul>
	Incorrect interleave.	Make sure you format the drive with an interleave that is supported. (Optical discs come preformatted with a 1:1 interleave—tracks are etched into the platter and can't be reinterleaved. If you choose to reformat an MO disc with FWB's Hard Disk ToolKit, select the default.)
	Format software times out.	Get an updated formatter that can format bigger drives.

Problem: Drive Not Seen on SCSI bus		
Symptoms	Possible Causes	Recommended Actions
Can't see a drive on-line.	No power to drive.	Check to be sure the drive is plugged into a "live" power source.
	Incorrect cabling; improper termination.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure only the first and last device are terminated.</li> <li>• Make sure that total cable length doesn't exceed the SCSI maximum (3 meters for SCSI-2).</li> <li>• Make sure the cables are plugged in securely.</li> <li>• Make sure all cables are securely mated together.</li> <li>• Make sure Pin 1 is correct on all internal ribbon cabling.</li> </ul>
	Drive has hardware problem.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a utility to scan the bus. If you can't see the drive, it may have a hardware problem.</li> <li>• Make sure the drive was spun up when the computer was turned on.</li> <li>• Check the drive's power cord and power supply.</li> </ul>
	SCSI ID problems.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure no two devices are set to the same ID</li> <li>• Make sure that no devices are set to ID 7.</li> </ul>
	SCSI host adapter problem.	Make sure the SCSI host adapter is properly seated in its slot. Make sure that all settings on the SCSI host adapter are accurate.
With internal and external drives connected to a SCSI card, none of the drives will mount or show up on the card's SCSI bus.	Card termination not removed.	<p>When both internal and external drives are connected to a SCSI card, terminators should be removed or disabled from the card.</p> <p>Please refer to your SCSI card's manual for details.</p>

<b>Problem: Spinup Problems</b>		
<b>Symptoms</b>	<b>Possible Causes</b>	<b>Recommended Actions</b>
The drive doesn't spin up and the LEDs don't light up.	No power or a blown fuse.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the power supply can produce enough power for the drive.</li> <li>• Check and replace the power cable.</li> <li>• Make sure the outlet is active.</li> <li>• Check the drive's fuse. If it is burnt, replace it with a fuse having the same specifications. Make sure the fuse is the fast-blow type.</li> </ul> <p>If the problem continues or the fuses repeatedly blow, you may have a power supply problem; contact technical support of your drive's manufacturer.</p>
Drive doesn't spin up to a "ready" state.	Controller card is bad.	Scan with a SCSI utility, if the drive is not ready, it may need repair or replacement.
With a new drive installed, the drive will not spin up, or does not spin up reliably.	Hard drive draws more power than the computer's power supply can give.	<p>Certain internal hard drives tend to use the power that is reserved for cards in order to spin up. In addition, some cards require power beyond the limit for a single card, and end up tapping into the power reserved for other cards. The only solutions are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Get a drive that will work within your computer's power limits.</li> <li>• Remove the offending card (or cards) that exceeds the power limitation.</li> </ul> <p><b>OR</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Install the peripheral into a computer with a more robust power supply.</li> </ul>
	Jumper settings are wrong.	Check your settings against the drive documentation.

### Mac boot process

The Macintosh has a complicated process for starting up the machine. Knowing more about the process will allow users to troubleshoot problems they have booting in the future and understand better how the Macintosh works.

**NOTE**

For information on the PC boot process, see “PC boot process” on page 285.

1. When the Macintosh is powered on, it performs a test of RAM and other motherboard components. Motherboard video is initialized.
2. The Mac ROM initializes all NuBus or PCI cards, causing drivers to be loaded from these cards. Video card drivers are loaded first, then drivers from other cards.
3. At boot time:
  - If you press Command-Option-C, the Mac will attempt to boot off its CD-ROM drive. (On Macintoshes introduced from 1995.)
  - If you press Command-Option-Tab, the Mac will attempt to boot off its floppy drive.
  - If you press Shift-Command-Option-Delete, the Mac will look for a bootable drive other than the one specified in the Startup Disk control panel.
  - If you press Shift-Command-Option-E and a number from 1 through 9, your system will start up from the partition that corresponds to the number you pressed. You will need to know the order of all your HFS partitions to do this successfully.
4. It checks for bootable floppies in the floppy drive.
5. The Mac looks at its parameter RAM (PRAM) to see if a device has been chosen in the Startup Device control panel. Once drivers for all block devices that can be found are loaded, the value stored in PRAM is compared with those of each drive in the drive queue. When the correct drive is found, it is mounted and the chosen folder (if any) is sought.
6. The Mac then looks at the Startup Device's partition map and loads a SCSI driver for the Startup Device from its Apple\_Driver partition.
7. If no Startup Device is set or if the Startup Device is missing, the Mac scans the first SCSI bus it encounters and looks for bootable drives from the highest SCSI ID to the lowest.
8. The SCSI driver is called to mount volumes of type Apple\_HFS found in the drive's partition map and to read boot blocks in from the first volume.

9. All other SCSI devices have their drivers loaded and are mounted.
10. Compatibility of the current System file and the computer is checked.
11. The SCSI driver is called to read the System in.
12. Startup screens are displayed if present.
13. Welcome to Macintosh is displayed.
14. If the Mac requires a System Enabler, the Enabler is read in.
15. MacsBug, if present in the System Folder, is loaded.
16. The Mac loads all System Extensions, Chooser Extensions, and Control Panels that have Extensions embedded in them.
17. The Macintosh launches any Startup applications and loads the Finder to bring up the Desktop.

## Macintosh problems and recommended actions

If the following recommended actions fail to correct your system problems, reformatting the drive and reinstalling a clean System Folder may do the trick.



**Remember that formatting will erase all data on the disk.**

Make sure that the replacement System Folder is not corrupted and has no special System Extensions in it. If you cannot solve the problems, call the technical support department of your peripheral's vendor for assistance.

## Happy Mac problems

Problem: Happy Mac Problems		
Symptoms	Possible Causes	Recommended Actions
The Happy Mac appears briefly, then disappears, and a floppy disk icon appears with a question mark in the middle of it.	No power to boot drive.	Check to be sure your boot drive is connected to a "live" power source.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bad boot blocks.</li> <li>• Corrupted System files.</li> </ul> <b>OR</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Corrupted disk data structures.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Run a disk recovery program.</li> <li>• Reinstall the Apple System Software.</li> <li>• Update the driver on the hard drive.</li> </ul>
Happy Mac flashes on and off, and the drive does not boot.	The boot blocks or System files have become corrupted.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Run a recovery program</li> <li>• Reinstall the Apple System Software.</li> </ul>

Problem: Happy Mac Problems (Continued)		
Symptoms	Possible Causes	Recommended Actions
Happy Mac appears but the drive seeks repeatedly before booting.	A “dirty” shutdown, due to a bomb or power outage. All data structures were not properly updated before shutdown. The Mac sees this upon start-up and reverifies these structures.	None needed, once the Macintosh has verified the structures. You may want to run Apple’s Disk First Aid to verify that the disk is in good condition. Use Restart to reboot the computer and Shutdown to turn off the computer instead of simply turning off the machine.

Problem: System Bomb		
Symptoms	Possible Causes	Recommended Actions
The Bomb System Error Dialog box appears.	This can be caused by many software problems including conflicts with an extension, too little system heap, or another application.	Attempt to restart the system. If the bomb continues, check for free system heap space, disable System Extensions, and reinstall the software.  Heap space is a memory pool that is used by the Macintosh operating system to store system data.  <b>NOTE:</b> System error code descriptions are available in public domain programs or in Inside Macintosh books from Apple.

## Sad Mac Problems

The sad Mac appears when the Macintosh fails one of its diagnostic tests on start-up. The characters below the sad Mac indicate what has gone wrong. For the Macintosh Plus and earlier, if the first two characters are “0F,” there is a software problem. Any other two characters indicate a hardware failure. For the Macintosh SE and later, if the first four characters are “000F,” the problem is software, and the last four characters indicate the specific problem. Typically, this is caused by damaged Apple System Software.

**NOTE**



The error codes can be found in Inside Macintosh or in some public domain programs.

<b>Problem: Sad Mac Problems</b>		
<b>Symptoms</b>	<b>Possible Causes</b>	<b>Recommended Actions</b>
The Macintosh crashes with a SCSI accelerator installed.	Possible card conflict.	Try reconnecting the card's devices to the native Macintosh's SCSI port. If the problem remains when no drives are connected to the card, contact your card vendor.
	Parameter RAM corrupted.	<p>Zap PRAM. PRAM is parameter RAM that is backed up by a battery on the Macintosh's motherboard.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you're using System 7 or newer, restart and hold down the Command, Option, "P" and "R" keys until you hear the startup sound again.</li> <li>• If you're using System 6, hold down the Command, Option, and Shift keys while selecting Control Panel from the Apple menu, and click OK in the resulting dialog box.</li> </ul> <p>This will clear the parameter RAM, and should allow normal operation. You may need a utility such as TechTool to clear all PRAM.</p>
	Corrupted driver.	Reinstall the driver.

<b>Problem: Drive Problems</b>		
<b>Symptoms</b>	<b>Possible Causes</b>	<b>Recommended Actions</b>
Multiple icons appear on the Desktop for the same drive. If you have partitioned your drive, there should be a separate icon for each partition that is mounted, but no more.	SCSI ID conflict.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure that no two SCSI devices share the same SCSI ID, and that the ID numbers range between zero and six (seven is reserved for the Macintosh).</li> <li>• Make sure cabling and termination are OK.</li> </ul>
	Failed SCSI ID switch.	Have an authorized service provider replace the switch.



Problem: Drive Problems (Continued)		
Symptoms	Possible Causes	Recommended Actions
The drive does not mount.	There are many software or hardware possibilities.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure your drive is properly connected to the Macintosh, properly terminated, and has a "live" power source.</li> <li>• Check the SCSI ID of the drive as well as any other devices on the SCSI bus.</li> <li>• Use your formatter software to test the media and update the driver.</li> <li>• Make sure any SCSI cards are seated securely in their slots.</li> </ul>
	Parameter RAM corrupted.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you're using System 7 or newer, restart and hold down the Command, Option, "P" and "R" keys until you hear the startup sound again.</li> <li>• If you're using System 6, hold down the Command, Option, and Shift keys while selecting Control Panel from the Apple menu, and click OK on the resulting dialog box.</li> </ul> <p>This will clear the parameter RAM, which is RAM that is backed up by a battery on the Macintosh's motherboard.</p>
Why can't I see my drive in my formatter?	<p>Multiple SCSI buses exist.</p> <p>If you are using a Quadra 900/950 with a PowerMac Upgrade Card or running SCSI Manager 4.3 extension (part of System 7.5 and newer) on a PowerMac 8100, PowerMac 8150, or PowerMac 9150, you have 2 (two) SCSI buses. The internal drive is usually on Bus 0 (internal). The internal CD-ROM drive, any drives in the second drive bay, and all external devices are usually on Bus 1 (internal/external).</p>	To see these devices you need to select another SCSI bus.
	SCSI ID conflict.	Check the SCSI IDs of all attached devices. Make sure that no devices on a given bus have the same SCSI ID.
	Bad drive (dead controller).	Repair drive.
	Bad cable leading to drive.	Replace cable.

Problem: Drive Problems (Continued)		
Symptoms	Possible Causes	Recommended Actions
A "Disk is full" message appears when the disk is not full.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You may have large invisible or temporary files.</li> <li>The directory may be corrupted.</li> <li>You have attempted to access a large volume on a machine that does not support large volumes.</li> </ul>	Run a recovery program or Disk First Aid.
The drive mounts but cannot be used as a start-up disk.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bad boot blocks on the disk.</li> <li>System Software on the drive.</li> <li>A hardware problem with the drive.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make sure drive is marked as start-up device in the control panel.</li> <li>Check the hardware connections.</li> <li>Reinstall the System software.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The Macintosh Plus will only start up off the device with the highest SCSI ID number.</p>
A dialog box appears saying "This disk needs minor repairs. Do you want to repair it?"	The invisible Desktop file has become corrupted due to abrupt shutdown.	Click OK. The Macintosh will rebuild the Desktop file.
A dialog box appears saying "This disk is unreadable. Do you want to initialize it?"	Corrupted data structure on the disk.	<b>Do not click on OK;</b> this will erase the data on the disk. Run a disk recovery program.
	<p>Blind data transfers are not supported.</p> <p>In Blind Data Transfer mode, the CPU allows the SCSI chip to oversee transfers, freeing the CPU for other tasks. The CPU checks in only once before a block of data is transferred, requiring constant timing of the computer rather than a polling method, where the CPU would have to check for a Request/Acknowledge handshake with every byte transferred. The polling method requires more CPU time, so blind transfers complete much faster.</p>	<p>You should turn blind transfers off under the following circumstances:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The device is not fast enough to keep up.</li> <li>The device has irregular timing with the SCSI chip.</li> <li>When using Daystar™ or other third party CPU accelerators that are incompatible with blind SCSI transfers.</li> </ul>

Problem: Drive Problems (Continued)		
Symptoms	Possible Causes	Recommended Actions
<p>The drive starts to mount, but then crashes.</p> <p>This could have many causes.</p>	Damaged System File.	Boot off another disk by holding down Command-Option-Shift-Delete at startup.
	The hard disk's System Folder or the SCSI drivers may have been corrupted by a system crash or virus.	<p>Replace the System Folder on the hard disk first by booting initially off a floppy disk and reinstalling using the Installer.</p> <p>If the problem persists after reinstalling the System Folder, use your formatter software to update the drivers on the hard disk.</p>
	Multiple System Folders on the drive.	Make sure you have only one System and Finder pair on your drive. Find any extra ones using Find File, and delete them. If you try to remove an active System/Finder, you will get an error indicating that it is in use. Remove all inactive System and Finder files.
	The Desktop file may be corrupt.	<p>Rebuild the invisible Desktop file:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Hold down the Command (Open Apple key) and Option keys while the Macintosh is starting-up.</li> <li>2. A dialog box will ask you if you want to rebuild it. Click OK.</li> </ol> <p>This does not damage your data, but does remove any file comments.</p>
	<p>The Desktop file may be too big.</p> <p>With System 6.X, disks with Desktop files larger than about 275 KB would cause resource manager problems.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Upgrade to System 7.</li> </ul> <p><b>OR</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Partition the drive.</li> </ul>
	<p>The Finder may not have enough memory.</p> <p>Under System 6.X MultiFinder, the Finder is normally allocated 160 KB. You can see how much memory it is using by bringing up "About The Finder" from the Apple menu.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Increase the Finder's memory partition by doing a Get Info on the Finder. Try allocating 256 KB or more.</li> </ul> <p><b>OR</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Upgrade to System 7.</li> </ul>
	<p>Too little system heap space. Under System 6.X, especially when many INITs or System Extensions are loaded, you may need to increase heap space.</p>	Use a utility program, such as Heapfixer, to increase this system setting.

<b>Problem: Drive Problems (Continued)</b>		
<b>Symptoms</b>	<b>Possible Causes</b>	<b>Recommended Actions</b>
	The directory on your hard disk may be damaged.	Repair the directory with Apple's Disk First Aid. Use a recovery program or restore the data from previous backups. Use a low-level bad block scan program to search for bad blocks.
	A virus may have infected your hard disk.	Check your hard disk with a virus detection and eradication program.

<b>Problem: Removable Media Problems</b>		
<b>Symptoms</b>	<b>Possible Causes</b>	<b>Recommended Actions</b>
The drive does not mount.	Incorrect SCSI ID, faulty cabling, no termination, or an inappropriate cartridge.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the cabling and SCSI ID of the drive are correct and secure.</li> <li>• Make sure the bus is properly terminated.</li> <li>• Make sure the cartridge is formatted for the Macintosh and contains valid data.</li> <li>• If you have not installed your formatter's extension in your boot drive's System Folder, and you booted up without a cartridge in the drive, you need to mount the cartridge by running your formatting software, or from within a Control Panel based mount utility.</li> </ul>
	Bad or missing driver.	Reload the device driver that came with your removable media drive.
	Damaged cartridge.	The media may be damaged (particularly if dropped). Do not insert a damaged disc into the drive because it could damage the drive heads.
Light is flashing in the front of drive without media inserted.	Hardware problem.	If termination and cabling are correct, the drive may have a hardware problem. Contact the drive manufacturer.

### PC boot process

The PC has a complicated process for starting up the machine. Knowing more about the process will allow users to troubleshoot future boot problems and to develop a better understanding of how the PC works.

**NOTE**

For information on the Macintosh boot process, see “Mac boot process” on page 277.

1. The PC is powered on and the BIOS performs a test of RAM and other motherboard components.
2. Video cards are initialized and the default video mode is enabled.
3. The machine looks at its CMOS setting to determine if any system drives (IDE, ESDI, ST-506) are in the computer.



**CMOS stands for Complementary (symmetry) metal-oxide semiconductor. It is a memory chip that permits many components to be packed together in a very small area. The main characteristics of CMOS chips are low power consumption, high noise immunity, and slow speed.**

4. The BIOS initializes all cards, causing drivers to be loaded from these cards and banners to be displayed.  
If SCSI cards are encountered, each SCSI card's BIOS will scan its bus and allocate INT13 numbers for any usable drives.
5. The machine checks for bootable floppies in the floppy drive.
6. If a system drive is found, the PC will attempt to boot from it.  
If no system drives are in the system, the PC will attempt to boot from the first SCSI host adapter card it encounters.
7. Using the INT13 interface, the startup drive will be examined to see if it has a valid boot sector.



**A valid boot sector consists of two components: boot loader code and a partition information table.**

8. If the startup drive has a valid boot sector, the BIOS will execute the boot loader code contained in the boot sector.
9. The boot loader examines the partition table for an active, or bootable, partition. The first sector of that partition contains operating system-specific boot code and operating system-specific partition information.

10. The partition boot code is executed and proceeds to load in whatever operating system is present on that partition (for DOS, this would be the hidden files IO.SYS and MSDOS.SYS).

## PC problems and recommended actions

If the following recommended actions fail to correct your system problems, reformatting the drive may do the trick.



**Remember that formatting will erase all data on the disk.**

If you cannot solve the problems, call the technical support department of your peripheral's vendor for assistance.

Problem: PC Problems		
Symptoms	Possible Causes	Recommended Actions
Cannot see a new drive.	Drive is not set up correctly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IDE drives must be set up using the ROM based Setup program. SCSI drives usually do not need to be allocated in the Setup program.</li> <li>• Make sure cables are plugged in the right way.</li> </ul>
	Drive is set to wrong SCSI ID.	Some SCSI Host Adapters require drives to be set to SCSI ID 0, the next drive to 1, and subsequent drives in sequence.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disk boot failure</li> <li>• Cannot find system files</li> <li>• Invalid partition table</li> <li>• Invalid drive specification</li> <li>• Error loading operating system</li> </ul>	Damaged operating system.	Boot off emergency boot disk and update operating system on drive using the SYS command.
	Invalid CMOS settings.	Use your BIOS Setup utility to reconfigure your drive. You should write all these CMOS settings down so that you can re-enter them if they get corrupted.
	Damaged Master Boot Record or partition table.	Run a disk recovery program.
	DOS boot record is missing.	Run FDISK to make the partition active.
Missing Operating System	Damaged boot block.	Run a recovery program to repair the block.
General failure reading drive C:	Defect on disk.	Run a disk test program such as SCANDISK to map out bad blocks.

<b>Problem: PC Problems (Continued)</b>		
<b>Symptoms</b>	<b>Possible Causes</b>	<b>Recommended Actions</b>
Drive is running very slow	File fragmentation	Run a disk optimizer program to clean up your disk.
Lost Clusters Found on drive.	Entries in the file allocation table (FAT) cannot be found on any FAT chains.	Use CHKDSK or SCANDISK to convert them to files and fix the directories.
Cannot boot off a drive.	Incorrect BIOS settings	Make sure no drives are configured in your BIOS. These system drives boot before any drives are present on host adapters. Devices present on host adapters are booted from in order of their Device Number on the PCI bus. Place devices that are bootable in lower number slots.
Drive connected but not ready.	Drive was not fully spun up when it needed to be.	Turn on the drive before turning on the computer. Set a delay in your host adapter's scanning routine.
SCSI Bus scan hangs.	A device does not support synchronous data transfers or SCSI parity checking.	Disable synchronous transfers and/or parity for the device in question.
Inserting a new card causes the computer to hang during initialization.	Card is incompatible with motherboard or other cards.	Make sure that there are no conflicting IRQ, DMA, memory address, or I/O port settings. See if an updated BIOS is available for card or other cards.
Operating system does not see removable media changes.	Removable media drivers not loaded.	Disable BIOS support for removable drives and use driver based removable support.



## Appendix A: Additional Information Sources

### Web Sites

Industry or Organization	Web Site Address
1394 Trade Association	<a href="http://www.firewire.org/">http://www.firewire.org/</a>
Fibre Channel Association	<a href="http://www.Amdahl.com/ext/CARP/FCA/FCA.html">http://www.Amdahl.com/ext/CARP/FCA/FCA.html</a>
HP Tachyon	<a href="http://tachyon.rose.hp.com">http://tachyon.rose.hp.com</a>
PCI Special Interest Group	<a href="http://www.pcisig.com/">http://www.pcisig.com/</a>
SCSI Trade Association	<a href="http://www.scsita.com/">http://www.scsita.com/</a>
SCSI-2 Rev 10L on-line in HTML	<a href="http://abekas.com:8080/SCSI2/">http://abekas.com:8080/SCSI2/</a>
SSA Industry Association	<a href="http://www.ssaia.org/">http://www.ssaia.org/</a>
VESA Local Bus	<a href="http://www.vesa.org/">http://www.vesa.org/</a>
X3 Standards Committee home page	<a href="http://www.x3.org/">http://www.x3.org/</a>
X3T10 Home Page	<a href="http://www.symbios.com/x3t10/">http://www.symbios.com/x3t10/</a>

### FTP Sites

Industry or Organization	FTP Site
ATA FTP Site	<a href="http://fission.dt.wdc.com">fission.dt.wdc.com</a> Directory: /pub/standards/ata/
Fibre Channel documents FTP Site	<a href="http://ftp.network.com">ftp.network.com</a>
FCSI Fibre Channel Profiles FTP Site	<a href="http://playground.sun.com">playground.sun.com</a>
SCSI Anonymous FTP Site	<a href="http://ftp.symbios.com">ftp.symbios.com</a> Directory: /pub/standards/io/



I/O Interface Reflectors (mailing lists):

The following table lists information about several electronic mailing lists that you can “join.” To join a list:

1. Write to the address in the **To Subscribe or Unsubscribe** column in Table 56. (Use the same address to request removal from a list).
2. Type the information in the **Subject** column in the e-mail subject line.
3. In the body of a subscription message put:  
[subscribe or unsubscribe] [keyword] [your e-mail address]

All of the majordomo and listserv reflectors are automatic. Be sure to use the format listed in Step 3.



**On the reflectors using majordomo, your e-mail address is optional. If you include it and it doesn't match the address in the e-mail headers, there will be a delay while humans verify your e-mail address.**

To post a message, send it to the address in the **To Post a Message** column.



**These lists are often called Reflectors or Exploders because mail sent to one address gets sent to everyone on the list (causing a small explosion of mail activity).**

**Table 56.** *I/O interface reflectors*

Subject	To Subscribe or Unsubscribe ...	To Post a Message ...	Keyword
ATA	majordomo@dt.wdc.com	ata@dt.wdc.com	ata
ATAPI	majordomo@dt.wdc.com	atapi@dt.wdc.com	atapi
CD-Recordable	majordomo@dt.wdc.com	cdr@dt.wdc.com	cdr
Disk Attach	majordomo@dt.wdc.com	disk_attach@dt.wdc.com	disk_attach
FC Class 4	majordomo@northyork.hp.com	fc-class4@northyork.com	fc-class4
FC IP Prot.	majordomo@think.com	fc-ip-ext@think.com	fc-ip-ext
FC Isoch.	majordomo@northyork.hp.com	fc-isoch@northyork.hp.com	fc-isoch
Fibre Chan.	majordomo@think.com	fibre-channel-ext@think.com	fibre-channel-ext
HIPPI	majordomo@think.com	hippi-ext@think.com	hippi-ext
IDETAPE	majordomo@dt.wdc.com	idetape@dt.wdc.com	idetape
IEEE P1394	bob.snively@eng.sun.com	p1394@sun.com	n/a (human)
IPI	majordomo@think.com	ipi-ext@think.com	ipi-ext
MultiMedia	majordomo@dt.wdc.com	mmc@dt.wdc.com	mmc

**Table 56. I/O interface reflectors (Continued)**

<b>Subject</b>	<b>To Subscribe or Unsubscribe ...</b>	<b>To Post a Message ...</b>	<b>Keyword</b>
PCMCIA	listserv@cirrus.com	pcmcia-gen@cirrus.com	pcmcia-gen
SCSI	majordomo@symbios.com	scsi@symbios.com	scsi
SFF	bob.snively@eng.sun.com	sff_reflector@sun.com	n/a (human)
SSA	majordomo@dt.wdc.com	ssa@dt.wdc.com	ssa
STA SCSI Trade Assn.	majordomo@symbios.com		star
System Issues	majordomo@dt.wdc.com	si@dt.wdc.com	si
10bit	majordomo@dt.wdc.com	10bit@dt.wdc.com	10bit

American National Standards Institute (ANSI)

If you wish to contact ANSI, write or call:

ANSI  
1430 Broadway  
New York, NY 10018

Phone: (212) 642-4900

ANSI documents are published by

11 West 42nd Street  
13th Floor  
New York, NY 10036

Sales Department: (212) 642-4900

The SCSI Trade Association (STA)

STA was formed in 1995 to pursue the following ends for parallel SCSI:

- promote increased use
- promote better understanding
- shape the evolution

For more information about SCSI or the STA contact:

Joe Molina, Technology Forums LTD  
13 Marie Lane  
St. Peter, MN 56082-9423

Phone: (507) 931-0967

Fax: (507) 931-0976

e-mail: [tforums@ic.mankato.mn.us](mailto:tforums@ic.mankato.mn.us)

Source for Additional Fibre Channel Information

The Fibre Channel Loop Community (FCLC)

P.O. Box 2161

Saratoga, CA 95070

Phone: (408) 867-1385

Fax: (408) 741-1600

Source for Additional PC Card Standard Information (PCMCIA)

The PC Card Standard is published by

Personal Computer Memory Card International Association

2635 North First Street, Suite 209

San Jose, California 95131

Phone: 408-433-CARD (2273)

Fax: 408-433-9558

BBS: 408-433-2270

Source for Additional PCI Information

PCI Special Interest Group

PO Box 14070

Portland, Oregon 97214

Phone (US): 800-433-5177

Phone (international): 503-797-4207

Fax (all): 503-234-6762

Source for Additional SFF Information

SFF documents are published by

SFF

14426 Black Walnut Court

Saratoga, California 95070

Fax: 408-741-1600

Source for Additional X3T10 Information

X3T10 Bulletin Board System: 719-574-0424



---

## Appendix B: Suggested Additional Reading

This section contains a list of storage-related publications that provide more information on particular topics.

*A Case for Redundant Array of Inexpensive Drives (RAID)*, Patterson, David A; Gibson, Garth; Katz, Randy H. 1987.

### *ANSI Standards*

ST506 X3.170-1990  
ATA CAM X3.221-1994  
ATA X3.279-199x  
ATA-2 Draft Specification  
ATA-3 Draft Specification  
SCSI X3.131-1986  
SCSI-2 X3.131-1993  
American National Standards Institute.

*Basics of SCSI*, Ancot Corp 1993.

*Computer Technology Review*, West World Productions Publication, ISSN 0278-9647, 1990-1995.

*Conner CFA810A/CFA1080A Product Manual Revision A*, Conner Peripherals, May 1994.

*Designing Cards and Drivers for the Macintosh Family, 3rd Edition*, Addison Wesley Publishing Company.

*Designing PCI Cards and Drivers For Power Macintosh Computers*, Apple Computer, 1995.

*Electronic Engineering Times*, CMP Publications, 1993-1995.

*Fast Track to SCSI*, Prentice Hall, ISBN 0-13-307000-X.

*Hard Disk Secrets*, Goodman, John M., IDG Books, ISBN 1-878058-64-9.

*Inside Macintosh: Devices*, Addison Wesley Publishing Company, ISBN 0-201-62271-8, 1995.

*Introduction to Redundant Array of Inexpensive Drives (RAID)*, Patterson, David A; Gibson Garth; Katz, Randy H., 1987.

*Quadra 630 Computer Developer Note*, Apple Computer, 1993.

*SCSI Bench Reference; SCSI Tutor*, ENDL Publications, 1991, ISBN 1-879936-11-9.

*SCSI Interconnection Guide Book*,  
AMP, 1993.

*SCSI-3 Documents*, Global Engineer-  
ing Documents, 1995.

*Small Form Factor documents*, SFF,  
1993.

*The Book of SCSI: A Guide for  
Adventurers*, No Starch Press,  
ISBN 1-886411-02-6.

*The Hard Drive Encyclopedia*, Alt-  
ing-Mess, Adrian, Annabooks,  
ISBN 0-929392-10-8.

*The RAIDbook, A Source Book for  
Disk Array Technology*, RAID  
Advisory Board, 1994.

*The SCSI Bus and IDE Interface*,  
Schmidt, Friedhelm, Addison-  
Wesley Publishing Company,  
ISBN 0-201-42284-0, 1995.

*The SCSI Encyclopedia*, Endl Publi-  
cations, 1991.

*What is Fibre Channel*, Ancot Corp,  
1994.



## Appendix C: The Deep End

In your exploration of storage and the technology surrounding it, you may want to dive more deeply into some of the commands, bus phases, and conditions that initiate, allow, and specify actions taken by a system and a device as they communicate with each other. Appendix C provides tables that offer a deeper level of information about the communications that pass between a system and the peripheral devices attached to it. References throughout these subsections point to places in text where these protocols are more fully explained.

### SCSI Communications

#### SCSI signals and bus phases

Table 57 illustrates which control signals are asserted on which device (initiator or target) during the various Bus Phases. The Data Bus column (DB) lists the devices that are asserting their IDs during each phase. The Reset control signal is not represented because it clears the bus rather than asserts itself during any of the Bus Phases.

**NOTE**

For more information about Bus Phases, see “Bus Phases” on page 169.

**Table 57.** Signals asserted during different bus phases

Bus Phase	BSY	SEL	C/D, I/O, MSG, REQ	ACK/ATN	DB (7-0, P)
Bus Free	None	None	None	None	None
Arbitration	All	Winner	None	None	All Active
Select	INIT/TGT	INIT	None	INIT	INIT
Reselect	INIT/TGT	TGT	TGT	INIT	TGT
Command	TGT	None	TGT	INIT	INIT
INIT = Initiator TGT = Target					

**Table 57. Signals asserted during different bus phases (Continued)**

Bus Phase	BSY	SEL	C/D, I/O, MSG, REQ	ACK/ATN	DB (7-0, P)
Data-In	TGT	None	TGT	INIT	TGT
Data-Out	TGT	None	TGT	INIT	INIT
Status	TGT	None	TGT	INIT	TGT
MSG-In	TGT	None	TGT	INIT	TGT
MSG-out	TGT	None	TGT	INIT	INIT
INIT = Initiator TGT = Target					

## SCSI Command Descriptor Block

The Command Descriptor Block (CDB) is a six-, ten-, or twelve-byte data structure residing in the computer's memory that contains the command code and other information needed by a target to execute a command.

**NOTE**



For more information about the CDB, see “Command Descriptor Block” on page 159.

Table 58 lists the information in a Group 0 Command Descriptor Block.

**Table 58. Group 0 Command Descriptor Block**

	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
Byte 00	0	0	0	Command Opcode				
Byte 01	Logical Unit Number (LUN)			Logical Address (NS6)				
Byte 02	Logical Address							
Byte 03	Logical Address (LS6)							
Byte 04	Transfer Length (Number of Blocks)							
Byte 05	Control Byte							

Table 59 lists the information in a Group 1 Command Descriptor Block.

**Table 59. Group 1 Command Descriptor Block**

	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
Byte 00	0	0	1	Command Opcode				
Byte 01	Logical Unit Number (LUN)			Reserved				
Byte 02	Logical Address (MSR)							
Byte 03	Logical Address							
Byte 04	Logical Address							
Byte 05	Logical Access (LS6)							
Byte 06	Reserved (C0)							
Byte 07	Transfer Length (Number of Blocks) (MSB)							
Byte 08	Transfer Length (Number of Blocks) (LSB)							
Byte 09	Control Byte							
	Reserved fields are always set to zeros.							



Table 60 lists the information in a Group 5 Command Descriptor Block.

**Table 60. Group 5 Command Descriptor Block**

	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
Byte 00	0	0	1	Command Opcode				
Byte 01	Logical Unit Number (LUN)			Reserved				
Byte 02	Logical Address (MSR)							
Byte 03	Logical Address							
Byte 04	Logical Address							
Byte 05	Logical Access (LS6)							
Byte 06	Transfer Length (Number of Blocks) (MSB)							
Byte 07	Transfer Length (Number of Blocks)							
Byte 08	Transfer Length (Number of Blocks)							
Byte 09	Transfer Length (Number of Blocks) (LSB)							
Byte 10	Reserved (C0)							
Byte 11	Control Byte							
	Reserved fields are always set to zeros.							

## SCSI-1 commands and opcodes

Table 61 lists and describes general device commands and their operations codes. Commands marked with a plus sign (+) are accomplished without disk access. A command followed by (NON) is not part of the CCS.

**NOTE**

For more information about SCSI commands, see “Commands” on page 161.

**Table 61.** *General device commands and opcodes*

Command	Opcode	Description
Test Unit Ready	00 <sub>H</sub>	Checks if the drive is prepared to accept commands requiring disk access. If it is, the completion status byte indicates Good and the sense key is set to No Sense. If it is not ready, the status byte will indicate Check Condition, with the sense key set to Not Ready.
Rezero Unit	01 <sub>H</sub>	Requests that the drive actuator be moved to the cylinder zero and head zero position.
Request Sense +	03 <sub>H</sub>	Requests that sense data be sent to the initiator. Sense data is detailed error information generated by the previous command from the same initiator. It is saved until it is retrieved by that initiator or until another command is received from that initiator. There is an Extended Sense format and a Non-extended Sense format for devices that do not support Extended Sense. The Sense Key field helps determine why the error occurred.  Table 62 on page 301 lists and describes the Sense Key fields.
Format Unit	04 <sub>H</sub>	Assigns logical blocks to physical sectors, optimizing sequential access and avoiding areas known or found to be defective. Formatting options vary with different drives. Loss of data typically occurs when this command executes. We recommend backing up data first.
Reassign Blocks	07 <sub>H</sub>	Requests the drive to reassign defective logical block(s) to areas of the platter reserved for this purpose. The drive keeps and updates a known defect list. Defective logical blocks that have already been reassigned by the automatic reallocation feature of Mode Select will be reassigned again.
Read	08 <sub>H</sub>	Requests that the target transfer data to the initiator.
Write	0A <sub>H</sub>	Requests that the data transferred to the target be written to the medium. It specifies the logical block address at which to begin, and the number of contiguous logical blocks of data to be transferred.
Seek	0B <sub>H</sub>	Requests that the target position its head actuator at a specified logical block address.

**Table 61. General device commands and opcodes (Continued)**

Command	Opcode	Description
Inquiry +	12 <sub>H</sub>	Requests that target identification information—manufacturer, model, and parameter specifications—be sent to the initiator. This includes the device's model number and various revision levels, as well as whether it contains removable media and supports the Common Command Set or SCSI-2.
Mode Select +	15 <sub>H</sub>	No disk access required if the Save Parameters bit is not set. Allows the initiator to specify the operating parameters of the drive, and optionally to save them for future commands.  A Mode Select command overrides previous parameters. Executing Mode Select in a multi-initiator system creates a Unit Attention condition for all other initiators.
Reserve	16 <sub>H</sub>	Requests that a logical unit be reserved for an initiator or some other specified SCSI device.  The initiator will have exclusive use of the drive until one of the following conditions exists: the same initiator issues another valid Reservation command superseding the last command; a Reset message from any initiator is received; or a hard reset occurs.  No error will occur if an initiator attempts to reserve a logical unit it has already reserved. Drives already reserved will return a Reservation Conflict status; however, if disconnection is supported, the drive will queue the Reserve request and disconnect. If some other initiator issues a Release command, the reserved drive will ignore it.
Release	17 <sub>H</sub>	Requests that a drive's reservation be canceled.  The Release message is only valid when issued by the initiator that reserved the drive. No error will occur if an initiator attempts to release a logical unit that is not reserved.
Copy	18 <sub>H</sub>	Provides the means to copy data from one logical unit to another or the same logical unit. The logical unit may reside on the same or different SCSI device. This command requires that the device support disconnect.
Mode Sense +	1A <sub>H</sub>	No disk access is required if Save Parameters are not read. Enables the target to report its operating parameters to the initiator in either its current, saved, changeable, or default categories. This command complements Mode Select.
Start/Stop Unit	1B <sub>H</sub>	Requests that the drive be spun up or spun down. Can cause removable media to be ejected.
Receive Diagnostic Result + (NON)	1C <sub>H</sub>	Requests that the results of the self-test be sent to the initiator.
Send Diagnostic +	1D <sub>H</sub>	Requests that the drive to perform diagnostic tests on itself. This is usually followed by a Receive Diagnostic Result command.
Prevent/Allow Media Removal +	1E <sub>H</sub>	Enables or disables the ejection of removable media.

**Table 61. General device commands and opcodes (Continued)**

Command	Opcode	Description
Read Capacity (NON)	25 <sub>H</sub>	Requests the target send information regarding the capacity and block size of the drive.
Read Extended (NON)	2A <sub>H</sub>	Same as Read command, but can access more blocks.
Write Extended (NON)	2B <sub>H</sub>	Same as Write command, but can access more blocks.
Seek Extended (NON)	2E <sub>H</sub>	Same as Seek command, but can access more blocks.
Write and Verify	2F <sub>H</sub>	Requests that the drive write the data it has received from the initiator, and to verify that it has been correctly written to the medium. Useful for optical drives.
Verify (NON)	2F <sub>H</sub>	Requests the drive to verify that it has correctly written data on the medium.
Read Defect Data (NON)	37 <sub>H</sub>	Requests that the drive transfer data to the initiator regarding defects on the medium.
Write Buffer (NON)	3B <sub>H</sub>	A diagnostic command for testing the target's memory and the SCSI bus integrity. It is used in conjunction with the Read Buffer command. Neither command affects data storage.
Read Buffer	3C <sub>H</sub>	See Write Buffer command.
Read Long (NON)	3E <sub>H</sub>	Requests that the drive transfer a sector of data, followed by error-correcting code (ECC) data, to the initiator. This command is intended for diagnostic purposes and is usually followed by the Write Long command.
Write Long (NON)	3F <sub>H</sub>	Requests that the data usually transferred by the Read Long command be written to the specified logical block address. The number and order of bytes should match those in the Read Long command.



**The SCSI-2 specification also introduces new commands. See “SCSI-2 commands” on page 195 and “SCSI-2: new commands” on page 309 for more information.**

## SCSI-1 Sense Keys and Sense Data

Sense Data is detailed error information generated by the previous command from the same initiator. It is saved until it is retrieved by that initiator or until another command is received from that initiator. There is an Extended Sense format and a Non-extended Sense format for devices that do not support Extended Sense. The Sense Key field helps determine why the error occurred. Table 62 and Table 63 list valid values and descriptions of Sense Keys.

**NOTE**

For more information on Sense Keys and Sense Data, see “Commands” on page 161.

**Table 62. Sense Keys**

Sense Key	Description
0 <sub>H</sub> No Sense	No error occurred.
1 <sub>H</sub> Recovered Error	Command successful but recover action was needed.
2 <sub>H</sub> Not Ready	Device not ready to be accessed.
3 <sub>H</sub> Medium Error	Non-recoverable error caused by media flaw.
4 <sub>H</sub> Hardware Error	Non-recoverable error caused by hardware problem.
5 <sub>H</sub> Illegal Request	The command or data contained illegal parameter(s).
6 <sub>H</sub> Unit Attention	Bus reset or medium changed.
7 <sub>H</sub> Data Protect	Write protect error.
8 <sub>H</sub> Blank Check	Blank media encountered.
A <sub>H</sub> Copy Aborted	SCSI Copy operation canceled.
B <sub>H</sub> Aborted Command	Target aborted command.
C <sub>H</sub> Equal	Search Data Command successful.
D <sub>H</sub> Volume Overflow	End of media encountered with data left to be written.
E <sub>H</sub> Mismatch	Source data doesn't match data from disk.
F <sub>H</sub> Reserved	

The ASC (Byte 12) and ASCQ (Byte 13) fields within sense data provide more information on exactly what the error was. Table 63 lists common sense keys and ASC and ASCQ decoding.

**Table 63.** *Common Sense Keys with ASC and ASCQ decoding*

Sense Key		ASC	ASCQ	Description
01	Recovered Error	18	8X	Recovered ECC.
01	Recovered Error	19	00	Defect List Error.
01	Recovered Error	1C	00	Defect List not found.
<hr/>				
02	Not Ready	04	00	LUN not ready, unknown cause.
02	Not Ready	04	01	LUN not ready, becoming ready.
02	Not Ready	04	02	LUN not ready, formatting required.
02	Not Ready	04	04	LUN not ready, formatting.
02	Not Ready	31	01	Formatting failed.
02	Not Ready	40	80	RAM Failure.
02	Not Ready	40	83	RAM Failure.
02	Not Ready	40	84	RAM Failure.
<hr/>				
03	Medium Error	11	00	Unrecovered Read Error.
03	Medium Error	11	03	Multiple Read Errors.
03	Medium Error	18	8X	Recovered ECC.
03	Medium Error	27	00	Write Protected.
<hr/>				
04	Hardware Error	00	00	No Additional data.
04	Hardware Error	40	XX	Diagnostic Failure on component XX.
04	Hardware Error	41	00	Data Path Failure.
<hr/>				
05	Illegal Request	1A	00	Parm List Length Error.

**Table 63. Common Sense Keys with ASC and ASCQ decoding (Continued)**

Sense Key		ASC	ASCQ	Description
05	Illegal Request	20	00	Invalid Command Operation Code.
05	Illegal Request	21	00	LBA out of range.
05	Illegal Request	24	00	Invalid field in CDB.
05	Illegal Request	25	00	LUN not supported.
05	Illegal Request	26	00	Invalid field in Parm List.
05	Illegal Request	26	20	Parm Value invalid.
05	Illegal Request	2C	00	Command Sequence Error.
05	Illegal Request	3D	00	Invalid Bits in Identify Message.
<hr/>				
06	Unit Attention	29	00	Power On, Reset, or Bus Device Reset.
06	Unit Attention	2F	00	Command Cleared by Another Initiator.
06	Unit Attention	2A	01	Mode Parameters Changed.
<hr/>				
07	Write Protect	27	00	Write Protect Error.
<hr/>				
0B	Aborted Command	00	00	No Additional Sense.
0B	Aborted Command	25	00	LUN not supported.
0B	Aborted Command	41	00	Data path Failure.
0B	Aborted Command	45	00	Select or Reselect Failure.
0B	Aborted Command	47	00	SCSI Parity Error.
0B	Aborted Command	48	00	Initiator Detected Error Message.
0B	Aborted Command	49	00	Invalid Message Error.
0B	Aborted Command	4E	00	Overlapped Command Attempted.
<hr/>				
0E	Miscompare	00	00	No Additional Sense.

## SCSI-1 messages

The messages in Table 64 are defined by the SCSI specification. In the In/Out column:

- In designates a message that moves from target to initiator.
- Out designates a message that moves from initiator to target.

**NOTE**

For more information on SCSI-1 messages, see “Messages” on page 164. For more information on changes introduced in SCSI-2, see “SCSI-2 highlights” on page 195.

**Table 64.** *SCSI messages*

Message	Hex	In/Out	Description
Command Complete	00	In	<p>Sent by the target to the initiator to indicate:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• It has executed the command (or a series of linked commands)</li><li>• A valid status has been sent to the initiator.</li></ul> <p>Command Complete is neutral. It is up to the status byte to indicate whether or not the command was completed successfully. All SCSI devices must support the Command Complete message.</p> <p>A Command Complete or Disconnect message must precede a target's releasing the Busy signal. If the initiator detects that this has happened—as indicated by the resulting Bus Free Phase—it should consider that an error has occurred.</p> <p>For more information, see “Control signals” on page 144 and “Bus Phases” on page 169.</p>
In = Target to Initiator Out = Initiator to Target			



**Table 64. SCSI messages (Continued)**

Message	Hex	In/Out	Description
Extended Messages	01	I/O	<p>Messages that require more than two bytes to send the necessary information. The messages supported by the disk drive are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Modify Data Pointers (In)</b> Requests adding signed argument to the value of the current data pointer.</li> <li>• <b>Synchronous Data Transfer (I/O)</b> Sent to establish synchronous data transfer and its parameters, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– The transfer period, which determines transfer rate.</li> <li>– The Request/Acknowledge offset, which sets the maximum number of Request signals that may be sent before a corresponding Acknowledge signal is received. Zero means the devices are using the asynchronous mode. Other than zero indicates a synchronous transfer mode has been agreed upon.</li> </ul> <p>Macintoshes previous to the PCI versions do not support synchronous data transfers. Virtually all Macintosh and PC SCSI host adapters support synchronous data transfers.</p> </li> <li>• <b>Wide Data Transfer (I/O)</b> Establishes an agreement between two SCSI devices on the width of the data path to be used for Data Phase transfers between two devices. Initiated whenever it is appropriate to negotiate a new transfer width agreement, or whenever a previously agreed transfer width agreement may have become invalid. For example, after: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– a Hard Reset condition</li> <li>– a Bus Device Reset message</li> <li>– a power cycle</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see “Data Transfer Options” on page 139.</p> </li> </ul>
Save Data Pointer	02	In	<p>Sent from the target to tell the initiator to save the present active data pointer for that target.</p> <p>For more information, see “Executing Commands” on page 159.</p>
Restore Pointers	03	In	<p>Directs the initiator to restore saved pointers to the active state.</p>
Disconnect	04	In	<p>Sent by the target to the initiator in Arbitrating systems to indicate that it is going to release the Busy signal and thus disconnect, and that it will be necessary to reconnect later to complete the operation.</p> <p>Disconnect or Command Complete must precede a target’s releasing the Busy signal. If the initiator detects that this has not happened—as indicated by the resulting Bus Free Phase—it should consider that an error has occurred.</p>
Initiator Detected Error	05	Out	<p>Sent by the initiator if it detects an error. The initiator retries the operation. The target responds with a Check Condition status, which terminates the operation.</p>
<p>In = Target to Initiator Out = Initiator to Target</p>			

**Table 64. SCSI messages (Continued)**

Message	Hex	In/Out	Description
Abort	06	Out	Clears the operation. All pending data and status for the initiator issuing the Abort message are cleared, and initiator and target enter the Bus Free Phase. No status or ending message will be sent for the operation. In multi-initiator systems, the pending data and status for other initiators will be left intact.
Message Reject	07	Out	<p>Sent by either the initiator or target to indicate that the last message was either deemed inappropriate or was for some other reason not implemented.</p> <p>For the initiator to send this message:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It asserts the Attention signal.</li> <li>• Then it sends its Acknowledge for the Request/Acknowledge handshake of the message that it is rejecting.</li> </ul> <p>For the target to send this message:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It goes to the Message In Phase and sends it.</li> <li>• Then it requests additional message bytes from the initiator.</li> </ul> <p>It does this so the initiator knows which message is being rejected.</p> <p>For more information, see "Bus Phases" on page 169.</p>
No Operation	08	Out	The initiator's response to a target's request for a message, if the initiator has no message to send.
Message Parity Error	09	Out	<p>What the initiator tells the target if one or more bytes in the last message received had a parity error.</p> <p>For the initiator to send this message:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It asserts the Attention signal.</li> <li>• Then it sends its Acknowledge for the Request/Acknowledge handshake of the message that it is rejecting.</li> </ul> <p>It does this so the target knows which message has the parity error.</p>
Linked Command Complete	0A	In	<p>Sent by the target to tell the initiator that a linked command has been executed and a status byte has been sent. The initiator sets its pointers to the initial state for the next linked command.</p> <p>For more information, see "Executing Commands" on page 159.</p>
Linked Command Complete (With Flag)	0B	In	<p>Sent by the target to tell the initiator that a linked command (with the flag bit set) has been executed and a status byte has been sent. The initiator sets its pointers to the initial state for the next linked command.</p>
<p>In = Target to Initiator  Out = Initiator to Target</p>			

**Table 64. SCSI messages (Continued)**

Message	Hex	In/Out	Description
Abort Tag	0D	Out	<p>When one or more initiators have multiple I/O processes to be queued by a target, each I/O process must have its own queue tag. In such circumstances, the Abort Tag message is active (usable). Otherwise, it is unavailable.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The initiator sends the Abort Tag message to the target and, following successful receipt, creates a Bus Free phase.</li> <li>The target clears out the identified I/O process whether it has started or is waiting.</li> <li>All other pending status, data and commands for other queued or executing processes are not affected.</li> </ul>
Clear Queue	0E	Out	<p>When one or more initiators have multiple I/O processes to be queued by a target, each I/O process must have its own queue tag. In such circumstances, the Clear Queue message is active (usable). Otherwise, it may or may not be usable.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The initiator sends the Clear Queue message to the target and, following successful receipt, creates a Bus Free phase.</li> <li>All I/O processes from all initiators in the queue for the specified logical unit are cleared from the queue.</li> <li>All similarly identified executing processes are stopped.</li> <li>All pending status and data for that logical unit for all initiators are cleared.</li> <li>No status or ending message is sent.</li> </ul>
Terminate I/O Process	11	Out	Terminates current I/O processes without corrupting media (e.g., hard disk).
Simple Queue Tag	20	I/O	Specifies that the I/O process be placed in the disk drive's I/O process queue for execution. The order of execution can be arranged by the disk drive in accordance with an algorithm. This message is also sent by the target when it reconnects to the initiator.
Head of Queue Tag	21	Out	Specifies that the I/O process be placed first in the identified logical unit's queue for execution. In-progress I/O is not preempted. A subsequent I/O process received with this message goes to the head of the queue for execution in last-in, first-out (LIFO) order.
Ordered Queue Tag	22	Out	<p>Specifies that the I/O process be placed in the disk drive's I/O process queue for execution in the order received, with respect to other commands with this message.</p> <p>NOTE: Processes with Head of Queue Tag messages jump ahead of processes with Ordered Queue Tag messages.</p>
Ignore Wide Residue	23	Out	Used with wide (16-bit) data transfer. Indicates that number of valid bytes sent during last REQ/ACK handshake of Data-In phase is less than negotiated transfer width. "Ignore" field indicates no. of invalid data bytes transferred.
<p>In = Target to Initiator Out = Initiator to Target</p>			

**Table 64. SCSI messages (Continued)**

Message	Hex	In/Out	Description
Identify	80 to FF	I/O	<p>Sent by initiator or target to establish physical path connection between them. The Identify bits are set as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bit 7 is always set to one to distinguish Identify from other messages.</li> <li>• Bit 6 may be set only by the initiator, and indicates whether or not it supports disconnection and reconnection. It also indicates whether Save Data Pointer, Restore Pointer, and Disconnect messages are supported.</li> <li>• Bits 2 to 0 specify a LUN in a target and must be set to zero.</li> </ul> <p>Identify is required in SCSI-2.</p>
Bus Device Reset	D0	I/O	<p>Issued by the initiator to clear all current commands and pending operations. It forces a Bus Free Phase for all devices on the SCSI bus, but does not affect Mode Select command parameters. This is message initiates a Soft Reset.</p> <p>For more information, see “Mode Pages” on page 164.</p>
<p>In = Target to Initiator Out = Initiator to Target</p>			

### SCSI control signals and Information Transfer phases

Table 65 illustrates which of the Information Transfer phases is active when the Message, Control/Data, and Input/Output control signals are either asserted (1) or negated (0).

**NOTE**



For more information on the Information Transfer phases, see “Bus Phases” on page 169.

**Table 65. Control signals and Information Transfer phases**

Control Signals			Phase	Direction
MSG	C/D	I/O		
0	0	0	Data-Out	Out
0	0	1	Data-In	In
0	1	0	Command	Out
0	1	1	Status	In
1	1	0	Message-Out	Out
1	1	1	Message-In	In
0 = Negated		In = Target to Initiator		
1 = Asserted		Out = Initiator to Target		

## PC SCSI: ASPI for Win32 calls

ASPI stands for Advanced SCSI Programming Interface. It is the dominant standard on the PC for SCSI host adapter cards. Table 66 lists and describes the calls ASPI for Win32 makes to access SCSI devices.



**Calls are requests or instructions from the initiator or target.**

**Table 66.** *ASPI for Win32 calls*

Call	Description
GetASPI32SupportInfo	Gets information on host adapters installed.
SendASPI32Command	Sends a command. The command codes include:  SC_HA_INQUIRY            Host adapter inquiry SC_GET_DEV_TYPE        Gets information on a SCSI device SC_EXEC_SCSI_CMD       Executes SCSI I/O Command SC_ABORT_SRB            Aborts SCSI I/O Command SC_RESET_DEV            Resets SCSI Device SC_GET_DISK_INFO       Gets SCSI Disk Information SC_RESCAN_SCSI_BUS     Rescans SCSI Bus

ASPI for Win32 is fully re-entrant, permitting overlapped asynchronous I/O.

**NOTE**



**For more information on the implementation of SCSI on the PC platform, see “PC SCSI Implementation” on page 189.**

## SCSI-2: new commands

SCSI-2 general device commands and opcodes

**NOTE**



**The commands listed in Table 67 are optional. No mandatory general device commands beyond the Common Command Set commands were introduced with the SCSI-2 standard. For more information on SCSI-2, see “SCSI-2: A Transition From SCSI-1” on page 193.**

**Table 67.** *General device commands introduced in SCSI-2*

Command	Opcode	Description
Change Definition	40 <sub>H</sub>	Modifies the operating definition of the selected logical unit or target with respect to commands from the initiator. It is used to implement switching between SCSI-1 and SCSI-2 mode and to tell which mode is currently active.

**Table 67. General device commands introduced in SCSI-2 (Continued)**

Command	Opcode	Description
Compare	39 <sub>H</sub>	Provides the means to compare data from one logical unit to another or to the same logical unit. It does this in a manner similar to the Copy command, except that with Compare, the source data is compared with the destination data on a byte-by-byte basis.
Copy and Verify	3A <sub>H</sub>	The same as the Copy command, except that a verification of the data written to the destination logical unit occurs after the copy is completed.
Lock Unlock Cache	36 <sub>H</sub>	Requests that the target either disallow or allow logical blocks (within the range specified) to be removed from the cache memory by the target's cache replacement algorithm. Locked logical blocks may be written to the media when modified, but a copy of the modified logical block remains in the cache. This is good for locking data or applications into the cache.
Log Select	4C <sub>H</sub>	Lets the initiator manage statistical information that the SCSI device maintains about itself or its logical units. The log can be reset. Targets that implement Log Select must also support Log Sense.
Log Sense	4D <sub>H</sub>	Lets the initiator retrieve statistical information that the SCSI device maintains about itself or its logical units, typically cache information or error logs. It is complementary to the Log Select command.
Pre-Fetch	34 <sub>H</sub>	Requests that the target transfer the specified logical blocks to the cache memory on the drive, and determines when the status will be sent. No data is transferred to the initiator.
Prevent/Allow Medium Removal	1E <sub>H</sub>	Requests that the target either prevent or allow the removal of the medium in the logical unit.
Read Defect Data	37 <sub>H</sub>	Requests that the target transfer data regarding defects in the medium to the initiator. Data on both factory and grown defects can be requested. If the target cannot comply, it will send the Check Condition status.
Receive Diagnostics	1C <sub>H</sub>	Requests that analysis data be sent to the initiator after completion of a Send Diagnostics command.  For more information, see "Commands" on page 161.
Search Data	30 <sub>H</sub>	Looks through one or more logical blocks for equality or inequality to a data pattern. There are Search Data Equal, Search Data High, and Search Data Low commands.
	31 <sub>H</sub>	
	32 <sub>H</sub>	
Set Limits	33 <sub>H</sub>	Defines the range within which subsequent linked commands may operate.

**Table 67.** General device commands introduced in SCSI-2 (Continued)

Command	Opcode	Description
Synchronize Cache	35 <sub>H</sub>	Ensures that logical blocks in the cache memory, within the specified range, have their most recent data value recorded in the medium. This command will update the medium if necessary.
Write and Verify	2E <sub>H</sub>	Asks the target to: 1. Take the data transferred from the initiator. 2. Write it to the medium. 3. Verify that it is correctly written
Write Same	41 <sub>H</sub>	Requests that the target write the single block of data transferred by the initiator to the medium multiple times.

SCSI-2 Opcodes reserved for vendor-unique commands (V)

Figure 86 lists the opcodes that are reserved for the unique commands developed and used by manufacturers of SCSI peripherals.

02 <sub>H</sub>	0D <sub>H</sub>	13 <sub>H</sub>	22 <sub>H</sub>	29 <sub>H</sub>
05 <sub>H</sub>	0E <sub>H</sub>	14 <sub>H</sub>	23 <sub>H</sub>	2C <sub>H</sub>
06 <sub>H</sub>	0F <sub>H</sub>	19 <sub>H</sub>	24 <sub>H</sub>	2D <sub>H</sub>
09 <sub>H</sub>	10 <sub>H</sub>	20 <sub>H</sub>	26 <sub>H</sub>	C0 <sub>H</sub>
0C <sub>H</sub>	11 <sub>H</sub>	21 <sub>H</sub>	27 <sub>H</sub>	FF <sub>H</sub>

**Figure 86.** Opcodes reserved for vendor-unique commands

## SCSI-2 special CD-ROM commands

In the SCSI-2 specification, CD-ROM devices utilize special commands to perform operations. Commands marked with an “O” are optional; commands marked with an “M” are mandatory.

**Table 68.** *Commands and opcodes for CD-ROM devices*

Command	O/M	Opcode	Description
Audio Scan	O	BA <sub>H</sub>	Performs fast forward/fast reverse audio scanning.
Pause/Resume	O	4B <sub>H</sub>	Pauses audio/resumes playing audio.
Play Audio (10)	O	45 <sub>H</sub>	Plays audio.
Play Audio (12)	O	A5 <sub>H</sub>	Plays audio on larger discs.
Play Audio MSF	O	47 <sub>H</sub>	Plays audio in minutes, seconds format.
Play Track Relative (10)	O	49 <sub>H</sub>	Plays a track relative to the current position.
Play Track Relative (12)	O	A9 <sub>H</sub>	Plays a track relative to the current position on larger discs.
Play CD-ROM XA (12)	O	BD <sub>H</sub>	Plays an XA formatted track. <b>NOTE:</b> XA stands for extended architecture.
Read CD	M	BE <sub>H</sub>	Reads data from CD.
Read CD MSF	M	B9 <sub>H</sub>	Reads data from CD in MSF format.
Read Header	M	44 <sub>H</sub>	Reads header data from CD.
Read Sub-Channel	M	42 <sub>H</sub>	Reads CD Sub-Channel data.
Read TOC	M	43 <sub>H</sub>	Returns list of recorded tracks.
Send CD-ROM XA ADPCM DATA	O	BC <sub>H</sub>	Plays XA formatted audio. <b>NOTE:</b> XA stands for extended architecture.
Set CD-ROM Speed	O	B8 <sub>H</sub>	Sets the spin rate of the CD-ROM.
Stop Play/Scan	M	4E <sub>H</sub>	Stops audio playing.



## SCSI-2 special tape device commands

In the SCSI-2 specification, tape devices utilize special commands to perform operations. Commands marked with an “O” are optional; commands marked with an “M” are mandatory.

**Table 69.** *Commands and opcodes for tape devices*

Command	O/M	Opcode	Description
Erase	M	19 <sub>H</sub>	Erases the tape.
Locate	O	2B <sub>H</sub>	Seeks to a block on the tape.
Load/Unload	O	1B <sub>H</sub>	Loads the tape into the drive or unloads it.
Read Block Limits	M	05 <sub>H</sub>	Returns possible block lengths.
Read Position	O	34 <sub>H</sub>	Returns the current position of the head.
Rewind	M	01 <sub>H</sub>	Performs fast reverse rewinding of the tape.
Space	M	11 <sub>H</sub>	Performs fast forward/fast reverse tape seeking.
Write Filemarks	M	11 <sub>H</sub>	Writes a tape marker point to the current position.

## SCSI-2 special communications device commands

In the SCSI-2 specification, communication devices utilize a special command to perform erase operations. The Erase command is mandatory.

**Table 70.** *Commands and opcodes for communication devices*

Command	O/M	Opcode	Description
Erase	M	19 <sub>H</sub>	Erases the tape.

## SCSI-2 mode pages

### SCSI-2 general device mode pages

Mode pages are categories of command parameters that determine a drive's behavior. SCSI-2 adds mode pages to those defined in the original specification. In addition to defined mode pages, there are reserved and vendor-specific mode pages. Defined pages are listed and described in Table 71.



For more information, see “Mode Pages” on page 164.

**Table 71.** *SCSI-2 defined mode pages*

Mode Page	Opcode	Description
Caching Parameters	08 <sub>H</sub>	Defines the parameters affecting use of the cache, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Sending the Good status</li><li>• The length of the pre-fetch logical blocks</li><li>• Whether the target can take Read data from the medium but not the cache</li><li>• Disable or enable write cache</li></ul>
Control Mode	0A <sub>H</sub>	Controls several SCSI-2 features that are applicable to all device types, such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Tagged queuing</li><li>• Extended contingent allegiance</li><li>• Asynchronous event notification</li><li>• Error logging</li></ul>
Disconnect Reconnect	02 <sub>H</sub>	Lets the initiator tune the performance of the SCSI bus, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Maximum time the target can assert Busy without a Request/Acknowledge handshake</li><li>• Maximum time target waits after releasing bus before attempting reselect.</li></ul>
Flexible Disk	05 <sub>H</sub>	Controls and reports flexible drive parameters, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Number of read/write heads used</li><li>• Number of sectors per revolution per head</li><li>• Number of data bytes per sector that an initiator can read or write</li></ul>
Format Device	03 <sub>H</sub>	Specifies the medium format, including the number of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Tracks</li><li>• Alternate tracks</li><li>• Alternate sectors per zone</li><li>• Alternate tracks per logical unit</li><li>• Sectors per track</li><li>• Data bytes per physical sector</li></ul>
Medium Types Supported	0B <sub>H</sub>	Contains a list of the medium types implemented by the target for logical units.

**Table 71. SCSI-2 defined mode pages (Continued)**

Mode Page	Opcode	Description
Notch and Partition	0C <sub>H</sub>	Applies to direct-access devices that implement a variable number of blocks per cylinder, and indicates such things as the maximum number of notches allowed by the logical unit and their boundaries.
Read-Write Error Recovery	01 <sub>H</sub>	Specifies the numerous error recovery parameters the target uses during any command that performs a read or write operation to the media.
Rigid Disk Geometry	04 <sub>H</sub>	Specifies parameters for direct-access devices that use a rigid disk drive, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The number of heads used for data storage</li><li>• Where the landing zone is located</li><li>• Rotational position locking</li></ul>
Verify Error Recovery	07 <sub>H</sub>	Specifies the error recovery parameters the target uses during the Verify, Write and Verify, and Copy and Verify commands, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The number of times the target will attempt its recovery algorithm</li><li>• The largest burst data error for which data error correction may be attempted</li></ul>
Peripheral Device	09 <sub>H</sub>	Passes vendor-specific information between an initiator and a peripheral interface “below” the target (that is, between the target and the peripheral device), including SCSI, ESDI, IPI.

## SCSI-2 CD-ROM mode pages

The SCSI-2 specification defines additional mode pages for use by CD-ROM devices. In addition to specifically defined mode pages, there are reserved and vendor-specific mode pages. The defined pages are listed below along with their codes.

**Table 72. SCSI-2 defined CD-ROM mode pages**

Mode Page	Opcode	Description
CD-ROM	0D <sub>H</sub>	Defines the parameters affecting use of CD-ROMs.
CD-ROM Audio Control	0E <sub>H</sub>	Defines the parameters affecting the playing of audio on CD-ROM discs.

## SCSI-2 tape mode pages

The SCSI-2 specification defines additional mode pages for use by tape devices. In addition to specifically defined mode pages, there are reserved and vendor-specific mode pages. The defined pages are listed below along with their codes.

**Table 73. SCSI-2 defined tape mode pages**

Mode Page	Opcode	Description
Device Configuration	10 <sub>H</sub>	Allows programs to read and customize the mode that the tape drive is operating in.
Medium Partition	11 <sub>H</sub> –14E <sub>H</sub>	Allows programs to read how the tape is partitioned.

## ST-506 commands

Table 74 lists the commands in the ST-506 standard. Notice that many of these commands mirror ones later found in the SCSI standard.

**NOTE**

For a look at SCSI commands, see “Commands” on page 161. For more information about ST-506, see “ST-506/ST-412” on page 222.

**Table 74.** *ST-506 commands and opcodes*

Command	Opcode	Description
Test Drive Ready	00 <sub>H</sub>	Test to see if drive is ready.
Recalibrate	01 <sub>H</sub>	Recalibrate the head.
Request Sense	03 <sub>H</sub>	Return status information on drive.
Format Drive	04 <sub>H</sub>	Format entire drive.
Read Verify	05 <sub>H</sub>	Read data and verify its ECC (error correction code).
Format Track	06 <sub>H</sub>	Format a single track.
Format Bad Track	07 <sub>H</sub>	Format a single track and set bad block flag.
Read	08 <sub>H</sub>	Read data from disk.
Write	0A <sub>H</sub>	Write data to disk.
Initialize Drive Char	0C <sub>H</sub>	Set up drive characteristics.
Read ECC Burst	0D <sub>H</sub>	Read ECC data.
Read Sector Buffer	0E <sub>H</sub>	Read from RAM on drive.
Write Sector Buffer	0F <sub>H</sub>	Write to RAM on drive.
Assign Alt Track	11 <sub>H</sub>	Reallocate bad sectors.
Controller RAM Test	E0 <sub>H</sub>	Test controller's RAM.
Drive Diagnostics	E3 <sub>H</sub>	Test the controller and drive.

**Table 74. ST-506 commands and opcodes (Continued)**

Command	Opcode	Description
Controller Diag	E4 <sub>H</sub>	Test the controller.
Read Long	E5 <sub>H</sub>	Read data along with ECC.
Write Long	E6 <sub>H</sub>	Write data along with ECC.
Return Drive Params	FB <sub>H</sub>	Get drive configuration information.
Set Step Rate	FC <sub>H</sub>	Set how fast drive can step.

## ST-506 data signals

Table 75 lists the data signals on the 34-pin ST-506 connector. The ST-506 interface's differential cabling scheme determines the signal:

- on at greater than 2.0 volts
- off at from 0 to 0.7 volts



**All signals are TTL compatible. TTL stands for transistor–transistor logic; it's a type of chip.**

**Table 75. 34-Pin ST-506 data signals**

Data Signal	Description
Direction	Which direction head is moving
Drive Select0-3	Specifies which of the 4 drives to access
Head Select0-2	Specifies which of the 8 heads to access
Index	Signals when index mark has passed
Ready	Signals when the drive is ready to be accessed
Seek Complete	Signals when the head has completed a move
Step	Triggers the drive to seek
Track0	Signals when head is moving to beginning
Write Gate	Determines if operation is read or write
Write Fault	Shows if an error occurred

Table 76 lists the signals on the 20-pin ST-506 connector. All signals are TTL compatible. The ST-506 interface's differential cabling scheme determines the signal:

- on at greater than 2.0 volts
- off at from 0 to 0.7 volts

**Table 76. 20-Pin ST-506 data signals**

Data Signal	Description
Drive Selected	Set if the drive is at the desired address.
Write Data	Data to be written.
Read Data	Data to be read.

Because the ST-506 drive must be accessed with such low-level protocol, it is very difficult to create drives with variable zoned densities.



For more information on variable zone densities, see “Variable zone recording” on page 45.

## IDE Communications

---

### IDE data signals



For more information on IDE, see “IDE” on page 225.

Table 77 lists the signals present on the 40-pin IDE connector. All signals are TTL compatible. The IDE interface's differential cabling scheme determines the signal:

- on at greater than 2.0 volts.
- off at from 0 to 0.7 volts.

**Table 77. 40-Pin IDE data signals**

Data Signal	Description
RESET	Resets the drive during host power-up.
DD0-DD15	Carries 16-bits of data.
GND	Grounds the signal.
DIOW	Host I/O Write Strobe.

**Table 77. 40-Pin IDE data signals (Continued)**

<b>Data Signal</b>	<b>Description</b>
DIOR	Host I/O Read Strobe.
IOCHRDY	I/O Channel Ready used to throttle transfers.
DMACK	Host DMA Acknowledge.
DMARQ	Host DMA Request handshake.
INTRQ	Host Interrupt line when drive is selected.
DA0-2	Address line to select registers in task file.
CS0-1	Host Chip Select to select registers.
DASP	Host Slave Active to drive LED (ISA Mode).
	Drive active slave present (ATA/CAM Mode).
KEY	Key to allow cable to mate one way.
SPINSYNC or CBLSEL	Spindle synchronization or Cable Select.
IOCS16	Host I/O 16-bit enabled.
PDIAG	Host Passed Diagnostic to detect Slave.



## IDE registers

Table 78 lists the registers that are used for accessing IDE drives. They are all part of the Task File Register through which all communications with the CPU take place. This register is at memory location 1F0 on PCs. These registers are identical to the AT Fixed Disk Register Set.



**A register is a temporary hardware storage area that assists with the speedy transfer of arithmetic/logical operations within the CPU.**

**Table 78.** *IDE registers for accessing drives*

Register	Memory Location	Details
Data Register	1F0	All data passes through this register.
Error Register	1F1	Contains status from last command.
Features Register	1F1	Formerly Write Precomp Register.
Sector Count	1F2	Number of sectors of data to read or write.
Sector Number	1F3	Starting sector number for I/O.
Cylinder Low	1F4	Low 8-bits of cylinder number (CHS mode).
		Middle 8-bits of block address (LBA mode).
Cylinder High	1F5	High 8-bits of cylinder number (CHS mode).
		High 8-bits of block address (LBA mode).
SDH Register	1F6	Drive and head number.
Status	1F7	Drive/Controller status.
Alternate Status	3F6	Same as Status except on Interrupt Acks.
Digital Out Reg	3F6	Drive Reset and Interrupt set.
Drive Adr Reg	3F7	Loopback of drive select and head select addresses.
Command Reg	1F7	Command to execute.

## IDE commands and opcodes

Table 79 lists commands that IDE drives perform. They are similar in nature to SCSI commands but are much more basic in their functionality.

**Table 79. IDE commands and opcodes**

Command	Opcode	Description												
Recalibrate	10 <sub>H</sub>	Move read/write head to cylinder 0.												
Read Sector(s)	2x <sub>H</sub>	Read data from the drive, with or without retry and ECC bytes.												
Write Sector(s)	3x <sub>H</sub>	Write data to the drive, with or without retry and ECC bytes.												
Read Verify Sectors	4x <sub>H</sub>	Verifies the sectors are error free.												
Format Track	50 <sub>H</sub>	Format a track to spare out bad sectors. Few drives have a full format command.												
Seek	70 <sub>H</sub>	Seek to the selected track.												
Execute Drive Diagnostic	90 <sub>H</sub>	Perform internal diagnostic tests on the drive.												
Initialize Drive Parameters	91 <sub>H</sub>	Setup head switch and cylinder increment points for multi sector ops.												
Vendor Specific	9A <sub>H</sub>	These are specific to Conner: <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>Get Drive Feature</td> <td>00</td> <td>Reads what features are enabled on the drive.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Read Drv Switches</td> <td>02</td> <td>Returns what drive switches are set to.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Power Lock</td> <td>08</td> <td>Prevent drive from spinning down.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Power Unlock</td> <td>09</td> <td>Allow it to respond to Power Command.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Get Drive Feature	00	Reads what features are enabled on the drive.	Read Drv Switches	02	Returns what drive switches are set to.	Power Lock	08	Prevent drive from spinning down.	Power Unlock	09	Allow it to respond to Power Command.
Get Drive Feature	00	Reads what features are enabled on the drive.												
Read Drv Switches	02	Returns what drive switches are set to.												
Power Lock	08	Prevent drive from spinning down.												
Power Unlock	09	Allow it to respond to Power Command.												
Read Multiple	C4 <sub>H</sub>	Read multiple sectors with one command.												
Write Multiple	C5 <sub>H</sub>	Write multiple sectors with one command.												
Set Multiple Mode	C6 <sub>H</sub>	Enables the drive to perform multi-sector reads and writes. (Multiple of 2)												
Read DMA	C8 <sub>H</sub>	Read data and enable controller to do Type B DMA Mode transfer												
Write DMA	CA <sub>H</sub> , CB <sub>H</sub>	Write data and enable controller to do Type B DMA Mode transfer												
Read Sector Buffer	E4 <sub>H</sub>	Read contents of drive's buffer												
Power	E5 <sub>H</sub>	Set a drive to sleep, idle, or standby mode.												
Write Sector Buffer	E8 <sub>H</sub>	Write data to the drive's buffer												
Identify Drive	EC <sub>H</sub>	Displays information on the drive including size of drive, features of drive, make, model, revision, transfer types and speeds.												
Set Features	EF <sub>H</sub>	Enable features on the drive. Read or write cache, ECC, retries, and transfer mode.												
Translate	F1 <sub>H</sub>	Translate head, cylinder, and sector to physical location.												
Physical Seek	F2 <sub>H</sub>	Seek to a given cylinder and head.												
Retry Count	F4 <sub>H</sub>	Returns number of retries attempted after Read, Read Verify, or Read Multiple command.												

## PC IDE: INT13 call codes

Table 80 lists the function call codes available through INT13. INT13 is the interrupt command that controls the read/write activities on a PC IDE drive. The INT13 call is limited to a 10-bit address of data.

**Table 80.** Call codes available through INT13

Call Code	Function	Call Code	Function
00 <sub>H</sub>	Reset Diskette(s) and/or head.	0D <sub>H</sub>	Alternate Hard Drive Reset.
01 <sub>H</sub>	Read Hard Drive Status.	0E <sub>H</sub>	Read Test Buffer.
02 <sub>H</sub>	Read Sectors.	0F <sub>H</sub>	Write Test Buffer.
03 <sub>H</sub>	Write Sectors.	10 <sub>H</sub>	Test for Drive Ready.
04 <sub>H</sub>	Verify Sectors.	11 <sub>H</sub>	Recalibrate Drive.
05 <sub>H</sub>	Format Cylinder.	12 <sub>H</sub>	XT Controller RAM Diagnostic.
06 <sub>H</sub>	Format Bad Track on XT drive.	13 <sub>H</sub>	XT Controller Drive Diagnostic.
07 <sub>H</sub>	Format XT-type drive at cylinder.	14 <sub>H</sub>	Controller Internal Diagnostic.
08 <sub>H</sub>	Read Drive Parameters.	15 <sub>H</sub>	Get Hard Drive AT Type.
09 <sub>H</sub>	Initialize Drive Parameters.	16 <sub>H</sub>	Change of AT Disk Status.
0A <sub>H</sub>	Read Long Sectors.	17 <sub>H</sub>	Set AT Disk Type.
0B <sub>H</sub>	Write Long Sectors.	19 <sub>H</sub>	Park Drive Heads.
0C <sub>H</sub>	Seek to Cylinder.	1A <sub>H</sub>	Format ESDI Drive.

## IDE pin assignments

Pin assignments on the IDE hard disk connector are similar to the IDE standard. Table 81 lists the IDE hard disk connector pin assignments.

**Table 81.** IDE hard disk connector pin assignments

Pin Number	Signal Name	Pin Number	Signal Name	Pin Number	Signal Name
1	/RESET	15	DD1	28	Reserved
2	GROUND	16	DD14	29	Reserved
3	DD7	17	DD0	30	GROUND
4	DD8	18	DD15	31	INTRQ
5	DD6	19	GROUND	32	/IOCS16
6	DD9	20	KEY	33	DA1
7	DD5	21	Reserved	34	Reserved
8	DD10	22	GROUND	35	DA0
9	DD4	23	DIOW	36	DA2
10	DD11	24	GROUND	37	/CS0
11	DD3	25	DIOR	38	/CS1
12	DD12	26	GROUND	39	Reserved
13	DD2	27	IORDY	40	GROUND
14	DD13				

## Apple ATA Manager calls

**NOTE**

The terms ATA and IDE are interchangeable. For more information on ATA/IDE, see “IDE” on page 225.

Calls to the Apple ATA Manager are made with the ATA parameter block structure. This structure is very similar to that used by the SCSI Manager. The elements of a typical ATA Manager parameter block header are listed in Table 82.

**Table 82.** ATA Manager parameter block header structure

Category	Description
Ptr ataLink;	Reserved
short ataQType;	Type byte
uchar ataPBVers;	-->Parameter block version number
uchar hdrReserved;	Reserved
Ptr hdrReserved2;	Reserved
ProcPtr ataCompletion;	Completion routine
short ataResult;	<--Returned result
uchar MgrFCode;	-->Manager function code
uchar ataIOSpeed;	-->I/O timing class
ushort ataFlags;	-->Control options
short hdrReserved3;	Reserved
long deviceID;	-->Device ID
ulong TimeOut;	-->Transaction timeout value
Ptr ataPtr1;	Client storage Ptr 1
Ptr ataPtr2;	Client storage Ptr 2
ushort ataState;	Reserved, init to 0
short hdrReserved4;	Reserved
long hdrReserved5;	Reserved

Functions that the ATA Manager supports are listed in Table 83.

**Table 83.** *Functions supported by the ATA Manager*

Function name	Code	Description
ATA_NOP	\$00	No operation
ATA_ExecIO	\$01	Execute ATA I/O
ATA_BusInquiry	\$03	Bus inquiry
ATA_QRelease	\$04	I/O queue release
ATA_Abort	\$10	Terminate command
ATA_ResetBus	\$11	Reset IDE bus
ATA_RegAccess	\$12	ATA device register access
ATA_Identify	\$13	Get the drive identification data
ATA_DrvrRegister	\$85	Register the drive reference number
ATA_FindRefNum	\$86	Look up driver reference number
ATA_DrvrDeregister	\$87	Deregister the driver reference number
ATA_MgrInquiry	\$90	ATA Manager inquiry
ATA_MgrInit	\$91	Initialize ATA Manager
ATA_MgrShutDown	\$92	Shut down ATA Manager

## Enhanced IDE commands and opcodes

**NOTE**

For more information, see “Enhanced IDE” on page 235.

**Table 84.** *Enhanced IDE commands and opcodes*

Command	Opcode	Description
NOP	00 <sub>H</sub>	No operation.
Download Microcode	92 <sub>H</sub>	Update firmware on drive.
Acknowledge Media Change	DB <sub>H</sub>	For acknowledging media has changed.
Post Boot	DC <sub>H</sub>	For removable media.
Pre Boot	DD <sub>H</sub>	For removable media.
Door Lock	DE <sub>H</sub>	For locking media in.
Door Unlock	DF <sub>H</sub>	For unlocking media.
Write Same	E9 <sub>H</sub>	Write same data again and again.
Media Eject	ED <sub>H</sub>	For ejecting media.

## ATAPI Communications

---

### ATAPI commands and opcodes

**NOTE**

For more detailed information on ATAPI, see “ATAPI” on page 238.

Three new commands were added to EIDE for the ATAPI protocol (Table 85).

**Table 85.** *ATAPI-inspired enhanced IDE commands and opcodes*

Command	Opcode	Description
ATAPI Soft Reset	08 <sub>H</sub>	Perform a soft reset on the device.
Packet Command	A0 <sub>H</sub>	Perform a SCSI command.
ATAPI Identify Device	A1 <sub>H</sub>	Locate ATAPI devices.



**A soft reset is a software-based reboot, without interruption to power. A soft reset can be locked out; that is, a system can be crashed so badly that it will not respond to a soft reset request. In this case, a user might escalate to a hard reset, where the computer is turned off, then on.**

## ATAPI registers

Table 86 lists the changes to IDE Task File registers that are used for accessing ATAPI drives. They are all part of the Task File Register through which all communications take place. This register is at memory location 1F0 on PCs.



**Registers are temporary hardware storage areas that assist with the speedy transfer of arithmetic/logical operations within the CPU.**

**Table 86.** *ATAPI registers*

Register	Location	Details
Data Register	1F0	Exchange data between host and device.
Error Register	1F1	Contains Media Change and End of Media flags.
Interrupt Reason	1F2	Why interrupt was generated. Indicates the emulated SCSI phase.
Reserved	1F3	Reserved.
Byte Count Reg	1F4	Transfer size in bytes.
Byte Count Reg	1F5	Transfer size in bytes.
Drive Select	1F6	LUN to select.
ATAPI Status ATA Cmd	1F7	Drive/Controller status.
Dev Control Reg	3F6	Same as ATA.
Features Register	3F7	Indicates DMA mode for data transfers.

## ATA-3 Communications

Table 87 lists the commands added to the IDE standard in ATA-3.

**Table 87.** *ATA-3 new commands and opcodes*

Command	Opcode	Description
Smart	B0 <sub>H</sub>	Self monitoring, analysis and reporting.
Security Set Password	F1 <sub>H</sub>	Set a security password.
Security Unlock	F2 <sub>H</sub>	Remove security lock.
Security Erase Prepare	F3 <sub>H</sub>	Prepare to erase drive.
Security Erase Unit	F4 <sub>H</sub>	Erase drive thoroughly.
Security Freeze	F5 <sub>H</sub>	Freeze drive operation.
Security Disable Password	F6 <sub>H</sub>	Disable security password.





For more information about ATA-3, see “ATA-3” on page 240.

## PCI Communications

---



For more information about PCI, see “PCI” on page 249.

Table 88 lists and describes the commands that pass between the CPU and the PCI interface and indicates which entity initiates the command.

**Table 88.** *PCI commands and initiators*

PCI Command	Initiator	Description
I/O Read, I/O Write	CPU	Used to transfer data between the CPU and the Target's I/O memory space.
Configuration Read, Configuration Write	CPU	Used to transfer data between the CPU and the PCI target's Configuration registers during computer initialization.
Memory Read, Memory Write	CPU or PCI Master	Used to transfer data between the PCI Master and the Target's memory space.
Memory Read Line	CPU or PCI Master	Used by the PCI Master to transfer a cache line of data from the PCI Target's memory space. Much faster than Memory Read.
Memory Read Multiple	CPU or PCI Master	Used by the PCI Master to transfer more than one cache line of data from the PCI Target's memory space. This is the mode to use when transferring lots of data.
Memory Write and Invalidate	CPU or PCI Master	Used by the PCI Master to transfer one or more complete cache lines of data to the PCI Target's memory space. The faster type of Memory Write command.

---

# Glossary

## 1394

FireWire. A low- to medium-speed bus intended for desktop PC implementations. It appears that 1394 will be used mainly in consumer audio/video products, set-top (cable) boxes, scanners and printers.

## 2,7 RLL

A version of Run-Length Limited recording that allows from two to seven consecutive zero bits. This results in a 50 percent increase in drive capacity over standard MFM.

See also Run-Length Limited and MFM.

## 3,9 RLL

A version of Run-Length Limited recording that allows the run length of the zero string to range from three to nine. This method, also called Advanced Run-Length Limited (ARLL), permits a 100 percent increase in drive capacity over standard MFM.

See also Run-Length Limited and MFM.

## Ablative WORM

A method of writing to a CD that changes the physical properties of the media in a way that cannot be undone. The “ablative” in “ablative WORM” refers to the creation of permanent pits in the media surface. WORM stands for write-once read-many.

## Absolute Filter

Filters that prevent particles bigger than a certain size from contaminating a hard disk. They usually have a filtering ability of several tenths of a micron. At the same time, they allow outside air into the sealed area of the drive to equalize pressures and temperatures in accordance with changes in the external environment.

## Access Time

The time period from issuance of a command to access a single sector to the time when the disk drive’s head reaches the sector. Access time can be represented by the following formula:

$$\text{Seek Time} + \text{Latency} + \text{Time to Read a Sector} = \text{Access Time}$$

## ActiveAudio™

A type of Enhanced CD. ActiveAudio is one of the approaches developers have taken to solve the problems that occur when you combine digital and audio data on one CD-ROM.

ActiveAudio information is organized in this way: digital data occupies the silence preceding track 1 (so-called track 0). Audio data occupies track 1 and up.

## Active Backplane

A backplane that provides multiple drives with power and data connections even when some drives are pulled out or plugged in on the fly. This is necessary for a hot-swappable drive. Without an active backplane,

plugging in a drive while the system is operating could kill the SCSI bus and hang the computer.

### **Active High Signal**

Signals along the bus that are asserted when the signal strength is above a certain voltage, which is typically over 2.5 volts (plus or minus a five percent margin).

### **Active Low Signal**

Signals on the bus that are asserted when the voltage falls below a stated level, which is typically under 0.4 volts.

### **Active Negation**

Circuitry that drives the signal line high when it is negated. Driving the lines high ensures that Request and Acknowledge signals are clearly recognized.

### **Active Termination**

Termination that attempts to address impedance mismatches by compensating for voltage. With active termination, a voltage regulator provides about 24 milliAMPs of current into each asserted SCSI line over a considerable range of terminator power values.

### **Actuator**

See Head Actuator.

### **Address**

The ID number of a device on the SCSI bus, or of a block of data in storage.

### **Advanced RLL**

The 3,9 RLL technique, where the run length of the zero string can range from three to nine. This method permits a 100 percent increase in drive capacity over standard MFM.

See also Run-Length Limited and MFM.

### **AEN**

Asynchronous Event Notification. A protocol that can be used to inform processor devices that an asynchronous event has occurred. Instead of the initiator polling, the target would notify the initiator.

### **AIFF**

Audio Interchange File Format. It is a full-featured audio file specification that allows many programs on multiple platforms to share standards for audio storage. Electronic Arts published the AIFF specification in 1985. It started as a digital music instrument specification. Over the years it has been enhanced to provide compressed digital sound (AIFC).

### **Algorithm**

A step-by-step problem-solving procedure that has only one starting point and one finishing point. In computing, it is the process of defining a set of instructions so that a program can be written to find the solution to a given problem.

The word comes from the name of an early proponent, Muhammad ibn-Musa *al-Khwarizmi*.

### **Alias**

A small “marker” file that points the Mac OS to the real file. Aliases are commonly used to organize the

Macintosh Desktop. On larger volumes, where larger allocation blocks are used, an alias can be as big as 4 KB, 8 KB, 16 KB, or more.

### **Allocation Block Size**

The allowable size of units of information in which data is organized and stored on a disk by the operating system. Blocks are of fixed size, with the most common being 512 bytes. They are stored contiguously, with space between adjacent blocks on the same track.

### **Analog**

Information that is highly variable and has a direct, proportional relationship to the thing it describes. For example, information that describes current wind velocity or temperature.

### **ANSI**

The American National Standards Institute. ANSI is a private, nonprofit membership organization that performs two functions: it coordinates the United States' voluntary consensus standards system, and it approves American National Standards. ANSI ensures that a single set of non-conflicting American National Standards are developed by ANSI-accredited standards-developers, and that all interests concerned have the opportunity to participate in the development process. These requirements for due process have resulted in a high level of confidence and credibility and broad acceptance for American National Standards. But it is important to remember that ANSI does not develop standards. Rather, it provides the means for determining the need for standards,

ensures that qualified organizations develop those standards, and coordinates standards approval. If you wish to contact ANSI, write or call: ANSI, 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018; (212) 642-4900.

### **Arbitration**

An optional phase required for multiple-host systems. If supported, it is a protocol by which SCSI devices gain control of the bus.

### **Areal Density**

A measure of disk capacity in bits per square inch. It is calculated by taking the number of bits per inch that can be written to and read from each track, and multiplying that by the number of tracks per inch that can be packed onto the disk.

### **Armature**

The supporting framework for a drive head.

### **Array**

A linked group of small, independent drives used to replace larger, single drive systems.

### **ARLL**

Advanced Run-Length Limited. See 3,9 RLL.

### **ASIC**

Application-specific integrated circuit. ASICs are computer chips developed for specific functions. These are used in a wide-range of devices, such as video machines, microwave ovens and security alarms.

**ASPI**

Advanced SCSI Programming Interface managers are software programs that enable the storage software, SCSI device drivers, your host adapter, and your SCSI devices to communicate with each other. ASPI managers are written for a specific operating system, such as DOS, and a specific family of host adapters.

**Assert**

Usually assert means to send a control signal. However, for two control signals, Control/Data (C/D) and Input/Output (I/O), it means selecting one or the other.

**Asynchronous**

A method of data transfer that requires a Request/Acknowledge handshake for the movement of every information byte.

The asynchronous mode is the data transfer default. It is in effect at power-up, after a Bus Device Reset message, and after a hard reset condition.

**AT**

Advanced Technology. A PC introduced by IBM in 1984. It was based on the Intel 80286 microprocessor and a 16-bit data bus. It was up to 75 percent faster than its predecessor, the XT.

**ATA**

Advanced Technology Attachment. Sometimes used to mean IDE, Integrated Drive Electronics., although ATA specifically references an implementation of IDE designed for the AT bus (either ISA or EISA).

**ATA-2**

Advanced Technology Attachment-2. Another name for Enhanced IDE.

**ATA-3**

Advanced Technology Attachment-3. Designed to support 32-bit operating systems such as Windows 95 and NT. The ATA-3 architecture was designed to be flexible and modular, abstracting the physical interface from the transport mechanism and command sets. ATA-3 supports:

- drives as large as 137 GB
- data transfer rates of 16.6 MB/s via Mode 4 PIO or Mode 2 DMA
- devices such as disk, tape, CD-ROM and CDR

**ATA Manager**

Provides the interface between the ATA software (operating system drivers or application programs) and hardware (chip).

**ATAPI**

Advanced Technology Attachment Packet Interface. Part of Enhanced IDE, this specification defines a standardized method for interfacing non-hard disk devices utilizing the existing IDE computer interface and cabling.

**Attention Condition**

A condition on the SCSI bus that results when the initiator signals the target that it has a message ready.

**Auto Compensator**

A mechanism within a drive that regularly conducts seek tests and adjusts the movements of the head actuators accordingly.

**Autolocking**

Autolocking physically locks a parked drive head over a designated landing zone on the disk, preventing any head movement.

**Autoparking**

Upon power loss, the drive heads are automatically pulled by a spring to a safe position on the disk—the landing or parking zone.

**AV**

A marketing designation given to computers that are equipped with special hardware and software to facilitate audio, video and related types of production.

**Average Seek Time**

The time in milliseconds to do all possible seeks on the drive divided by the number of seeks possible.

**Backplane**

The section of a computer system board into which other boards are plugged.

**Back up, Backup**

*v.* To make duplicates of files on a separate medium; *n.* the duplicated data.

**Backward Compatibility**

Design that takes into account compatibility requirements for earlier models and builds support for those requirements into later generations. The result is a new product that can still be used on an old product platform.

**Bandwidth**

The range of frequencies that can pass along a cable or communications link.

**Benchmark**

A standard used to compare computer systems or programs, usually in relation to speed, reliability and accuracy.

**Bernoulli Drive**

A drive with a 5.25" cartridge containing a flexible disk that spins within a cushion of filtered air.

**Bernoulli Effect**

An effect that is observed when the velocity of a fluid over a surface is increased and the pressure of that fluid on the surface decreases. In the instance of Bernoulli drives, the fluid involved is air. The reduced air pressure draws the disk toward the read/write head.

**Binary Data**

Data that is represented as 0 or 1.

**BIOS (Basic Input/Output System)**

Software coded into computer chips for various purposes. The BIOS on the motherboard of a computer is the special program used to boot and control the computer. Most host adapters include an on-board BIOS that initializes the SCSI Bus, runs bootup diagnostics, and performs other functions.

**Bit**

Bit is a contraction of "binary" and "digit." All computer information is represented as a unique combination

of the binary digits 0 and 1, which are also called “offs” (0) and “ons” (1).

### **Bit Cells**

Magnetic domains created through RLL encoding. They are one-third smaller than those used in MFM encoding.

### **Bit-Based Striping with Parity**

An array of disk drives that transfer data in parallel, while one redundant drive functions as the parity check disk. Another term for RAID level 3.

See also Byte-Based Striping with Parity.

### **BLER**

Block error rate. A measurement of how many errors are detected in the error correction code (ECC) blocks on the media.

### **Blind Data Transfer**

Data transfer that forgoes request/acknowledge handshakes and thus is much faster than regular data transfer. Blind transfer is used during programmed I/O when SCSI DMA hardware is not available.

### **Block**

The smallest “chunk” of memory accessed or transferred by the disk drive. Usually 512 bytes in size, it can be larger in multiples of 512. The number of bytes in a block is the same as block size.

### **Block Descriptor**

Specifies the logical block length for the drive, including the following:

- density code, which is the density of the medium—usually used only for tape drives
- number of logical blocks on the medium in the density code
- block length, which is the length in bytes of each logical block described by the block descriptor

The rest of the data consists of one or more mode pages.

### **Block Mode Data Transfer**

See NuBus Block Mode Data Transfer.

### **Block Multiplexer**

A processing standard that allows multiple peripherals to intercommunicate at the same time. It became so popular that the federal government made it a processing standard (FIPS 60).

Also called the OEM channel.

### **Blown Session**

A CD-ROM recording session that is disrupted such that the recorder cannot complete the writing of a disc or track, rendering the recording medium—a writable compact disc—unusable.

### **Blue Book**

A standard that defines a way of combining audio and data on a disc in such a way that the audio may be played on any consumer CD player, while both the audio and the data can be enjoyed on a computer with a compatible CD-ROM drive.

### **Boolean Function**

A switching function in which the function and each of its independent

variables may have only two possible values.

### **Boot Block**

Part of the Macintosh HFS partition (although other operating systems place similar information in the first block of the drive platter). The boot blocks on each HFS partition occupy blocks zero and one. They are filled in with data when a System Folder is copied into the partition. The boot blocks contain:

- information that allows the system to start up from the System Folder
- information on the maximum number of open files
- the name of the debugger
- the names of system files

### **Bootstrap, or Bootstrapping**

A trigger (command code or signal) that allows a device to start-up without outside aid.

### **Boot-up**

The loading of the operating system of a computer into RAM. It is typically an automatic loading procedure issued by the ROM chip.

### **Buffer**

A temporary storage area for data being transferred from one place in the computer system to another. When accessing a single sector, the controller may read the entire track and store it in a buffer.

### **Buffer Underrun**

In CD recording, when the device supplying the data does not get data to the recorder fast enough.

### **Burst Data Transfer Rate**

The fastest that data can be moved at one instance under optimal conditions, which means data transferred from cache.

### **Bus**

A means of transferring information, usually referring to a set of wires.

### **Bus Arbitration**

How devices vie for control of the bus during an optional bus phase.

### **Bus Clock**

An electronic circuit that regulates the synchronization of the flow of information through the bus.

### **Bus Condition**

A condition on a bus that affects all attached devices and cannot be ignored. It is a critical operation mode and thus overrides other lines. There are two bus conditions:

- Attention
- Reset

### **Bus Device Reset**

A message sent to reset the operation of a specific device.

### **Bus Free Phase**

The bus is empty; no one is riding. This is SCSI's starting point at power-up, after a Reset, and where it returns when a command is completed.

Both the Busy and Select signals must be negated for a defined period of time before this phase is entered.



### **Bus Mastering**

A feature included with some bus cards that allows a card to pass data directly into memory, freeing the CPU to perform more useful functions. (The CPU would otherwise act as an intermediary between the card and memory.)

### **Bus Phases**

Communication across the SCSI bus is divided into stages known as phases. There are eight possible bus phases:

- Bus Free
- Arbitration
- Selection
- Reselection
- Command
- Data-In/Out
- Status
- Message-In/Out

### **Bus Reset**

A method of clearing and consequently stopping all action on the SCSI bus and returning to a known, free state.

### **Bus-Based Hardware Disk Array**

Arrays that are controlled by a RAID host adapter that resides in the computer. These are typically PCI-based boards that include multiple SCSI channels to drives and a RISC-based processor.

### **Buswidth**

The number of bits that can travel simultaneously (in parallel) across a bus.

### **Butterfly Test**

A diagnostic test that is useful for finding media errors.

### **Byte**

A group of eight bits. The basic unit of information.

### **Byte-Based Striping with Parity**

An array of disk drives that transfer data in parallel, while one redundant drive functions as the parity check disk. Another term for RAID level 3.

See also Bit-Based Striping with Parity.

### **Cable Extender**

A cable that functions as an extension cord. They can be attached to one another (male-female), to a System cable, and to a Peripheral Interface Cable.

### **Cable Impedance Mismatch**

Condition created when two or more cables retain different impedances, resulting in signal reflections that adversely impact system performance.

### **Cache**

Similar to buffer but more configurable. Cache can reside in RAM, on the drive's controller, or on a hard disk. It is used to store and quickly transfer recently used data.

### **Caddy**

A plastic tray with a hinged lid and metal shutter used as a carrier for CDs and CD-R discs in some readers and recorders. The caddy helps ensure proper alignment of the disc and aids

in keeping CD-R discs clean prior to writing.

### **Call**

A request or instruction from the initiator or target.

### **Call Chain**

A complicated sequence of continuous calls.

The call chain represents the many layers through which calls pass and the levels at which they are translated—in effect, readied for the next level.

In a call chain, each step is distinct and self-contained. This is the result of purposeful intent by good engineers. If an aspect of the call chain is improved, only the layer affected needs to be changed.

### **CAM**

Common Access Method. A software interface for attaching SCSI peripherals. CAM describes a layered architecture with a transport layer on top (XPT). The single XPT vector calls to one or more SCSI interface module (SIM) layers. Each SIM controls a single host bus adapter (HBA).

CAM's major goal is to provide one interface across all hardware platforms to ease software development for every new system.

### **Canister Drive**

A hard drive and its entire head assembly in a rigid cartridge module that plugs into a “mother” unit. The removable part contains the platter and read/write head. The mother unit contains a power supply and may contain a hard drive controller for communicating with the computer.

### **Capacitance**

A value expressed as the ratio of a quantity of electricity to a potential difference.

### **Capacitor**

An electric circuit element used to store charge temporarily, consisting in general of two metallic plates separated by a nonconducting medium.

### **Catalog Tree**

A data structure that tracks the location of and statistics for all files and folders on the disk.

### **CCS**

See Common Command Set.

### **CD Bridge**

A compact disc format used for Kodak Photo CDs and Video CDs. Many readers support the format but it has not yet become important globally. Software support and demand for discs in these formats has not yet fully developed. The standard for PhotoCD was created and is enforced by Kodak. Standards are proposed, but not in place.

### **CDB**

See Command Descriptor Block.

### **CD-DA**

Compact Disc Digital Audio. The format used for conventional audio CDs. It is readable on all audio CD players and most CD-ROM readers, as well as a wide variety of other multimedia devices.

## **CD-E**

See CD-RW.

## **CD-Extra**

CD-Extra is one of the approaches developers have taken to solve the problems that occur when you combine computer and audio data on one CD-ROM. CD-Extra takes a multisession approach: Audio data occupies session 1. Computer data occupies session 2.

See also Blue Book.

## **CD-G (CD Graphics)**

Compact disc format used for Karaoke CDs. The format is readable on many devices, but most of them are consumer audio components. While the discs may be readable on CD-ROM drives, special software is required to see the graphics.

## **CD-i (CD-interactive)**

Compact disc format developed by Philips for use in home entertainment systems and multimedia applications. Like CD+G, many readers support this format, but there are few computers or applications that allow the discs to be used. The “Green Book” standard defines this format.

## **CD-R (CD-Recordable)**

Compact disc technology that enables writing to recordable compact discs. Data is written to a specially made disc by activating a dye embedded in the disc. This dye changes the reflection of the laser in the same way a pit does on a compact disc.

## **CD Recorder**

These drives, along with specialized mastering software, allow users to make their own compact discs.

## **CD-ROM (Compact Disk-Read-Only Memory)**

Data is stored as pits on the CD platter’s surface. The pits are read by a laser in the CD ROM drive. The data can be read. Data cannot be erased. New data cannot be added.

## **CD-ROM Drive**

A read-only drive that uses a laser beam to read large amounts of data from compact discs.

## **CD-ROM XA**

CD-ROM Extended Architecture. Compact disc format that allows the interleaving of data and audio for smoother playback of multimedia content. It is readable only on XA compatible drives. Most drives sold after 1991 are XA compatible.

## **CD-RW**

Compact Disc-Rewritable (formerly called CD-E). A new proposed standard for creating a rewritable compact disc. Unlike CD-R, CD-RW discs can be reused many times. CD-RW specifies a 650 MB drive with an access time in the 300 ms area.

## **Central Processing Unit, or CPU**

The brains or “central switching station” of any computer.

## **Chassis**

The outer protective enclosure of a hard drive or peripheral.

### Check Disc

In CD mastering, a disc created before the master, used to check the quality, organization and functionality of the recorded material before a master disc is created.

### Chip

An integrated circuit etched into a small slab of silicon. The circuits act as either transistors, resistors or capacitors.

### Chip-on-Board

Chip technology that reduces the required real estate by eliminating standard packaging (the black plastic square you see on circuit boards) and attaching to the circuit board directly. The chip is often then covered with a dense polymer that provides protection against environmental rigors.

### Clean Room

A room kept virtually free of contaminants, used for laboratory work and in the production of precision parts.

### CMOS

Complementary Metal-Oxide Semiconductor. A memory chip that permits many components to be packed together in a very small area. The main characteristics of CMOS chips are low power consumption, high noise immunity and slow speed.

### COB

See Chip-on-Board.

### Cobalt-Nickel Alloy

A medium for data storage, used to improve densities and provide better reliability.

### Coercivity

A measurement of a magnetic material's ability to withstand demagnetizing. Materials that are very hard, such as steel, tend to have high coercivity.

### Command Complete

The only message supported by all SCSI devices. Command Complete is sent by the target to the initiator to indicate that:

- It has executed the command (or a series of linked commands).
- A valid status has been sent to the initiator.

Command Complete is neutral. It is up to the status byte to indicate whether or not the command was completed successfully.

### Command Descriptor Block

A six-, ten-, or twelve-byte data structure residing in the computer's memory that contains the command code and other information needed by a target to execute a command.

### Command Linking

A feature that allows two or more SCSI commands to be linked together. If a linked flag is set in the CDB, the completion of one command triggers the execution of the following command, saving arbitration time.

**Command Overhead**

The time needed for a computer's command to be interpreted and acted upon by the controller.

**Command Phase**

The bus phase in which the target requests command information from the initiator.

**Common Access Method**

See CAM.

**Common Command Set**

A comprehensive de facto standard for commands. CCS defines:

- data structures for Mode Select and Mode Sense commands
- defect management of the Format command
- error recovery procedures
- numerous other command functions

CCS was the beginning of SCSI-2, but it is only for disk drives.

**Compression**

A procedure in which data is transformed by the removal of redundant information in order to reduce the number of bits required to represent the data. This is done by representing strings of bytes with code words.

**Connectivity**

The degree to which a system allows for connecting different devices to it to operate together as a whole system.

**Connector**

A plug with either or both male (pins) or female (holes) connections at

either or both ends, used to connect devices to each other, cards to motherboards, canisters to backplanes, and so on, and to pass signals into or out of these components.

**Contingent Allegiance**

A state in which targets reject commands until an error status on the bus is cleared.

**Controller, or Controller Board**

Circuitry, usually built into a drive, that interprets signals between the host and the peripheral. It acts upon these signals, thus providing the device with "intelligence."

**Controller Chip**

A chip that controls one or more I/O channels.

**Control Signals**

Signals that direct communications and determine bus phases. There are nine control signals:

- Control/Data
- Input/Output
- Select
- Busy
- Message
- Request
- Acknowledge
- Attention
- Reset

**CPU**

See Central Processing Unit.

**CPU Cache**

Cache that resides on or near the CPU.

## **Crash**

When the computer fails and the drive stops working.

## **CRC**

See Cyclic Redundancy Check.

## **Cyanine**

One of the two types of dyes used in the production of CD-R discs. On a CD-R disc, rather than a physical pit or depression in the groove, a dye is used to change the reflection of the laser in the same way that a pit would. This dye is activated by a laser beam of a somewhat higher intensity than that used to read data. The use of this dye allows discs created by a laser to be just as readable on conventional CD readers as discs created by a stamper.

See also Phthalocyanine.

## **Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC)**

A method of checking for data transmission errors through the use of a cyclic, mathematical algorithm.

## **Cylinder**

In multi-platter hard disk drives, tracks of equal radius on different platters form a virtual cylinder.

## **Cylinder Switch Time**

One of the influences on data access time. It is the amount of time it takes to move from one track to another.

## **Daisy Chain**

Multiple devices connected to each other, where the SCSI bus is dependent upon each device to pass signals along.

## **DAO**

Disk-at-Once. Also known as uninterrupted write. It is a writing method in which the entire disc is written in one uninterrupted session. Data cannot be added to the disc later.

## **Data Error**

Any discrepancy between recorded data and recovered data.

## **Data Transfer Rate**

A measure of how quickly data is supplied to the computer from the peripheral device.

## **DAT Drive**

Digital Audio Tape drive. A tape drive that uses helical scan magnetic recording tape to store data in a fashion similar to audio tape recorders, only the information is usually stored in digital form.

See also Digital Data Storage.

## **Data Block**

The smallest contiguous area that can be allocated for storage of data. In UNIX, this is 8 KB. In Macintosh and DOS, this is 512 bytes or multiples of 512 bytes.

In DOS, this unit is referred to as a cluster.

## **Data Bus Line**

The lines on a SCSI bus dedicated to transmitting data signals.

The SCSI bus is composed of up to 50 lines, depending on the electrical specification used, of which 18 are signal lines. Nine transmit data signals, and nine transmit control signals. The rest are connected to

ground, except for number 25, which is left open.

### **Data Density**

A measurement, which can be in tracks-per-inch, of the amount of data that can fit on a given media surface.

### **Data Pattern Test**

A diagnostic test that is useful for finding media errors. A pattern is written to disk, then read back and compared with what should be there. The pattern is changed, and the process is repeated. This way, it becomes obvious if there are any disk areas that are not converting from 1s to 0s as they should.

### **Data Redundancy**

Some form of ongoing data duplication, often associated with a RAID architecture, that provides a fairly high level of protection against unrecoverable loss of data.

### **Data Signals**

Data, command, status, message and SCSI ID information transmitted over data signal lines.

### **Data Striping**

RAID level 0. An array of drives transferring data in parallel. The data is spread out among the drives one segment at a time. The multiple drives appear to the user as one large, fast drive.

### **Data Track**

On magnetic media, the invisible magnetic “grooves” upon which data is physically stored. Instead of one continuous track, as on a vinyl record, data tracks form distinct

concentric circles that emanate from the center of the platter out to the perimeter.

### **Data Transfer Modes**

Data transfer occurs in either one of two modes, or protocols:

- asynchronous
- synchronous

The mode used is determined by the SCSI chip and via messages between the initiator and target, usually after a bus reset.

### **Data Transfer Rate**

The rate at which data is transferred from a storage medium to the computer. Two rates of transfer are commonly measured:

- burst data transfer rate
- sustained data transfer rate

### **Data Underrun**

See Buffer Underrun.

### **Data-In/Out Phase**

The Data-In Phase allows the target to ask for data to be sent from the target to the initiator. In the Data-Out Phase, the target asks to receive data from the initiator. Data is transferred in either the asynchronous or synchronous data transfer mode.

### **DDA**

Direct Disk Attach Profile. In Fibre Channel architecture (FC-4), a protocol used to attach drives to the computer.

### **DDM**

See Driver Descriptor Map.

**DDS**

See Digital Data Storage.

**Decompression**

Reversal of the compression software algorithm to return data to its original size and condition.

**De Facto Standard**

Standards set by users over time, rather than by an agency.

**Defragment**

To reorder the files on a platter so that all the sectors of each file are contiguous. This results in improved access times. (See Fragmentation.)

**Device Driver**

The software program that translates commands between the computer's operating system and the storage I/O interface.

**Device-Independent**

Operating at the systems level and not requiring specific customization to run.

**Differential**

An electrical signal configuration where information is sent simultaneously through two sets of wires in a cable. The information is interpreted by the difference in voltage between the wires. Differential interfaces allow cable lengths up to 25 meters.

Compare with single-ended.

**Differential Backup**

A combination of an initial full backup and then subsequent backups of all files that have changed since the

last full backup (not just the changed parts of those files).

**Digital**

Describes information that is stored as binary digits (bits), either zero or one.

**Digital Audio Extraction (DAE)**

The transfer of audio information from a CD-ROM drive to a computer system through a SCSI cable. DAE is capable of producing an exact copy of the digital information contained on the CD.

**Digital Data Storage**

A standard format for 4 mm tapes using helical scan recording. It was developed by Hewlett-Packard and Sony to replace the audio cassette. It has subsequently found homes in both pro-audio and computer areas.

**Digital Signal Processor**

A processor that speeds the calculation of floating point operations. Among its many applications, floating point arithmetic is used for graphics (in 3-D rendering), imaging, speech synthesis and recognition, audio mixing and numerical processing.

**Direct-Access Device**

Any device that provides direct access to non-sequential blocks of data. (See Sequential-Access Device.)

**Disc-at-Once**

CD-R disc writing method in which the entire disc is written in a single session. Data cannot be added to the disc later. This method produces discs that are compatible with all CD-



ROM drives, and is used for electronic publishing, audio or any other application where compatibility is crucial.

### **Diode**

A non-linear, two-terminal device that is the simplest semiconductor used in electronics. It acts as a one-way valve, letting current flow through it in one direction while blocking current flow in the other.

### **DIP Switch**

Dual In-line Package Switch. DIP switches are usually found on internal circuit boards. They are used to set some of a device's operational parameters.

### **Directory**

A list of all the files and groups of files stored on a disk. Usually includes the type and name of a file, its size and its creation or modification date.

### **Disconnect Capability**

A capability of most SCSI peripherals to leave the bus, complete a time-consuming operation, and then return.

### **Disk Array Controller Board**

A board with built-in logic for setting up and maintaining a RAID array.

### **Disk Drive**

The physical components necessary to transfer data to and from the recording medium.

### **Disk Duplexing**

Using one drive to duplicate the read/write moves of another. This creates an identical copy of the original. It is accomplished through a dedicated set-up that has two drives and two separate drive interfaces and host adapters, each with its own power supply. Data is both read from and written to both drives.

### **Disk Mirroring**

A single disk controller is connected to two drives. All controller activity is performed twice—first to one drive, then the other.

### **DLT Drive**

Digital Linear Tape drive. Tape Drives use magnetic recording tape to store data in a fashion similar to audio tape recorders, only the information is usually stored in digital form.

### **DMA (Direct Memory Access)**

A mechanism that allows for the transfer of streams of data to or from a computer's main memory without the use of the host microprocessor.

DMA may require setup by the host software. After initialization, DMA automatically sequences the required data transfer and provides the necessary address information.

### **DMA Controller**

Direct Memory Access Controller. A microprocessor dedicated to handling Direct Memory Access. It is usually incorporated into the device controller and operates without depending on the host CPU.

### **Doubled Embedded Servo**

Placing servo information at the beginning and middle of a disk sector.

### **Double-Density Recording**

Another term for Modified Frequency Modulation.

### **Drive Channel**

A communication path to the drive, capable of transmitting data.

### **Drive Controller**

Circuitry that provides the hardware interface between the disk drive and the computer, sending and receiving signals. It interprets the computer's signals and controls the operations of the disk drive.

### **Driver Descriptor Map**

The first data read from a Macintosh. It contains:

- the number of blocks on the device
- the block size
- the number of drivers
- the location and size of the first driver

### **Driver Partition**

The disk partition that contains a device's driver.

### **Drum Storage**

Early IBM drives that were shaped like drums, had heads that touched the platters, and held very little data.

The IBM RAMAC 350, in 1956, stored 5 MB with 20-inch disks and had a 600 ms access time. A one-year lease cost about \$35,000.

### **DSP**

See Digital Signal Processor.

### **Dual Channel SCSI**

A system with two SCSI controllers, allowing twice as many connected devices as single channel. In regular dual-channel SCSI, you can have up to 16 devices on the bus. In Wide dual-channel SCSI, you can have up to 32.

### **DVD**

Digital Versatile Disc. Also referred to as Digital Video Disc. A new standard that provides for up to 4.7 GB of storage on a 120-mm, CD-ROM-sized optical disc.

### **Edge Connector**

A connector with flat, metal contact points that mate with like contact points in connection ports, such as motherboard slots or cable ports. They were designed to eliminate the vulnerability to bends and breaks inherent in pin connectors.

### **EDPT**

Enhanced Drive Parameter Table. A parameter table used on PC compatibles that contains two sets of drive parameter information. The first set is called CHS, for cylinder, head, sector. It provides a straight translation of BIOS cylinder, head and sector information, without reducing the number of heads supported from 255 to 16.

The second set translates the cylinder, head, sector information into a 28-bit logical block address à la SCSI.

## **EISA**

Enhanced Industry Standard Architecture. It was designed to supersede the ISA bus, yet retain full compatibility with ISA. EISA ran at the ISA standard 8.33 MHz clock rate and allowed bus masters to be supported. EISA extended ISA to 32-bit operation and sped burst data transfer rates up to 33 MB/s. Its sustained rate was closer to 8 MB/s.

EISA allowed for automatic adapter configuration without DIP switches.

## **Embedded Servo**

Servo data is embedded on the platter between the tracks in the form of magnetic bursts. This is also known as wedged servo.

## **Encoding**

The protocol by which data is written to the hard disk platter. Encoding provides timing marks for the head and a shorthand form of the data, which increases the platter's capacity.

## **Enhanced IDE**

A storage interface that allows support of four IDE devices when two IDE channels are present. The primary channel is designed for high-speed hard disks, whereas the low-speed secondary channel is designed for non-hard disk devices, such as CD-ROM and tape drives. Allows support of drives up to 8.4 GB in capacity. Logical block addressing allows for the increase in capacity potential. Support for multiple-block transfers is included.

## **Error Correcting Code (ECC)**

Additional data stored on the drive to help correct an error before the drive

exhausts its allowable number of retries.

## **Errors, Hard Data**

Data loss through physical damage to the hardware, usually the surface of the recording medium, which may not be recoverable. Hard errors are permanent and thus are likely to be repeatable.

## **Errors, Soft Data**

Data misreads or miswrites due to poorly written software or viruses, which may not be repeatable. Soft errors can usually be recovered through reread attempts or a recovery program.

## **ESDI**

Enhanced Small-Device Interface. An improved ST-506 interface developed in the mid-1980s and championed by Maxtor. ESDI doubled ST-506's data transfer rate and allowed for selective reformatting of tracks. Otherwise, mechanically and electronically it was virtually identical to ST-506. It was device-specific and only used for hard disk drives, mostly those with very large capacity. It offered a maximum capacity of about 1 GB.

## **Exabyte (EX)**

An exabyte equals  $10^{18}$  or 1,000,000,000,000,000,000 bytes.

Exabyte is also the name of a manufacturer of tape drives.

## **Exclusive Or (XOR)**

A Boolean function that sets a parity bit to 1 if and only if either of the compared data bits is 1, but not both.

## Expansion Card

An add-in card that typically enhances system features. Typically, cards provide additional connection ports and/or increase I/O performance.

## Extended Partition

Separate logical partitions that can be up to 8 GB in capacity. There can be lots of extended partitions because they include their own partition tables.

## Extents Tree

A data structure on the Macintosh that tracks the location of and statistics for all files and folders on the disk.

## External Hard Drive

A hard drive in its own chassis that is connected to a host computer with a cable.

## Fast ATA

Seagate and Quantum's version of EIDE, but without some of the extensions, like large capacity and ATAPI support. It was designed to minimize the need to enhance system BIOS.

## Fast SCSI

Fast SCSI uses the standard 50-pin connector to double the maximum data transfer rate to 80 Mb/s in fast synchronous mode. (Up to 10 megatransfers per second.) It does this by cutting synchronous transfer timings in half. However, this works only with modern SCSI chips, which were not used in the Macintosh for many years, but are available through third-party add-ons.

Fast SCSI is used in only the data-in/out phase.

Performance improvements for sustained data transfer rates increase as follows:

- Fast SCSI-2: 10 MB/s (8-bit narrow)
- Fast/Wide SCSI-2: 20 MB/s (16-bit wide)
- Fast-20 SCSI/Ultra: 20 MB/s (8-bit narrow)
- Ultra Wide SCSI: 40 MB/s (16-bit wide)

## Fast/Wide SCSI

Part of both the SCSI-2 and SCSI-3 specification. Fast/Wide SCSI allows for the support of 16 devices on a single-channel bus (32 on a dual-channel), a 20 MB/s data transfer rate, and 16-bit wide data transfers.

Typically a 68-pin connector is used with Fast/Wide SCSI, although a 50-pin can be used.

See also Fast SCSI.

## Fast-20 SCSI

Part of the SCSI-3 specification. Also referred to as Ultra SCSI. Fast-20 SCSI allows for the support of 8 devices on a bus, a 20 MB/s data transfer rate, and 8-bit data transfers. A 50-pin connector is used with Fast-20.

See also Fast SCSI.

## FAT

See File Allocation Table.

## Fault Tolerance

The ability of a system to continue to perform its function (possibly at reduced performance), even when one of its components has failed. Fault tolerance is often provided by equipping a system with extra

instances of components whose failure would cause the system to fail.

#### **FC-AL**

See Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop.

#### **Ferric Oxide**

Used for 40 years as the primary medium for data storage. A floppy's surface is covered with rust-oxidized iron particles held in place with a binding agent (typically plastic).

#### **Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop**

An architecture geared towards connecting large scale host computers to storage subsystems and network hubs. The loop structure enables the rapid exchange of data from device to device.

#### **Fibre-Optic Cable**

Cable made of plastic or glass fibre that is designed to transmit information at very high frequencies, requiring infrared or visible light as the carrier.

#### **Field Rate of Return (FRR)**

One of the calculations used to determine Mean Time Between Failures. FRR only relates to the failure rate of the installed base, not the average life span of each drive. with FRR, an MTBF of 1,000,000 means that out of 10,000 drives, you can expect one drive to fail every 100 hours.

#### **File Allocation Table**

A table that keeps track of the locations of blocks in which the operating system has written data to a disk.

#### **File Data Area**

The space on disk where data is stored in allocation block-sized chunks.

#### **File Manager**

A software library typically located in ROM that manages I/O flow to and from files.

#### **FIPS-60**

Federal Information Processing Standard 60. It is also known as IBM's 370-OEM interface. It provided for very fast transfers up to 5 MB/s and cable lengths over 100 meters. It has been extensively used in IBM's System 370, 3080 and 3090 families.

#### **FireWire**

See 1394.

#### **Firmware**

An often-used microprogram or instruction stored in ROM. Usually refers to the ROM-based software that controls a drive.

#### **Flag**

In a Mode Page, a flag is a bit (either on or off) that tells the drive how to respond to a situation.

#### **Flash Memory**

A type of electrically erasable, programmable ROM (EEPROM) that can be programmed by the computer or the device it is connected to. It can also refer to a nonvolatile memory system.

#### **Floptical Drive**

A drive that marries optical and magnetic technology. The servo data

is perforated into the disk. The magnetic data is located in between optical grooves.

#### **Forced Perfect Termination**

Developed by IBM, FPT uses a resistor/diode network to pull current up until the diode threshold is crossed. The diode then maintains the voltage at the desired level.

#### **Form Factor**

The physical diameter of a drive's platter.

#### **Formatting**

The process of preparing a disk for use. The drive maps the disk into blocks, sectors, and tracks. Bad blocks are marked and placed on a defect list.

#### **FPT**

See Forced Perfect Termination.

#### **Fragmentation**

With use over time, the sectors of a file are written in different areas across the platter's surface. This slows access time.

#### **Frequency Modulation**

Timing mechanisms correlate a platter's constant speed with the distance traveled to yield a precise calculation of the head's position over the platter.

Frequency Modulation was the first timing mechanism used. It needed every other magnetic domain to represent a clock pulse. This method had the disadvantage of using half of a disk's storage capacity just for the timing information.

#### **FRR**

See Field Rate of Return.

#### **Full-Height**

A drive with a housing unit that is 3.25-inches high. It houses 5.25-inch form factor drives.

#### **g**

A measurement value. A g is equivalent to the pull of earth's gravity. Device shock ratings are measured in g's.

#### **Giant Magnetoresistance Head (GMR)**

The heir-apparent to the Magneto-Resistive head. The GMR may permit magnetic recording in the tens of gigabits per square inch and data rates in the tens of megabytes per second. This new technology has sensitivity in the greater-than 3000 microvolt per micron of track width range.

#### **Gigabit**

1024 Megabits or 1,073,741,824 bits.

#### **Gigabyte (GB)**

1024 Megabytes or 1,073,741,824 bytes.

#### **Green Book**

One of the "color-book" standards for CD recording, in this instance CD-interactive (CD-i). CD-i is used for some home entertainment systems. Philips, which developed the standard, has been the most vocal proponent of this technology. Like CD-G, many readers support the format, but there are few computers or applications that allow the discs to be used.

## Green Drive

Environmentally correct drives that support conscientious features like:

- low-power sleep mode
- deep sleep mode
- power management
- lower power requirements

The EPA estimates that a system that powers down during inactivity could save the user \$70 to \$90 a year.

## Grown Defects List

Created during formatting, it is a list of the bad areas on a disk made available to the controller so that it knows not to write data to them.

## Half-Height

A drive with a housing unit that is 1.625-inches high. It houses 3.5- and 5.25-inch form factor drives.

## Handshake

The SCSI Request/Acknowledge handshake signifies completion of a data transfer between the target and host across the SCSI bus.

## Hard Disk Drive

A data storage device that employs one or more rigid disks as the storage medium.

## Hard Drive Cache

Cache that resides on the hard drive's controller board.

## Hard Reset

The Reset condition kicks every device off the bus.

A Hard Reset:

- knocks out all commands in process

- drops all SCSI device reservations (for disconnects and command queuing)
- returns all operating modes to their default conditions

This condition is asserted on the Reset signal line and goes out to all devices.

Compare with Soft Reset.

## Hardware-Based Disk Array

An array where the drives are connected to a RAID controller board installed inside the disk array chassis. The host computer recognizes the RAID controller board as the SCSI storage device, and not the drives connected to it. Read and write commands sent from the computer are processed by the RAID controller board, which in turn sends the appropriate read and write commands to the drives.

## HBA

See Host Bus Adapter.

## HDA

See Head Disk Assembly.

## Head

See Read/Write Head.

## Head Actuator

The physical device (a type of motor) that moves the armature and thus the read/write head(s) across the surface of the hard disk platter.

## Head Disk Assembly

An assembly that includes magnetic disks, magnetic heads and an access mechanism, all enclosed in a container.

## Head Drift

A diminishment of the positioning accuracy of the drive head due to wear-and-tear.

## Header

The first data contained in the Mode Parameter List, which is sent by the initiator to the drive during the Data-Out Phase. It contains:

- the type of storage medium, if any, used in the drive

A setting of zero for the medium type, which is the default, indicates that the medium is nonremovable.

- the length in bytes of all Block Descriptors

## Head Gap

In magnetic head/disk assemblies, most heads consist of an iron core with 8 to 30 coil turns of wire banded around it. There is a gap in the core through which a magnetic field passes. This is the head gap.

## Head Parking

When a drive is turned off, the read/write head is moved to a specified location on the disk that is not used for data storage - the landing or parking zone. Most modern drives have an autopark function.

## Head Switch Time

The time, measured in microseconds, it takes to switch from one read/write head to another in a read or write operation.

## HFS

See Hierarchical File System.

## HFS Partition

A Macintosh partition that contains structures to help the Macintosh operating system boot the computer and locate information on files and folders. This data structure is set up during disk initialization. The following data structures are written to disk:

- Boot blocks
- Volume information block (VIB)
- Volume bitmap
- Extents tree
- Catalog tree
- File data area

## Hierarchical File System

The file system used by the Apple Macintosh for storing files and folders on a hard disk.

## High-Density Connector

Defined in the SCSI-3 specification, high-density connectors pack the pins more tightly, and are 1.44 inches wide and a quarter-inch thick.

## High-Level Formatting

Formatting performed by the operating system to create the root directory, file allocation tables and other basic configurations.

## High-Level Interface

A sophisticated interface level that describes a nonphysical abstraction (a logical perspective) that can be manipulated with software.

## Holographic Memory

A variation of conventional holography. Two laser beams are focused in the system at different angles and optically interfere on a



light-sensitive film. One beam carries the data, which can be either a representation of the digital data stream or a pictorial image. By using a scanner to change the angle or position of the other beam, multiple views of the image are recorded. Thousands of these holograms can be recorded on a single piece of film.

### **Host**

The computer—specifically, its central processing unit (CPU) and SCSI chip.

### **Host Bus Adapter**

Also known as a SCSI adapter or a SCSI host bus adapter. Circuit, card, or device that translates between a computer's "native" bus architecture and the SCSI specified bus architecture.

### **Hot Spare**

In some RAID subsystems, an extra drive that is fully spun up but will be used only if one of the other drives fails.

### **Hot-Swappable Drive**

A drive in a canister, shuttle or carrier that can be removed and plugged in while the system is running.

### **Hot-Swappable Power Supply**

Hot swap capability allows you to swap out the inoperable power supply with an operable spare while the system continues to run. Hot swappable power supplies should be used in conjunction with uninterrupted power supplies and power conditioners to ensure a continuous flow of power during swaps.

### **Housing Unit**

The rigid enclosure that contains the mechanism and controller. It is the foundation to which all other parts are connected. It needs to be rigid so that components within the drive are not hurt on installation or during operation. Most housing units are made from aluminum alloys.

### **HPPI**

High Performance Parallel Interface. This is another name for IPI-3. It is a parallel interface enabling 800 or 1,600 Mb/s data transfers over 32 or 64 twisted-pair copper wires, or on fibre-optic cable. Fibre cabling can be up to 10 kilometers in length, while the other cabling can be up to 36 meters in length. Developed out of work at the Los Alamos National Lab, it is intended for supercomputing applications. It allows multiple block transfers via a single command execution, but can transfer data in only one direction at a time.

### **HSM**

Hierarchical Storage Management. HSM is a concept that creates a hierarchy—a layered structure—of your storage capacity. At the top of this hierarchy is your fastest-but most expensive-storage device. At the bottom, your slowest, least expensive device.

### **IC**

See Integrated Circuit.

### **IDE**

Integrated Drive Electronics or Intelligent Drive Electronics. IDE incorporates controller hardware onto the disk drive, which results in significant parts reduction and cost

savings. IDE combines the physical and electrical protocols of ST-506 with the speed of ESDI. IDE drives can be “directly” plugged into a computer’s expansion bus.

## **IEEE**

Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers. An ANSI-accredited body of scientists and engineers that promotes standardization and provides expertise to ANSI on matters relating to electrical and electronic development.

## **Impedance**

The total opposition offered by a component or circuit to the flow of an alternating or varying current.

## **Incremental Backup**

Creating data security through duplication. With an incremental backup, a software utility reads whatever information has been added to the hard drive during that work session and copies it to a secondary storage medium.

## **Incremental Recording**

A recording method in which data can be added to a CD-R disc in segments. There may be, but does not have to be, interruptions in the data flow between segments. Data can be added using track-at-once (TAO) or packet writing and single session or multisession recording. These discs are Orange Book compliant.

## **Inductive Head**

A read/write head that consists of an iron core with 8 to 30 coil turns of wire banded around it. There is a gap in the core through which a magnetic field passes. The field is induced by

the coil of wires wrapped around the iron core, depending on the direction current is flowing in the coil.

## **Initialization**

The process of laying down the directory information that the operating system needs to locate files and folders. Usually destroys only directory information, not the actual data, so that recovery programs can still recover files from initialized disks.

## **Initiator**

A SCSI device, usually the computer—or more specifically its SCSI chip—capable of initiating an operation. In multiple-host systems initiators (hosts) may also be targets.

## **Input/Output (I/O)**

The communication flow between the Mac and its peripherals.

## **Inside Mac IV and V**

Technical manuals provided by Apple. Also used to denote partitioning schemes.

## **Integrated Circuits, or Chips**

An IC performs a host of electronic functions. One IC replaces many discrete transistors. Because it resides on a silicon chip, these ICs are referred to as “chips.”

## **Intelligent**

Refers to a device capable of processing commands on its own.

## **Interface**

The go-between that provides a common basis for communication

between two otherwise incompatible devices.

### **Interleaving**

The ordering of sectors on a track so that the next sector (in the file being read or written) arrives at the read/write head just as the computer is ready to access it. (See Latency.)

### **INT13 BIOS**

The standard software interface method for accessing a PC hard disk.

### **Intelligent Peripheral Interface**

The successor to the block multiplexer channel, or OEM channel, popularized by IBM in the 1960s. It offers parallel 16-bit data transfer, rather than OEM's eight-bit transfer, and can be split into two eight-bit buses to work like the OEM channel. IPI's dual ports allow from one to eight devices to be connected on one port, and from two to 16 in pairs using both ports. It is largely limited to the mainframe world, typically on 8- and 14-inch drives. It offers read-ahead capability and is extremely fast for large-data transfers.

### **Interoperability**

Connecting different devices to operate together as part of a system.

### **Interrupt**

A momentary suspension of processing caused by a deliberate instruction to the microprocessor.

### **Intersector Gap**

Data on a track sector that separates the preceding sector from the next sector.

### **Intrasector Gap**

Data on a track sector that separates the sector ID information from the data track. Data follows this gap.

### **I/O**

Input/Output. Refers to the sending and receiving of data from the CPU to attached peripherals, such as CD-ROM and external hard disk drives.

### **IPI**

See Intelligent Peripheral Interface.

### **IRQ**

Interrupt Request. Refers to the lines in a computer that carry hardware interrupt signals to the processor on a personal computer.

### **ISA**

Industry Standard Architecture. An expansion bus introduced with the original IBM PC and IBM PC XT in the early 80s.

### **Isochronous**

Having the capability of dedicating a fixed slice of bandwidth to a particular peripheral.

### **ISO 9660**

ISO is an acronym for the International Standards Organization. ISO 9660 is an established international standard file structure for CD-ROM discs adopted by ISO.

### **Jukebox**

A large chassis that contains multiple optical cartridges, tapes, or CD-ROM discs that get shuffled around by a mechanical device.

**Jumper**

A small plastic-covered metal connector used to connect pairs of pins on a circuit board. Jumpers are used to set device parameters, such as the SCSI ID.

**KB/s**

Kilobytes per second.

**Kb/s**

Kilobits per second.

**Kerr Effect**

The Kerr effect states that when a polarized light is reflected off a metal surface in a magnetic field, the polarity of the light is rotated clockwise or counterclockwise, depending on the field's polarity. The drive detects this rotation and interprets it as data.

**Kilobit (Kb)**

One thousand bits (actually 1024 bits).

**Kilobyte (KB)**

One thousand bytes (actually 1024 bytes).

**Landing Zone**

A data-free "safe" area on a disk, set aside for parking the drive head.

**Laptop**

A small, portable personal computer.

**Laser Diode**

A laser that generates an infrared or visible-light beam.

**Latency**

The time, in milliseconds, it takes for the spinning platter to bring around the desired sector to where the read/write head can access it. Does not include head positioning time. It is one of the factors of access time.

**LBA**

See Logical Block Address.

**Level 2 Cache**

Cache that is external to the CPU.

**LIMM DOW**

Light intensity modulation method direct over-write. In optical drives, LIMM DOW allows data to be written in a single pass.

**Logical Block**

Data is grouped in standard sizes known as logical blocks. 512-, 1,024-, and 2,048-byte blocks are common.

**Logical Unit Number (LUN)**

The numerical representation of the peripheral's address. A SCSI device's address can have up to seven LUNs.

**Logical Unit**

A physical or virtual device that is addressable as a target.

**Logical**

An abstract representation of something that physically exists.

**Loop Architecture**

An architecture geared towards connecting large-scale host computers to storage subsystems and network hubs.

In a loop architecture, the preferred approach is to attach disk drives directly to a backplane, rather than daisy-chaining them together.

### **Low-Level Formatting**

The electronic equivalent of a detailed street map, written on a hard disk. Electronic markings are made on the disk that tell the controller the locations of cylinder/head/sector addresses, servo tracking information and data start/stop points.

### **Low-Level Interface**

Specifications for the wiring, electrical operations and physical connections in an interface standard.

### **LUN**

See Logical Unit Number.

### **Magnetic Domain**

The area on a platter that contains one bit of data.

### **Magnetic Flux**

The magnetic exchange between the read/write head and the platter, which allows the head to write and read data.

### **Magneto-Optical Drive**

Devices that use a high-powered laser to write to a disc and a low-powered laser, which does not heat the disc significantly, to read a disc.

### **Magneto-Resistive Head**

Thin conductive strips that detect magnetic domain transitions by measuring magnetic effects on the resistive element within the head.

This element changes its resistance as its angle of magnetization changes.

### **Mainframe**

A large and fast central computer. The term “mainframe” originally referred to the metal framework that housed the computer circuits, but it came to mean the entire computer. Typically, a mainframe is defined by function rather than by size. It describes a computer that handles all of an organization’s processing needs.

### **Master**

When two devices or systems are in such a relationship that one of them has control over the other:

- The controlling device is the master.
- The controlled device is the slave.

### **MB/s**

Megabytes per second. Equal to 8 Megabits per second.

### **Mb/s**

Megabits per second. Equal to 1/8 or 0.125 Megabytes per second.

### **MCA**

See MicroChannel Architecture.

### **MCM**

See Multichip-Module.

### **Mean Time Between Failures**

A vendor-supplied rating that indicates the longevity of a drive. Often referred to by its initials MTBF.

**Mean Time to Repair**

Amount of time it takes a trained repairman to repair a device.

**Media**

In hard disks, another term for the platter, but more specifically the magnetic coating that covers the platter. The surface of the platter that holds the data.

Media is also the term used for the recording surface of all drive technologies, such as MO, CD-R and Phase Change Optical.

**Megabit**

One thousand kilobits (actually, 1024 Kb). Abbreviated as Mb.

**Megabyte**

One thousand kilobytes (actually, 1024 KB). Abbreviated as MB.

**Message-In/Out Phase**

A SCSI bus phase. During the Message-In Phase, the target may request to send a message to the initiator.

The Message-Out Phase is invoked by the target only in response to an Attention condition generated by the initiator. It can be generated at any time.

**Metallurgy**

The science that deals with extracting metals from their ores and making useful objects from them.

**MFM**

See Modified Frequency Modulation.

**MicroChannel Architecture**

An IBM-designed proprietary architecture, developed in 1980 to improve upon and replace the aging ISA bus.

**Microcontroller**

A chip that controls input/output channels.

**Micron**

A unit of length equal to one-millionth of a meter ( $10^{-6}$ ).

**Microvolt**

One-millionth of a volt ( $10^{-6}$ ).

**Millisecond (ms)**

One-thousandth of a second. In computing, this measurement is often used to specify the access time of a hard disk drive.

**Miniport Driver**

A hardware-specific translation layer that abstracts the I/O architecture of the host adapter. It initializes and configures the adapter, starts I/O, verifies the adapter state, and resets the SCSI bus.

**MIPS**

Million Instructions Per Second. A measurement of the speed of execution of a computer's CPU.

**Mirrored Cache**

A method of using duplicate caches in which a mirror image of the first cache is stored in the second, providing 100 percent duplication. If the first cache fails, the second one takes over in a way that is transparent to the user.

## Mirroring

Writing the same data to two drives simultaneously. (See RAID.)

## Mode Page

A device's behavior, or "mode," is determined by its operating parameters. These mode parameters are grouped into related pages that are numbered for easy reference. A mode page is the minimum unit that can be specified by the Mode Select or Mode Sense Command. A page consists of multiple parameters, which must be specified whenever a page is invoked.

## Mode Parameter List

A list that specifies device parameters and is sent by the initiator to the drive during the Data Out Phase. The Mode Parameter list contains:

- a header
- zero or more Block Descriptors
- mode pages

## Modified Frequency Modulation

Timing mechanisms correlate a platter's constant speed with the distance traveled to yield a precise calculation of the head's position over the platter.

Modified Frequency Modulation is where timing information is encoded onto its own track. During the original low-level formatting process of an MFM drive, the synchronization bytes—magnetic data that marks location and time—are added. MFM is also known as double-density recording because it results in twice as much data storage as the original FM.

## Motherboard

The primary circuit board in a computer. It contains such components as expansion slots, the CPU, memory and device controllers.

## Mount

To appear as a drive letter on PCs or on the Desktop on Macintoshes.

## Move16

An instruction inherent in model 68000 microprocessors that moves 16 bytes very quickly.

## MPEG

Motion Picture Experts Group, and the algorithms endorsed by that group. Both MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 provide configurable compression for video data. They allow content producers to control the amount of data required by the video portion of their media, sacrificing visual quality for greater compression. MPEG-2 offers better quality than MPEG-1. It allows both backward and forward motion video, but results in larger file sizes.

## MTBF

See Mean Time Between Failures.

## MTTR

See Mean Time To Repair.

## Multichip Module

A small, high-speed, high-density, multi-function, multi-layer chip designed to provide the greatest amount of processing in the smallest amount of space.

### Multiple-Host System

A system that has more than one computer connected to the SCSI bus.

### Multisession Recording

A CD made with at least two sessions, where the boundary between the sessions also forms a boundary between tracks. Each session is recorded as a contiguous, spiraling string of data, one session following the other. The boundary between the lead-out of one session and the lead-in of the next is a small bit of smooth, unmarred CD surface.

### Multivolume/Multisession Recording

A format where each session on a disc appears as a separate volume of data.

- On a PC, different volumes can be displayed as different drive letters.
- On a Mac, different volumes can be displayed as different icons.

This is the most common type of multisession disc.

### MUNI Chip

Macintosh Universal NuBus Interface. This bus offered the following features:

- support for the full range of NuBus master/slave transactions with single or block moves
- support for the faster data transfer rates to and from the CPU bus
- support for NuBus '90 data transfers between cards at a clock rate of 20 MHz
- provision of first-in, first-out (FIFO) data buffering between the CPU bus and accessory cards

### Negate

To withdraw a control signal or indicate its absence.

### Network Server

A computer attached to a network that stores applications, databases, data, and other tools and information used in common by people connected to the network. A server's multiple-access capability is made possible through software that contains multitasking and multi-user support.

### Nibble

A half-byte, or four bits, of data.

### Noise

Reflected or distorted signals or voltages on the bus.

### Nonproprietary

Refers to a device that implements shared or open technology and can communicate with other devices using the same technology. (See Proprietary.)

### Nonproprietary Standard

An open standard that is not owned by any enterprise and is therefore not subject to licensing fees by developers who create products to that standard.

### Nonvolatile

Content, such as data or memory, that is retained after power is removed.

### Notch

Each section or a range of the logical unit with a different number of blocks per cylinder. Also known as a zone.



## Notebook

A small, portable computer that typically weighs six pounds or less. A notebook is usually smaller than a laptop.

## ns

See nanosecond.

## NuBus

A Macintosh expansion bus whose technology was originally developed by MIT in the 1970s and enlarged upon by IEEE in the mid-1980s. NuBus boards support multiple processors and bus mastering and are self-configuring (eliminating the need to set board parameters with DIP switches).

NuBus accelerates system performance and enables you to expand your system by adding cabling ports.

## NuBus Block Mode Data Transfer

Allows large blocks of data to be transferred quickly before releasing the bus, with only one arbitration for the bus.

## OEM

Original Equipment Manufacturer. OEM applies to a product that is manufactured by one enterprise then sold to another, where it is bundled and sold with the purchasing enterprise's own products.

## Offset

The Request/Acknowledge offset sets the maximum number of Request signals that may be sent before a corresponding Acknowledge signal is received.

## One-Third Height

A housing unit that is 1-inch high. It houses 2.5- and 3.5-inch form factor drives.

## On-Going Reliability Test

One of the techniques manufacturers use to produce MTBF ratings. Manufacturer's randomly select drives at the plant and test them. ORT is useful in combination with combined life expectancy and FRR to determine MTBF ratings on older drives.

## Opcode

The first byte of a command. The first three bits encode the command group (6-byte, 10-byte, 12-byte, vendor-unique and reserved), and the next five encode the command.

## Open Boot

See Open Firmware.

## Open Firmware

Open Firmware was originally developed as Open Boot by Sun Microsystems. It debuted in 1988 with the original Sun SparcStation workstation. It provides a way of booting a computer system that is independent of both operating system and processor.

## ORT

See On-Going Reliability Test.

## Overhead

The incidental command processing time that is necessary to complete a task.

### **Packet Writing**

A method of writing to a compact disc. A packet is a logical group of data. A disc can hold up to 9,500 packets, space permitting.

### **Paddle Card**

A nickname for an IDE host adapter card.

### **Palmtop**

A very small computer, conceivably small enough to fit in the palm of a hand. Usually their storage capacity is minimal, and applications are built in.

### **Pancake Motor**

A brushless, direct-drive (no gears or belts), direct-current (DC) electric motor that drives the spindle in an HDA. This model resides below the spindle and is called a pancake motor because of its flat shape.

### **Parallel Architecture**

In a parallel architecture each byte (eight bits) is sent simultaneously using separate lines.

### **Parallel Backplane Bus**

A backplane with connectors for peripherals that conduct parallel, 8-bit data transfers.

### **Parallel Data Transfer**

Data bits travel simultaneously along eight parallel wires in the cable. (Also see Serial Data Transfer.)

### **Parallel Disk Array**

Another way of referring to RAID level 3. RAID level 3 is an array of disk drives that transfer data in

parallel, while one redundant drive functions as the parity check disk.

### **Parallel Port**

A connector port that allows all eight bits of a byte to be transferred at once.

### **Parameter**

Configuration values for the operation of a logical unit. Parameters are sent across the bus in blocks called pages. Some pages pertain to all devices, while some are only for specific classes.

### **Parameter RAM**

A LUN has three copies of its parameters: the current, the default and the saved. The current parameters are those with which the device is currently functioning. These reside in RAM. This is the parameter RAM.

### **Parity**

A method of checking the accuracy of binary numbers. SCSI uses odd parity, which means that the sum of all ones in a number plus its parity bit will always be odd.

### **Parity Bit**

An extra bit, added to a number, used for checking the accuracy of binary numbers.

### **Parity Check Disk**

A disk in an array used exclusively for storing parity information.

### **Partial Response Maximum Likelihood**

A technique used by a read/write head in a drive mechanism for detecting data. Instead of spacing out

analog peaks as in peak detection, digital filtering is used to compensate for signal overlap. After filtering, the scheme identifies what are the likeliest sequence of data bits written to the media.

### **Partition**

A portion of a storage area allocated to a particular use or user.

### **Partition Map**

A map detailing the layout of the medium, used by the operating system and drivers to find partition locations.

Follows the Driver Descriptor Block (block 0) on a formatted disk and contains the following information about all partitions on the disk:

- name of the partition
- processor type
- type of partition
- partition status
- partition size
- more

Each partition's information occupies one block in the partition map. The partition map can vary in size from a few to hundreds of blocks. After the partition map come the partitions in sequence.

### **Partition Table**

Part of the Master Boot Block. Partition tables store information on the location, starting point, ending point and size of each partition on a hard disk.

### **Passive Backplane**

A board that exists merely to pass signals; no microprocessing takes place.

### **PBC**

See Port Bypass Circuit.

### **PCI**

Peripheral Component Interconnect. A system standard that defines a high performance interconnection method between plug-in expansion cards, integrated I/O controller chips and a computer's main processing and memory systems. It was originally designed by Intel in the early 1990's as an alternative to other proposed peripheral expansion buses.

### **PCMCIA**

Personal Computer Memory Card International Association. A joint effort of various special interest groups aimed at setting a standard for memory cards used in PCs. PCMCIA cards add improved computer memory capacity or enhance connectivity to external networks and services.

### **Peak Detection**

Data is detected in hard drives typically with a technique known as peak detection. It involves detecting data at high speeds, using a data-encoding method that spaces the signal during reads. The analog detection circuits can then scan each peak in series.

### **Peer-to-Peer Interface**

An interface in which all devices on a bus are treated as equals in terms of their capability to communicate directly with other devices on the bus. They share the processing and control of the exchange.

## Peripheral

An optional input/output device that connects to a computer's CPU. Typical peripherals include mass-storage devices, CD-ROM drives, printers and modems.

## Peripheral Interface Cable

A cable that makes it possible to daisy chain SCSI devices, one after the other, up to a total of seven, not including the computer.

This cable has two (male-male) 50-pin connectors. It is referred to as a 50-50 cable.

## Personal Digital Assistant (PDA)

Hand-held electronic computerized devices that assist a user to become better organized in terms of administrative and telecommunications tasks. Apple's first PDA was the Newton.

## PFA

See Predictive Failure Analysis.

## Phase Change Optical Drive

A drive that records by using a laser to change the physical nature of the disk from amorphous to crystalline. Phase change drives write in one pass. MO drives write in two.

## Phthalocyanine

One of the two types of dyes used in the production of CD-R discs. On a CD-R disc, rather than a physical pit or depression in the groove, a dye is used to change the reflection of the laser in the same way that a pit would. This dye is activated by a laser beam of a somewhat higher intensity than that used to read data. The use of this dye allows discs created by a

laser to be just as readable on conventional CD readers as discs created by a stamper.

See also Cyanine.

## Physical Path

The channel taken by SCSI communications.

## PIO

See Polled In/Out.

## Platter

The rigid disk that is used for storing memory on hard disk drives.

## Plug-and-Play Specification

Created by Intel, Microsoft and Compaq to make it easier to add adapter boards into PCs. It was primarily designed to make the allocation of interrupt, DMA and I/O port addresses automatic when using ISA-based cards. (Previously you had to manually adjust jumpers.) It also mandated the need for self-resetting terminator power fuses and for a special SCSI icon on the back of the adapter. To be implemented, the Plug-and-Play standard required additions to the computer BIOS.

## Pointer

Information in the Command Descriptor Block that tracks the execution of command information. There are two types of pointers to keep track of command, status, and data transfers:

- current (or active)
- saved

### **Polled I/O (PIO)**

The transfer protocol employed by IDE, where data transfers are handled by a processor. PIO transfers are “blind” because there is no synchronizing handshaking.

### **Polling Method**

See Normal Mode.

### **Port**

A connector on a computer or peripheral device used for sending and receiving data (I/O).

### **Port Bypass Circuit**

In Fibre Channel Architecture, the logic that enables devices to be removed or inserted without disrupting the operation of the loop. In addition, the PBC logic can take drives off-line or bring them back on-line by sending a command to any device to remove it from loop operation or reinstall it onto the loop.

### **POST**

Power On Self-Test. The sequence of diagnostic checks that a device runs on itself as it starts up.

### **Power Management**

An energy-saving feature. It is the ability of a system to recognize when it has been inactive for a (usually) user-specified amount of time, and consequently to spin down.

### **Power Spike**

A momentary, sharp surge in voltage.

### **Power Supply**

Converts alternating current (AC) coming through the power cord into

direct current (DC) that most computers' integrated circuits require. Regulates and delivers voltages at designated levels to specific locations. The power supply contains a variety of filters that smooth voltage irregularities and provide an electrically clean, consistent power source.

### **PRAM**

See Parameter RAM.

### **Predictive Failure Analysis**

A technique for predicting when a drive will die. PFA records and reports suspicious levels of activity, such as many recoverable errors, many retries or slowing performance.

### **Prefetch**

Similar to buffering, except prefetching can read ahead to the next track. These larger reads get more data ready for the CPU's next request, thus speeding up access time.

### **Primary Partition**

The first active partition on the disk. Boot files are always stored on a primary partition. On any disk there can be only four primary partitions. Older DOS versions could support primary partitions of up to 32 MB.

### **PRML**

See Partial Response Maximum Likelihood.

### **Proprietary**

Vendor-unique technology or devices that are incompatible with other products in the industry.

## Protocol

A strict set of rules that govern the exchange of information between computer devices.

## Pseudo-DMA Mode

Pseudo-Direct Memory Access Mode. An operating mode in which the Macintosh SCSI chip oversees data transfer, letting the CPU tend to other tasks. This is also known as the Blind Data Transfer method because the CPU checks in just once, before a block of data is transferred, and then turns things over to the SCSI chip. Blind transfers are much quicker than the polling method because larger chunks of information—blocks—as opposed to a byte—are transferred at a time.

## Punch Card

A card punched with holes that, along with the lack of holes, represented binary data.

## QIC Tape Drive

A quarter-inch tape drive that uses magnetic recording tape to store data in a fashion similar to audio tape recorders, except the information is stored in digital form.

## RAB

RAID Advisory Board. An association of suppliers and consumers of RAID-related products and other organizations with an interest in RAID technology. The goal of the RAID Advisory Board is to foster an orderly development of RAID technology and to introduce RAID-related products into the marketplace.

## RAID

Redundant Array of Independent Disks. A typical RAID unit contains a set of disks that appear to the user as one large storage volume. It is unlike a single drive in that it provides improved system performance delivered in the form of either dramatically increased data transfer speeds, various levels of data security, or both.

## RAID Controller

A microprocessor that contains the logic and command control to oversee the creation and maintenance of a RAID architecture.

## RAM (Random Access Memory)

Temporary memory usually found on single in-line memory modules (SIMMs) on the motherboard of the computer. RAM is lost when power is turned off.

## RAM Buffer

Space allocated in RAM for temporary storage. Large-capacity RAM buffers are useful in CD recording to prevent data underrun.

## RAM Chip

Random Access Memory chips whose storage capacities are determined by their number of built-in electronic switches.

## Read-Ahead Cache

A variant of the read cache, where an entire track of data is read and stored in cache when a single sector of that track is requested. This allows all further transfers within the track to come from cache.

## Read Caching

With read caching, each time a data request is made, a cache algorithm checks to see if it's in RAM cache. If the data is in RAM cache, it is returned right away. If the data is not in RAM cache, it is read from disk, copied to the cache, and transferred to the host. Read data remains in cache until the cache is full. When it is full, there are different methods of selecting which data should be replaced with new data, including:

- a random entry
- the least recently used
- the oldest entry

## Read/Write Channel

A group of circuits that transfers the data off the platter. These circuits read the sector header information to ensure that the data being read or written is the data that is desired. They also amplify signals to ensure they are strong enough to record information. They must be extremely fast to handle the transitions between looking at sector information and reading or writing the data into the sector in the same rotation. Read/write channels are often the limiting factor in drive performance.

## Read/Write Head

The disk drive's electromagnet, directed by the controller, that creates and reads magnetic information on the surface of the platters.

## Real Estate

The limited, and therefore extremely valuable, space on a hard disk platter, a controller board, an HBA, or inside an external device chassis.

## Red Book

Standard for normal audio CD. Refers to the specifications for the compact audio disc format developed by Philips and Sony. It is the standard format of commercial audio CDs. When a disc conforms to the Red Book standard, it will usually have "digital audio" printed beneath the disc logo.

## Reflection

A signal that reaches the end of the line and improperly flows back towards the device. This situation is remedied with proper termination.

## Register

A temporary hardware storage area that assists with the speedy transfer of arithmetic/logical operations within the CPU.

## Removable Cartridge Drive

One or more hard drive platters in a self-contained rigid case that can be removed from the main drive unit.

## Removable Drive

A hard drive and its entire head assembly in a rigid cartridge module that plugs into a "mother" unit. Also called a canister drive.

## Reselection Phase

In Arbitrating systems, the phase in which a target is reconnected to the bus after having disconnected to perform a time-consuming task.

A target device asserts the Reselection signal and its own ID number. It gets reconnected if the bus is free or the target's SCSI ID has a priority higher than another device that is asserting the Select signal.

### **Reset Condition**

A condition that kicks every device off the bus. It is caused when a SCSI device asserts the Reset control signal. A Reset condition may occur at any time, forcing the bus into the Bus Free Phase. Targets may go through a complete power on self test (POST) sequence and clear out pending or current operations.

### **Retries**

When you hear drives seeking the head hard (a hard seek usually makes a cha-chunking noise), it's probably because retries are occurring. Retries cause the head to seek back to track zero and retry the data access. A drive will try this multiple times. The number of times is defined in a SCSI drive's Mode Page 1 settings.

### **RISC**

Reduced instruction set computing. It is the successor of CISC, complex instruction set computing. A microprocessor commonly used in professional workstations as well as PCs. The RISC chip is 75 percent faster than CISC. It incorporates over a million transistors and processes data 64 bits at a time.

### **RLL**

See Run-Length Limited.

### **ROM (Read-Only Memory)**

Permanently stored data in the computer memory. Also refers to storage media that may only be read (not erased or written to.)

### **Rotational Position Locking (RPL)**

A drive feature that causes synchronization of drive spindles, so

the spinning of multiple disks can be coordinated. This is critical for faster transfer rates in disk arrays.

### **RPM**

Rotations per minute. In drives, the measurement of the rotational speed of the platter.

### **Run-Length Limited**

A data compression encoding scheme borrowed from the world of mainframe computers to increase a drive's storage capacity beyond MFM.

### **SAF-TE**

SCSI Accessed Fault-Tolerant Enclosures. A specification, started by Conner, for a standard method of communicating with fault-tolerant enclosures. It defined a set of SCSI commands used to check the status of fans, power supplies and temperature. A small computer with its own SCSI ID essentially monitors the enclosure and tells the computer how it's doing.

### **SASI**

Shugart Associates System Interface. The forerunner of SCSI. SASI was intended as a low-cost, peer-to-peer interface.

### **S-Bus**

Sun Microsystem's high-performance expansion bus for sparc-based workstations. The S-Bus runs data transfers at 70 MB/s or faster and offers I/O configurations that can sustain mainframe-like I/O rates. The S-Bus supports Fibre Channel Loop Architecture.



## **SCA**

Single Connector Attachment. A high-density connector that carries every type of signal passed along a SCSI bus, including SCSI ID, LED and spindle synchronization information.

## **SCAM**

SCSI Configured Auto-Magically. A protocol that allows a host adapter to set the SCSI ID number of devices on the SCSI bus, preventing ID conflicts, and to set termination automatically.

## **Scatter/Gather**

Refers to reading logically contiguous blocks of data from a disk and storing them at discontinuous host computer memory addresses (scatter) and writing data from discontinuous host computer memory addresses to consecutive logical block addresses on a disk (gather).

## **SCSI**

Small Computer Systems Interface. A standard interface via which computers and their peripherals communicate with each other.

## **SCSI BIOS Boot ROM**

Used to initialize the SCSI chip on startup and to support the transparent operation of the adapter under DOS through the standard INT13 BIOS interface.

## **SCSI Bus**

A facility, developed according to SCSI specifications, for transferring data between several devices located between two end points, with only one initiator and one target being able to communicate at a given time.

The SCSI bus provides high-speed, parallel data transmission and is typically used to connect hard disks, tape backup drives, scanners and printers to the host computer.

## **SCSI Disk Mode**

Allows an internal hard disk to be mounted and used as an external drive by another Macintosh.

## **SCSI Host Adapter**

Connects a SCSI controller to the I/O bus of the host. A host adapter may be integrated on the motherboard of the system, or it may be implemented as a separate board.

## **SCSI ID**

A device's unique address on the SCSI bus is referred to as its ID, or identification.

## **SCSI Manager**

The SCSI Manager is part of the Macintosh Operating System that provides the interface between a program such as a driver or formatter and the actual hardware SCSI port.

## **SCSI Messages**

Communication between the initiator and target for the purpose of interface management. A message can be sent in both directions: message-out from initiator to target, or message-in from target to initiator.

There are three types of message formats:

- single-byte
- two-byte
- extended (three-byte or longer)

## SCSI System Cable

Attaches the first SCSI device on the bus to the computer.

Macintosh versions have a male 25-pin connector to connect to the computer and a 50-pin connector to plug into the SCSI device. This cable is often referred to as a 25-50 cable.

PC versions have a male 50-pin high-density connector to connect to the SCSI host adapter, and a 50-pin connector to plug into the SCSI device.

## SCSI-SCSI Array Controller

A hardware-based disk array. The drives are connected to a RAID controller board installed inside the disk array chassis. The host computer recognizes the RAID controller board as the SCSI storage device, rather than the drives connected to it. Read and write commands sent from the computer are processed by the RAID controller board, which in turn sends the appropriate read and write commands to the drives.

## SCSI-2

SCSI-2 is an upgrade to the SCSI-1 standard that builds on the SCSI specification in the following ways:

- defines extensions to the SCSI-1 specification
- provides more complete standardization of SCSI-1 command sets
- describes the necessary mechanical, electrical, and functional qualities that will allow for interoperability of devices meeting the new standard

To meet these demands, SCSI-2 devices require more intelligence and firmware than their SCSI-1 counterparts.

## SCSI-3

SCSI-3's main target is extending SCSI-2's functionality so that it is suitable for much higher performance rates, while maintaining backward compatibility with present SCSI.

The SCSI-3 specification has numerous goals, including better cabling schemes for Fast and Wide SCSI. Some of these cabling schemes may be standardized before the SCSI-3 specification is released.

## Sector Skew

The sector offset from one platter to another in a hard drive.

## Sectors, Alternate

Sectors set aside to replace bad blocks. Also called "spares."

## Sectors

Sectors are the smallest subdivisions of tracks, and usually contain exactly 512 bytes of data.

## Sector Header

The first group of information fields in a sector format. The header is comprised of the following:

- a field for synchronizing the data separator
- the address field, which contains the cylinder, head, and sector numbers
- the cyclic redundancy code checksum, which is used to check whether the address was read properly

## Selection Phase

The bus phase in which an initiator selects a target device.

**Seek Time**

The time it takes the read/write head to move back and forth in search of the appropriate track. Seek time does not include latency or command overhead. (See Access Time.)

**Semiconductor**

An element or compound whose normal conductivity is between an insulator and a conductor, but whose resistance to an electrical current can vary depending upon its level of impurities.

**Sense Data**

Sense data is data returned by the Request Sense command. This data is used to diagnose the error that occurred on the preceding command.

**Sense Key**

Error codes contained in sense data that indicate a particular classification of error.

**Sense Request**

This command retrieves sense data.

**Sequential Access Device**

Any device that must pass through unwanted blocks of data to access the targeted block, and can only access one block at a time. For example, a tape drive is a sequential access device.

**Sequential Test**

A test that is useful for finding media errors.

**Serial Architecture**

In a serial architecture, data is transmitted one bit at a time.

**Serial Data Transfer**

Data bits travel single-file along one wire in the cable.

**Serial Port**

A port that passes along data in sequence, one bit at a time, as opposed to a parallel port, which passes data along in groups of eight, sixteen, or thirty-two.

**Serial Storage Architecture**

A powerful high-speed serial interface designed to connect high-capacity data storage devices, subsystems, servers and workstations. Only four signal wires are required, compared to 68 for the closest SCSI equivalent. SSA interfaces require no address switches and no discrete terminators.

**Server**

See Network Server.

**Servo**

Information on a disk used for guiding the head's positioning over data.

See also Voice Coil Actuator.

**Servo Positioning Platter**

A disk dedicated exclusively to storing and maintaining servo positioning information that guides drive heads to accurate positions over requested data.

**Session**

A group of data containing a Lead In area, a Data area and a Lead Out area.

A session can be recorded in one sitting or incrementally, depending on the formatting software's capability. Each session carries about 15 MB of overhead for the Lead In and Lead Out areas.

On a disc, a session is one contiguous spiraling string of data. There may be more than one session on a disc.

### **Shock Rating**

A rating used to judge the ruggedness of a drive.

### **Short Stroking**

Using only half of a higher-capacity drive to achieve faster seek times by requiring the drive to seek across only half the platter.

### **Signal Noise**

Unwanted electrical signals that interfere with a communications channel. These can come from many sources, including fluorescent lights, electric motors, and electric or magnetic fields.

### **Signal Resonance**

Interference with a communications signal by another signal oscillating at the same frequency. This disturbs signal integrity, making it difficult for the CPU to interpret commands and messages.

### **SIM**

SCSI Interface Module. Part of the CAM specification. The SIM function processes SCSI requests and manages the hardware-independent interface to the HBA.

SIM services include:

- monitor I/O behavior and perform error recovery if needed

- manage data transfer hardware, such as DMA circuitry
- queue multiple operations for single or multiple LUNs, "freezing" the queuing of requests as necessary to perform queue recovery
- post results back to the initiating device driver
- manage the selection, disconnection, reconnection, and data pointers of the SCSI HBA protocol

### **Single Connector Attachment**

See SCA.

### **Single-Ended**

An electrical signal configuration where information is sent through one wire in a cable. The information is interpreted by the change in the voltage of the signal. Single-ended interfaces allow cable lengths of up to 6 meters.

Compare with differential.

### **Single-Session Recording**

In CD recording, where the data is written to disc in one session.

### **Slave**

When two devices or systems are in such a relationship that one of them has control over the other:

- The controlling device is the master.
- The controlled device is the slave.

### **SLED**

Single Large Expensive Drives. An alternative to RAID.

### **Sleep Mode**

A safety feature available on some computer models that parks the drive head after a certain period of inactivity.

### **Slew-Rate Control**

Used to control rise/fall times of signals.

### **Slider**

A rigid block of material upon which a disk head is mounted. It provides lift, stability and mechanical strength to the head assembly.

### **SMART**

Self-Monitoring, Analysis and Reporting Technology. SMART helps protect user data from predictable degradation in drive performance.

### **SMD-X**

Storage Module Device (SMD-E and SMD-H). Until SCSI's rise to prominence, SMD was the preferred interface for drives used with high-end server applications.

### **Soft Reset**

The Reset condition kicks every device off the bus. It is caused when a SCSI device asserts the Reset control signal. The Soft Reset option:

- tries to complete commands that were in process
- holds on to all SCSI device reservations
- maintains the SCSI device operating mode

The Soft Reset option has the advantage of allowing the initiator to reset the bus without affecting other initiators in a multiple-host system.

Compare with Hard Reset.

### **Software-Based Disk Array**

A RAID configuration that is created and maintained through software.

### **Software Disk Cache**

A cache that resides in the CPU's RAM. It is used for storing the most frequently accessed disk information. A software disk cache speeds data retrieval but limits the amount of RAM available for the program itself. It is usually configurable. Typically it can be enabled/disabled and adjusted in size. It also can be increased through the installation of additional memory.

### **Spacial Re-Use**

A function provided in Serial Storage Architecture that allows data to be transferred concurrently at high speeds between many pairs of serially connected peripherals, without the need to route the data through the processor.

### **Spindle**

The shaft that platters are mounted on.

### **Spindle Synchronization**

In an array of disk drives, a feature that ensures all spindles are spinning in unison and at the same rate of speed. Each platter of each drive will be in precisely the right position relative to the other drives. This nearly eliminates latency, because the head on drive B will be over the appropriate sector of its platter just as the head on drive A finishes reading from or writing to the appropriate sector on its platter.

## **Sputtering**

One of the techniques used to apply the reflective metal layer to CD media or the magnetic material to a hard disk or floppy diskette. The substrate disc is suspended in a vacuum along with a mass of the material to be deposited. This mass is bombarded with an ion stream, which dislodges atoms. The atoms are attracted and cling to the substrate, resulting in a thin, consistent metallic coating.

## **SSA**

See Serial Storage Architecture.

## **SSA IA**

Serial Storage Architecture Industry Association. It was formed in 1995 to promote the acceptance of the SSA standard within the industry. Its membership includes more than 25 manufacturers of systems and peripheral products.

## **Stepper Motor**

An older model of head actuator that moves the head in discrete steps. It is a type of rotational pivot used in a floppy drive. It operates somewhat like a car's transmission, converting an incremental rotary movement into linear travel.

## **ST-506**

In 1983, Al Shugart's Seagate Technologies introduced the ST-506 as a 5.25-inch, 5 MB hard drive implemented on the IBM XT. It became the most popular of the low-capacity MFM drives.

## **ST-412**

Seagate's successor drive to the ST-506. It provided 12 MB of capacity.

## **Stamping**

In CD production, manufacturing data into a disc (as opposed to writing data to a writable disc).

## **Status Phase**

A Bus Phase in which the target sends a byte of information to the initiator that indicates the success or failure of a command (or a series of linked commands).

The Status Phase is critical for error detection and defect management.

## **Step Pulse**

A drive feature that moves the head one track over, and speeds access time by quickly positioning the head over the correct track.

## **Stiction**

Short for static friction. It happens when the heads of the drive are stuck to the platters of the drive. When you try to power up the drive, the heads cannot break free. Stiction is usually caused by improper lubricants on the drive platter.

## **Storage Peripherals**

Devices attached to the host computer with cables that store user data.

## **Striping**

See Data Striping.

## **Stub**

A small length of a cable with connectors. It is used for connecting

an internal device, such as a hard drive, to the internal SCSI port.

### **Subsystem**

A subset of the entire computer system. A subsystem can include drive arrays and controllers on add-in boards that relieve the CPU of some of its tasks.

### **Surge Suppressor**

An intermediating strip of electrical outlets that regulates the flow of power to a system, filtering out power surges and preventing costly damage to system components.

### **Sustained Data Transfer Rate**

The average data transfer rate over time. It includes burst from the cache (optimal) and cross-cylinder accesses (suboptimal).

### **Synchronization**

Causing to agree exactly in time or rate.

### **Synchronization Bytes**

Magnetic data that marks location and time on a disk platter. These bytes are added during the original low-level formatting process of an MFM drive.

### **Tagged Command Queuing**

Part of the SCSI-2 specification, Tagged Command Queuing allows each LUN to queue up to 256 I/O processes per initiator. This frees the initiator from having to ask for a new command each time it finishes an operation.

### **TAO**

See Track-at-Once.

### **Tape Drive**

A type of storage, similar to an audio tape recorder, that stores data on a magnetic tape. Tape drives are usually used for data back-up.

### **Target**

A SCSI device, usually the peripheral, that carries out the initiator's request.

### **TB**

See Terabyte.

### **T-Cal**

See Thermal Recalibration.

### **Terabyte**

A value equal to  $10^{12}$  bytes. Written out 1,000,000,000,000 bytes.

### **Termination**

Electrical connection at each end of the SCSI bus composed of a set of resistors or other components. It is used to provide closure to the bus and reduce reflections or ringing.

Terminators for single-ended and differential interfaces are different and are not interchangeable.

### **Termination Power**

The power supplied to a bus terminator.

### **Thermal Recalibration**

The process of recalculating the positions of data on a hard disk platter as those positions shift due to the platter's expansion under the heat of operation.

**TIB**

See Transfer Information Block.

**Time-Out**

SCSI devices operate under a definable time period, beyond which they will “time-out” and release the bus.

**Timing Mechanism**

A mechanism that correlates a platter’s constant speed with the distance traveled, yielding a precise calculation of the head’s position over the platter.

**TPI**

Tracks per inch.

**TPWR**

See Termination Power.

**Track**

Invisible “grooves,” in the form of concentric circles that store data on a platter. On a hard disk, each track is a single line of magnetic domains. On a CD-ROM disc, each track is a line of pits and lands.

**Track Buffering**

When data is requested from a particular sector, the controller will read the entire track and store it in its RAM.

**Track-at-Once**

A method of writing to a CD where the user can copy one track of data at a time. Up to—but no more than—99 tracks of data can be stored on a disc, space permitting. TAO recording can be used with either single-session or multisession recording. The finalized

disc is 100 percent backward compatible with CD-ROM drives.

**Track-to-Track Seek Time**

The time it takes a drive head to move from one track to another. This usually falls in the 2 ms range.

**Transfer Information Block**

A block of information about a pending data transfer, used to prevent data transfer hiccups when the size of the transfer outruns the size of the track buffer.

**Transformer**

A device used to transfer electric energy from one circuit to another.

**Transistor**

A digital, solid-state miniaturized circuit used to modulate or control the flow of an electric current.

**Transparent**

Activity that takes place in the background, making all but the result invisible to a user.

**Trap**

A command trigger that causes automatic transfer of control to a trap-handler program.

**Travan**

A subset of the mini-cartridge format QIC (quarter-inch cartridge). At .315 inches, Travan is slightly wider than standard QIC. It allows a 750 foot tape length, which translates to larger capacity—up to 10 GB for proposed TR-5—and data transfer rates up to 1.2 MB/s.



**UDF**

See Universal Disk Format.

**Ultra SCSI**

This is the same as Fast-20 SCSI. It delivers twice the performance of regular SCSI.

See also Fast SCSI.

**Uninterruptible Power Supply**

An intermediary device connected to a power source and a computer. When there is a power failure, the UPS uses a battery and power circuits to produce the voltage required to keep the computer running. Depending upon the size of the battery and the power requirements of the computer, a UPS can power a computer anywhere from a few minutes to several hours.

**Universal Disk Format**

An ISO 13346 standard for formatting data on disks. This standard has been spearheaded by the Optical Storage Technology Association (OSTA). It would allow disks to be read/written on any platform, ensuring full data interchange.

**Universal Serial Bus**

A 12 Mb/s interface supporting up to 63 peripheral devices. USB is intended to support low-speed peripherals such as keyboards and pointing devices, and is not suitable for mass storage or video applications. USB supports automatic configuration (“plug-and-play”) and hot-plugging.

**UPS**

See Uninterruptible Power Supply.

**USB**

See Universal Serial Bus.

**Vapor Deposition**

A technique for applying a chrome-like covering onto high-speed, high-capacity hard drives.

**Variable Zone Recording**

A method of encoding that allows the outer tracks of the platter to hold more sectors than the inner tracks. Similar to notch.

**Vendor-Unique Commands**

Commands left undefined within a standard, that act as place-holders for custom commands that will be developed by individual vendors.

**VESA**

Video Electronic Standards Association. See VESA Local Bus.

**VESA Local Bus (VLB)**

Video Electronic Standards Association Local Bus. It was designed to interface the Intel 80486 high speed processor bus to a local high-speed expansion bus. It ran at the processor speed and provided for high-speed, 32-bit data transfers.

**Virtual Memory**

A technique whereby a computer offloads some of the data/program from its primary memory onto disk, giving the impression that primary memory can continue to accept/store virtually unlimited amounts of data.

**VLB**

See VESA Local Bus.

## **VLSI**

Very-Large-Scale Integration. A chip with 20- to 900-thousand logic gates per chip. Transistors form logic gates that control the flow of electrons through chips.

## **Voice Coil Actuator**

A type of actuator that moves the read/write head in increments of infinitely-controllable size. Uses servo information for positioning.

## **Volume**

Also known as a partition. Represented by an icon on the Desktop and used to store files and folders of information.

## **Volume Bit Map**

A directory structure that keeps track of allocation blocks that are in use and that are free. It is used to determine where to put data that needs space and where to free up space when a file is deleted.

## **Volume Information Block**

A master directory block that contains important information on the volume, including:

- its name and type
- the number of files and folders on the volume
- the allocation block size
- pointers to the location of files

There is a backup copy of this near the end of the disk.

## **Warm Spare**

A replacement drive for a RAID system that requires the system to go off-line but not power-down in order to replace components.

## **Watermark**

A reference point. In HSM ToolKit, a watermark is a user-defined percentage of disk capacity. When the watermark is reached, HSM ToolKit is triggered to migrate files to free up some disk space.

## **Wedged Servo**

See Embedded Servo.

## **White Book**

The standard specification for Video CD. JVC, Matsushita, Sony and Philips coauthored this specification. It is also known as the "Video CD Standard."

## **Wide SCSI**

A SCSI-2 option that makes possible 16- or 32-bit wide data transfers and consequently much faster data transfer rates. In order to handle the extra width, an additional 29 signals are necessary. It requires a 68-pin cable connector.

## **Winchester 30/30**

Considered to be the first true hard drive technology. It was developed in 1973 by IBM. It was named after the Winchester 30/30 rifle because the hard drive used two 30 MB disks, one fixed and one removable.

## **Winchester Drive**

A fixed disk drive in which a sealed data module houses the access arm and the magnetic data disk. Most modern hard drives use Winchester technology.

## **Wired-or Signal**

Or "Or-tied." A control signal that requires simultaneous control signals

from more than one device to drive a bus phase true or positive, preventing electrical conflict. No devices drive the signal to a false state. Instead, the terminators pull the signal false whenever it is not driven.

### **Word**

Used to denote the number of bits that constitute a common unit of information in a particular computer system.

### **WORM Drive**

A CD-Recordable drive that writes to and reads from compact discs.

See also Write-Once, Read-Many.

### **Write-Back Caching**

Write-back caching keeps track of what information in the cache has been modified by the microprocessor. This is done by marking modified information with a “dirty bit.” When displaced from the cache, all the information with dirty bits is written to primary memory. It’s likely that the term “dirty bit” was coined to denote a tag that marked information that needed to be “cleaned out” (written) to the disk or to memory.

### **Write Caching**

Cache method by which the controller transfers a write request to its own cache, tells the CPU that the task is complete, and then completes the write at a later time. This speeds operations because the controller would not ordinarily tell the CPU it had finished the command until it actually had, and the CPU would have to wait for notification before going on to the next command.

### **Write-Once, Read Many (WORM)**

Generic term for a type of drive (WORM drive) that uses media that can be written to only once, but that can be read many times. Different devices use different techniques for preventing data from being erased. Some drives use series of software flags and special data bits that tell the firmware of the drive not to write to certain data blocks. Others physically change the media so it cannot be rewritten. Examples of WORM drives include multifunction magneto-optical drives, phase change optical drives, and CD-Recordable drives.

### **Write-Through Cache**

A variation of write caching, in which data destined for the drive is written to the disk but also stored in the cache. If this data is needed again, it can be read from the cache instead of going to disk. This is often combined with read caching to accelerate disk performance.

### **XOR**

“XOR” stands for “exclusive or,” a function of Boolean logic used in creating parity data. The XOR function sets a parity bit to a 1 if and only if either (but not both) of the compared data bits is 1.

### **XOR Engine**

A custom hardware engine that speeds up generation of parity in RAID 4 and 5 systems, which allows a RAID drive to be recovered in the event of a failure. XOR engines are usually used on higher end RAID subsystems. Other RAID subsystems rely on an on-board processor to do the XOR calculation.

## **XPT**

SCSI-2 CAM (Common Access Method) Transport. It is a layer of software that peripheral drivers and application programs use to initiate the execution of CAM functions.

## **Yellow Book**

Standard specification for CD-ROM. It allows for the presence of data tracks on a CD. It builds on the Red Book Standard. The Yellow Book standard specifies that CD-ROM must encode the first track as data. In addition to the two layers of error correction outlined in the Red Book, data is further protected by a third layer of error detection and correction. When a disc conforms to Yellow Book standard, it will usually say “data storage” beneath the disc logo.

## **Zip Drive**

A drive with a 3.5” cartridge containing a flexible disk that spins within a cushion of filtered air.

---

# Index

- Numerics
  - 1:1 interleaving 48, 222, 223
  - 1394 (FireWire) 209, 211–212
  - 2:1 interleaving 48
  - 3:1 interleaving 49
  - 3M 105
- A
- access time 22, 33
  - command overhead 33
  - cylinder switch time 33
  - head switch time 33
  - latency 22, 33
  - seek time 33
- active backplane 82, 95
- actuator 26, 75, 132
  - double actuators 34
  - stepper motor 35
  - voice coil 36, 73
- Adaptec 129, 135, 189, 200
- agency standards 128
- allocation block 187
- American National Standards Institute, see ANSI
- AMI 229
- ANSI 125, 128, 129, 193, 196, 202, 226, 235
- Apple 125, 129, 137, 138, 153, 181, 212, 226, 244, 254, 255, 259, 263, 265
  - exceptions to SCSI 176
  - IDE implementation 234
  - SCSI implementation 173
- architecture
  - isochronous 212
  - layered 180, 181, 189
  - loop 213
  - parallel 225
  - serial 225
- archive 269
- arrays, see RAID
- asynchronous event notification 199
- ATA 126
- ATAPI 238–239
- autolocking 40
- autoparking 40
- Award 229
- B
- backplane
  - active backplane 82, 95
  - passive backplane 261
- backup 62, 66, 270
  - differential backup 63
  - incremental backup 62
- benchmark 272
- Bernoulli Effect 101
- Bigfoot 42
- BIOS 285
- bit 46, 132
- bit-based striping 87
- BLER 106
- blind data transfer 282
- block multiplexer 128
- Blue Book 114
- boot blocks 186
- boot process
  - Macintosh 277
  - PC 285
- boot sector 285
- bootstrap 174
- bus conditions 158–159
  - attention 158
  - hard reset 159, 327
  - reset 158
  - soft reset 159, 327
- bus mastering 190

- bus phases 136, 179
    - and control signals 146
    - bus free 158
    - data 141
    - message out 158
    - selection 141
  - buses 243–262
    - Apple Desktop Bus 212
    - arbitration 169
    - block multiplexer 128
    - bus clock 244
    - bus mastering 244
    - bus reset 140, 142
    - CardBus 262
    - EISA 248
    - FIFO 246
    - hard reset 142
    - ISA 227, 246–247
    - MicroChannel 225, 247
    - Move16 246
    - NuBus 243–246, 254, 257
    - OEM channel 128, 132
    - PCI 217, 236, 237, 249–261
    - PCI Mezzanine 261
    - PCI on Macintosh 253
    - S-Bus 217
    - SCSI bus 132, 133, 141, 143, 150, 169
    - termination 153
    - VESA 237
    - VESA Local Bus (VLB) 248–249
  - byte 132
  - byte-based striping 87
- C
- cables 147–158, 216, 224
    - ACK 147
    - cable extender 148, 150
    - chip requirements 152
    - daisy chain 147, 155
    - differential 152
    - Enhanced IDE 237
    - fibre optic 218
    - GND 147
    - HDI-30 177
    - IDE 226
    - impedance 148, 155, 157
    - improper termination 155
    - length limitations 152
    - parity 147
    - peripheral interface cable 148, 149
    - recommendations 147
    - REQ 147
    - ribbon cables 147
    - SCSI disk adapter 177
    - SCSI system cable 148
    - SSA 219
    - stubs 150
  - cache 52–58
    - cache algorithm 56
    - CPU cache 53, 54
    - data transfer rates 53
    - hard drive cache 53, 55
    - hardware caching controller 58
    - level 2 cache 54
    - prefetch 56
    - RAM 54
    - RAM drives 58
    - read caching 56
    - read-ahead buffer 56
    - software disk cache 53, 54
    - track buffer 56
    - write caching 57
    - write-back cache 248
    - write-through cache 57
  - CAM 180, 189, 200–201, 226
  - capacitor 176
  - catalog tree 187
  - CCS 134
  - CD formats
    - CD Extra 114
    - CD-Bridge 114
    - CD-DA 113
    - CD-G 114
    - CD-i 113
    - CD-R 114
    - CD-ROM 113
    - CD-ROM XA 113
  - CD mastering 110
  - CD recording

- disc-at-once 114
- incremental 115
- Kodak multisession 117
- multisession 116
- multivolume/multisession 117
- packet 116
- session 115, 117
- track 115, 117
- track-at-once 115
- CD standards
  - Blue Book 114
  - Green Book 113
  - Orange Book, Part II 110, 114
  - Orange Book, Part III 119
  - Red Book 113
  - White Book 114
  - Yellow Book 113
- CDB, see command descriptor block
- CDRFS format 108
- CD-UDF format 108
- central processing unit, see CPU
- Centronics 153
- chips 24
  - ASIC 250
  - BANDIT 254
  - CMOS 136, 220, 223, 285
  - Curio 138
  - DMA 137
  - ISP 138
  - MESH 138
  - mode 138
  - mode, DMA 138, 139
  - mode, normal 138, 139
  - mode, pseudo-DMA 138, 139
  - MUNI chip 245
  - nonvolatile flash memory 58
  - Pentium 252
  - RISC 137, 138
  - SCSI 138
  - SCSI chip 132, 135, 173, 176, 181, 184, 199, 200
  - Symbios Logic 136, 137
  - VLSI 226
- CMOS 136
- command descriptor block 159, 199, 222, 295
  - Group 0 160, 295
  - Group 1 160, 296
  - Group 2 160
  - Group 5 297
  - pointers 160
- command overhead 33
- commands
  - ATA-3 commands 328
  - ATAPI commands 327
  - CD-ROM 312
  - command linking 198
  - communications device 313
  - Enhanced IDE commands 327
  - IDE commands 322
  - PCI commands 329
  - SCSI-2 commands 195–311
  - ST-506 commands 317
  - tagged command queuing 191, 198
  - tape device 313
  - vendor-unique 193, 311
- common access method, see CAM
- common command set 134, 196
- Compaq 105, 191, 225
- compression software 266
- connectors 75, 130, 148, 152–153, 156, 198, 199, 219, 259, 260
  - Centronics 153
  - HDI-30 177
  - SCA 214
  - SCSI 152
- Conner 95, 175, 225, 227
- contacts
  - ANSI 290
  - PCI 291
  - SCSI Trade Assn. 290
- contingent allegiance 199
- controller 24, 29, 48, 74, 184, 223
  - command overhead 33
  - controller damage 61
  - DMA controller 137
  - hard drive cache 53, 55
  - hardware caching controller 58
  - see also chips
- Copland 181

- CPU 21, 48, 133, 184
  - and transfer rates 51
  - cache 53, 54
  - clock speed 137
  - MIPS 138
  - overhead 136, 137
- CRC 241
- cyclic redundancy check 241
- cylinder switch time 33

D

- data blocks 43
- data density 45, 50
  - and operational speed 50
  - tracks per inch 50
- data detection 47
  - PRML 47
- data mapping 185
  - driver descriptor map 185
  - partition map 185
- data reading, see reading
- data recovery 67
- data security
  - see also RAID
  - backup 62
  - disk duplexing 63
  - disk mirroring 64
  - recovery 67
- data striping 84
- data transfer 139
  - asynchronous 140, 140, 142, 309
  - block mode data transfer 244
  - bus reset 140
  - DMA 228, 236
  - Enhanced IDE 237
  - handshake 139
  - IDE 227
  - IDE limitations 229
  - NuBus 244
  - PIO 236
  - synchronous 140, 141–142
- data transfer rates 50–51, 53, 141, 188
  - ATA-3 240
  - bandwidth 217, 220, 253
  - cables and 148
  - cache 53
  - data density 50
  - ESDI 224
  - Fibre Channel 216
  - HPPI 242
  - Intel chipsets 252
  - IPI 242
  - Macintosh 245
  - PC 192
  - PCI and NuBus 258
  - PowerPC to PCI 255
  - read channel 50
  - ST-506 222, 223
  - sustained 72
- data writing, see writing
- de facto standards 127, 134, 196
- defragmentation 68
- device drivers 59, 131, 181–183, 184, 224
  - ADD 189
  - HAM 189
  - input 183
  - LADDR 189
  - output 183
  - requests 182
- device manager 184
- differential 152, 216, 222
- DIP switches 29
- disk arrays, see RAID
- disk capacity 40
- disk duplexing 63
- disk mirroring 64, 86
- DMA 137, 138, 139, 179
  - pseudo-DMA 139
  - virtual DMA services 190
- Dolby 120
- DOS 190, 231
- drive controller 29
- drive head 23, 33
  - double actuators 34
  - flight height 31
  - giant magnetoresistance 32
  - head crashes 61
  - head disk assembly 31
  - inductive head 30, 32



- magneto-resistive head 32
- slider 31
- drives
  - ablative WORM 118
  - all digital drives 76
  - Bernoulli drives 72, 97, 101
  - CD-recordable drives 97, 109
  - CD-rewritable drives 97, 118
  - CD-ROM drives 97, 106
  - DVD drives 97, 120
  - floptical drives 97, 105
  - green drives 76
  - hard drives, see hard drives
  - hot swappable drives 81
  - Jaz drives 101
  - jukeboxes 97, 119, 131
  - magneto-optical drives 85, 97, 102
  - phase change optical drives 97, 104
  - RAM drives 58
  - removable cartridge drives 97, 99
  - removable drives 94, 97, 98
  - sequential access drives 266
  - tape drives 97, 122, 266
  - Winchester cartridge drives 85
  - WORM drives 102, 118
  - Zip drives 97, 101
- drum storage 25
- DTC 129
- dust control 66

## E

- ECC 47, 106
- edge connector 260
- emergency boot disk 66
- encoding 26, 44
  - ECC 47
  - frequency modulation 45
  - modified frequency modulation 46, 223
  - process 45–46
  - run length limited 46
  - variable zone recording 45
- enhanced drive parameter table 236
- EPRML 47
- error correction code, see ECC

- Eurocard connector 259
- expansion cards 179
  - disk controller 58
  - PCMCIA 42, 58, 100
  - see also host adapters
- extents tree 187

## F

- fault tolerance 89
- FCA 221
- FCEL 221
- fiber distributed data interface 126
- Fibre Channel 209, 213–218, 220, 253
  - arbitrated loop 213
  - bandwidth 217
  - cable 216, 218
  - data transfer rates 216
  - direct disk attach 217
  - features 214
  - optical transmission 218
  - remote 217
- Fibre Channel Association 213, 221
- Fibre Channel Enhanced Loop 221
- Fibre Channel Specification Initiative 213
- FIFO 246
- file manager 184
- file servers 217
- file system formats
  - CDRFS 108
  - CD-UDF 108
  - Generic 107
  - HFS 107
  - Hybrid 107
  - ISO 9660 107
  - Rock-Ridge 107
  - UDF 119, 121
- FireWire, see USB
- floppy disks 25
- FM encoding 45
- form factor 40–43
  - full-height 40
  - half-height 40
  - one-third-height 40
- formatter software 263

- formatting 43
  - 1:1 interleaving 48
  - 2:1 interleaving 48
  - 3:1 interleaving 49
  - bad sectors 227
  - clusters 233
  - data blocks 43
  - grown defects list 44
  - high level formatting 190
  - logical blocks 43
  - low-level formatting 48
  - partitions 232
  - sectors 43, 223
  - spares 43
  - tracks 43
- fragmentation 68
- frequency modulation 45
- Fujitsu 103
- full-height drive 40
- Future Domain 189
- FWB 265

## G

- Generic format 107
- giant magnetoresistance 32
- GMR 32
- Green Book 113
- grown defects list 44

## H

- half-height drive 40
- handshake 139
  - IDE 227
  - request/acknowledge 141
- hard disk platters 38–43
- hard drives 21–78
  - access times 22
  - advantages 21
  - all digital drives 76
  - armature 25
  - AV drives 58
  - bad sectors 227
  - capacity 72
  - controller 24
  - drive head 23, 33

- drum storage 25
- external components 30
- form factor 40–43
- formatting 43
- full-height 40
- green drives 76
- half-height 40
- hard drive cache 53, 55
- hardware errors 60
- head disk assembly 31
- history 25–26
- housing unit 40
- IDE 177
- indicators of reliability 69–73
- internal components 28
- limiting factors 37
- mechanics 27–37
- on/off policy 66
- one-third-height 40
- operational overview 23
- platters 23, 33, 38–43, 73
- positioning 67
- power management 229
- problems 280
- prolonging the life of 66
- sectors 43
- software errors 60
- temperature control 67
- tracks 24, 43
- trends 73–78
- hard reset 159, 327
- hard seek 47
- hardware errors 60
  - controller damage 61
  - head crashes 61
  - media errors 61
  - spindle failure 62
  - stiction 62
  - temperature problems 62
- hardware-based disk arrays 94, 95
- head disk assembly 31
- head parking 39
  - autolocking 40
  - autoparking 40
  - landing zone 40

- head switch time 33
  - Hewlett-Packard 213
  - HFS format 107
  - HFS partition 186
    - boot blocks 186
    - catalog tree 187
    - extents tree 187
    - volume bit map 187
    - volume information block 187
  - Hierarchical Storage Management, see
    - HSM
  - holographic memory 77
  - host adapters 157, 180, 189, 191, 192,
    - 199, 200, 217, 225, 226
  - hot plugging 191, 214, 218
  - housing unit 40
  - Hybrid format 107
- I
- IBM 26, 32, 128, 134, 153, 189, 201, 212,
    - 213, 218, 221, 222, 223, 225, 241,
      - 246
  - IDE 129
  - IEEE 128
  - Imprimis 225
  - inductive head 30, 32
  - information transfer phases, see bus
    - phases
  - integrated circuits, see chips, see also
    - controllers
  - Intel 132, 137, 191, 237, 249, 258
  - interfaces
    - 1394 (FireWire) 209, 211–212
    - ASPI 189, 191, 200
    - AT 225
    - ATA 201, 225, 227, 238, 262
    - ATA-2 235
    - ATA-3 240
    - ATAPI 238–239
    - BIOS INT13 285
    - CAM 189, 200, 226, 227
    - dumb 222
    - EATA 201
    - Enhanced IDE 235–237
    - ESCON 213
    - ESDI 224, 225, 285
    - Fast ATA 235
    - Fast ATA-2 238
    - Fibre Channel 209, 213–218
    - FIPS-60 241
    - high-level interface 132
    - HPPI 242
    - I/O 193
    - IDE 129, 177, 189, 190, 225–235,
      - 238, 262, 285
    - INT13 BIOS 190
    - IPI 129, 241
    - ISA 191
    - low-level interface 132, 212
    - parallel 225
    - peer-to-peer 129, 131
    - SASI 129
    - SCSI, see SCSI
      - serial 209, 210, 212, 218, 220, 222
    - SMD-E 241
    - SMD-H 241
    - SSA 209, 218–221
    - ST-412 222
    - ST-506 222, 225, 235, 285
    - USB 209, 211
  - interleaving 48–49, 86
    - 1:1 interleaving 48, 222, 223
    - 2:1 interleaving 48
    - 3:1 interleaving 49
    - low-level formatting 48
    - sector skew 50
  - interrupts 175, 231
  - ISO 9660 format 107
  - isochronous 212
- J
- JTS Corporation 41
  - jumper pins 29
  - jumpers 189, 191, 227
  - JVC 212
- K
- Kerr Effect 103

## L

landing zone 40  
latency 33, 57  
Lempel-Ziv 124  
LIMM-DOW 103  
logical block 43  
logical block address 236  
logical unit number, see LUN  
low-level formatting 48  
LUN 131

## M

magnetic domain 26, 30, 46  
magnetic flux 46, 73, 223  
magnetic recording 38  
magneto-resistive head 32  
magnets 38  
master 227  
Maxtor 224  
mean time between failures, see MTBF  
mean time to repair 71  
media  
    Bernoulli 101  
    CD-R 111  
    CD-ROM 106  
    data density 26  
    dual layer 120  
    DVD 120  
    floptical 105  
    magneto-optical 103  
    phase change optical 104  
    removable cartridges 100  
    tape 122  
    WORM 118  
memory  
    cache 52–58  
    CMOS 223, 285  
    declaration ROM 245  
    holographic memory 77  
    nonvolatile memory 21  
    parameter RAM 277  
    PCMCIA 42, 237  
    RAM 277, 285  
    ROM 174, 181, 185, 223, 234, 244  
    virtual memory 55

volatile RAM 21

messages  
    bus reset 159  
MFM encoding 46  
Microsoft 55, 189, 190, 191, 212, 233, 273  
miniport driver 191  
mode pages 48, 164  
    CD-ROM 239, 316  
    ECC 47  
    SCSI-2 314–316  
    tape device 239, 316  
modified frequency modulation 46, 223  
motherboard 200, 244, 277, 285  
Motorola 137, 235  
MPEG 121  
MTBF 69–71  
multiple-host system 127, 169

## N

NCR 129  
Nikon 103  
Novell 189, 237

## O

OEM channel 128, 132  
one-third-height drive 40  
open boot 255  
open firmware 255  
Orange Book, Part II 114  
Orange Book, Part III 119

## P

Panasonic 212  
parallel disk array 87  
parallel I/O 132  
parity 80, 89, 143, 147, 175  
parity disks 86, 87  
partition map 185, 186, 277  
partitions 232  
passive backplane 261  
PCI Mezzanine card 261  
PCI SIG 249  
PCI, see buses  
PCMCIA 42, 58, 100, 237, 261–262

- Philips 119
- Phoenix 229, 236
- PIO 228
- platters 33
  - cobalt-nickel alloys 38
  - ferric oxide 38
  - glass 38
  - servo positioning platter 34
  - spindle 39
  - sputtering 38
  - vapor deposition 38
- plug-and-play 191
- PMC 261
- pointers 160
  - active 160
  - current 160
  - saved 160
- port bypass circuit 214
- POST 159
- Power Computing 256
- power management 229
- power on self test, see POST
- power supply 81, 157
- predictive failure analysis 65, 206
- prefetch 56
- PRML 47, 123
- programmed in/out 228
- punch cards 25

Q

- Qlogic 135, 138
- Quantum 42, 235, 238, 241

R

- RAID 64, 79–96, 191
  - active backplane 82
  - applications 85, 86, 87, 88, 89
  - AutoRAID 94
  - bit-based striping 87
  - byte-based striping 87
  - caching 80
  - check disk 64
  - configurable rebuild 82
  - controller board 94
  - data striping 84
  - disk failure 93
  - drive channels 82
  - example, level 5 89–92
  - fault tolerance 80, 89, 93
  - features 80–82
  - hardware based 94, 95
  - host adapter 95
  - hot spare 80
  - hot swappable backplane 95
  - hot swappable drives 81
  - hot swappable power supplies 81
  - key aspects 80
  - layered RAID 94
  - level 0 84
  - level 0 + 1 94
  - level 1 86
  - level 10 94
  - level 2 86
  - level 3 87
  - level 4 88
  - level 5 88–94
  - level 53 94
  - level 6 94
  - monitoring software 81
  - multiple hosts 80
  - overview of levels 82
  - parity 80, 89
  - parity disks 86
  - RAID on RAID 94
  - RAID software 264
  - ranks 82
  - redundant controllers 81
  - redundant fans 81
  - removable arrays 94
  - SCSI 79
  - serial SCSI 79
  - setup software 81
  - software based 95
  - spindle synchronization 82
  - tape arrays 94
  - warm spare 80
  - XOR engine 82
- RAID Advisory Board 96
- RAM 21
- read caching 56

- read channel 50
- read operation 31
- read/write channel 37
- reading 37, 47
  - floptical 105
  - read channel 50
  - scatter/gather 236
  - sector skew 49
- Red Book 113
- redundant array of independent disks, see RAID
- registers
  - ATAPI 328
  - IDE 321
- RLL encoding 46, 223, 224
  - 0,4,4 RLL 46, 47
  - 2,7 RLL 46
  - 3,9 RLL 46
- ARLL 46
- Rock-Ridge format 107
- run length limited, see RLL encoding

## S

- SAF-TE 95
- SASI, see interfaces
- SCAM 191
- scatter/gather 236
- SCSI 125–221, 226
  - active high signals 152
  - active low signals 152
  - address, see ID
  - advanced technology
    - attachment 126
  - and PowerBooks 177
  - ANSI 125
  - Apple 125
  - Apple exceptions 176
  - Apple's ANSI irregularities 175
  - Apple-style 173
  - asynchronous data transfer 140, 140, 142
  - backward compatibility 179, 193, 202
  - bus 127, 133
  - bus phases 136, 141, 179
  - bus reset 140, 142
  - bus termination 155
  - cable extender 150
  - cable limitations 133, 216
  - cables 148
  - CAM 200–201
  - commands 132
  - connectors 148, 152
  - contingent allegiance 199
  - control signals 143
  - daisy chain 130, 147
  - data signals 143
  - data transfer 139
  - device independence 131, 194
  - differential 133, 152, 216
  - disconnect capability 133
  - disk mode 177
  - dual-channel 153
  - Fast and Wide 253
  - Fast SCSI 141, 198, 237
  - Fast/Wide 150, 192
  - Fast-20 192
  - FDDI 126
  - fiber channel 126
  - handshake 139, 141, 175
  - high-level interface 132
  - HIPPI 126
  - host 127
  - host adapter 135, 189
  - initiator 127, 131, 141, 146, 158, 164, 170, 183, 199
  - IPI 126
  - low-level interface 132
  - LUN 131
  - mode pages 164
  - narrow 156
  - negotiation 142
  - original implementations 188
  - parameter blocks 180–181
  - parity 143
  - PC implementation 189–191
  - peer-to-peer 131
  - peripheral interface cable 149
  - protocol 131
  - ROM 181

- SCAM 191
- SCSI cables 147–158
- SCSI chip 135, 173, 176, 181, 184, 200
- SCSI filter 176
- SCSI ID 130, 146–147, 191
- SCSI Manager 131, 135, 173, 178, 180, 181, 184, 200, 259
- SCSI-1 127, 133
- SCSI-2 134, 137, 141, 144, 147, 150, 157, 160, 165, 169, 179, 192, 193–201
- SCSI-2 commands 195–311
- SCSI-2 mode pages 314–316
- SCSI-3 147, 199, 202–208
- serial SCSI 209–221
- serial storage architecture 126
- signal lines 143–146, 294–295
- single-ended 133, 152, 196, 216
- synchronous data transfer 140, 141–142
- system cable 148
- target 127, 131, 141, 146, 158, 160, 164, 170, 183, 199, 212
- termination 153–158, 176
- Ultra SCSI 141, 262
- variations 192
- vendor-unique 196, 198
- vendor-unique codes 193
- Wide SCSI 156, 199
- SCSI bus phases 169–173
  - and control signals 308
  - arbitration 170, 171
  - bus free 170, 171
  - command 170, 172
  - data-in/out 170, 172
  - message-in/out 170, 173
  - reselection 170, 171
  - selection 170, 171
  - status 170, 172
- SCSI call chain 183–184
- SCSI commands 159–303
  - command descriptor block 159, 295
  - mode select 164
  - mode sense 164
  - SCSI Manager commands 179
  - sense data 161, 302
  - sense keys 161, 301
- SCSI interface module, see SIM
- SCSI interrupts 175
- SCSI Messages
  - message reject 142
- SCSI messages 164–168, 304–308
  - abort 166, 306
  - abort tag 167, 307
  - bus device reset 168, 308
  - clear queue 167, 307
  - command complete 165, 304
  - disconnect 166, 305
  - extended messages 165, 305
  - head of queue tag 167, 307
  - identify 168, 308
  - ignore wide residue 168, 307
  - initiator detected error 166, 305
  - linked command complete 167, 306
  - linked command complete (with flag) 167, 306
  - message formats 164
  - message parity error 166, 306
  - message reject 166, 306
  - message-in 164
  - message-out 164
  - no operation 166, 306
  - ordered queue tag 167, 307
  - restore pointers 166, 305
  - save data pointer 166, 305
  - simple queue tag 167, 307
  - terminate I/O process 167, 307
- SCSI problems, Apple
  - blind data transfers 175
  - fast reset 173
  - parity checking 175
  - unit attention condition 173
- Seagate 34, 221, 222, 223, 235, 238
- sector skew 49–50
- sectors 43, 223, 227
- seek time 33, 57, 72
- self-monitoring, analysis and reporting technology, see SMART
- sequential access drives 266

- serial port 130
- Serial Storage Architecture, see SSA
- servo 36–37, 73, 132
  - double embedded servo 37
  - embedded servo 37, 58
  - hybrid servo system 37
  - positioning information 37
  - servo positioning platter 34
  - voice coil actuator 36, 73
  - wedged servo 37
- shock ratings 71
- Shugart Associates 129
- signals
  - ACK 157, 158
  - active high 152
  - active low 152
  - and bus phases 146
  - arbitration 144
  - assertion 144
  - attention 142
  - command complete 144
  - control signals 143, 170
  - data signals 143
  - IDE 319
  - negation 144
  - reflection 158
  - REQ 157, 158
  - SEL 158
  - signal lines 143–146, 294–295
  - ST-506 signals 318
- SIM 200, 201
- single connector attachment 75, 214
- single-ended 152, 196, 216
- slave 227, 238
- SLED 79
- slider 31
- Small Computer System Interface, see SCSI
- SMART 65, 206, 240
- soft reset 159, 327
- software
  - AppleRAID 265
  - ATA Manager 234
  - backup 266
  - benchmark 272
  - card and socket 262
  - CD-R mastering 272
  - CD-ROM 265
  - CD-ROM ToolKit 265
  - compression 266
  - CoreTest 273
  - defragmentation 68
  - DiskPerf 273
  - Drive Rocket 273
  - Drive Setup 263
  - ECC 47
  - formatter 263
  - Hard Disk ToolKit 263
  - Heapfixer 283
  - HSM 267–272
  - RAID 81, 264
  - RAID ToolKit 265
  - SCANDISK 61
  - Slot Manager 244
  - SMARTdrive 55
  - software errors 60
  - SpinRite 49
  - utility software 66
  - VidTest 273
  - Ziff-Davis Benchmark 273
- software disk cache 54
- software-based disk arrays 95
- Sony 119, 212
- spares 43
- spindle 39
  - spindle failure 62
  - synchronization 89
- sputtering 38
- SSA 126, 209, 218–221, 253
  - bandwidth 220
- standards
  - agency 128, 224
  - ANSI 193, 196, 202, 224, 226, 235
  - ASNI 128
  - ASPI 200
  - de facto 127, 134, 196, 224
  - IEEE 128, 212, 223, 243
  - open 128
- stepper motor 35
- stiction 62



storage  
  near-line 269  
  off-line 269  
  on-line 269  
Sun Microsystems 138, 213, 255  
SuperMac 256  
surge suppressor 66  
Symbios Logic 135, 136, 137  
system heap 279, 283

## T

tape drives 122  
  compression 122  
  DAT 122  
  digital audio tape 122  
  digital data storage 122  
  digital linear tape (DLT) 124  
  disadvantages 25  
  QIC 122  
  sequential access 25, 266  
  Travan 122  
t-cal, see thermal recalibration  
temperature problems 62  
termination 153–158, 176, 198  
  active negation 158  
  active termination 157  
  examples 157  
  external 156  
  forced perfect termination 158  
  internal 156  
  termination power 156, 158  
  TPWR 176  
Texas Instruments 212  
thermal recalibration 58  
Thinking Machines, Inc. 86  
TPI 31, 50  
TPWR 156  
track buffer 49, 56  
tracks 24, 43, 56  
  compact disc 115, 117  
  track buffer 49  
tracks per inch 31, 50  
transfer information blocks 175  
transfer rates, see data transfer rates  
troubleshooting

drive not seen 275  
drives 280  
formatting 274  
happy Mac 278  
PC 286  
removable media 284  
sad Mac 279  
spinup 276  
system bomb 279

## U

UDF format 119, 121  
Ultra-ATA 241  
uninterruptible power supply, see UPS  
UNIX 217, 237  
UPS 57, 66  
USB 209, 211

## V

vapor deposition 38  
variable zone recording 45, 319  
volume bit map 187  
volume information block 187  
volume limits  
  allocation block size 187  
  Macintosh 187

## W

Western Digital 129, 223, 225, 235  
White Book 114  
Win32 309  
Winchester 26  
Windows 190, 217, 233, 237, 238, 240,  
  257, 266, 273  
write caching 57  
write-through cache 57  
writing 32, 37  
  ablative WORM 118  
  CD-R 112  
  CD-ROM 106  
  data mapping 185  
  encoding 44  
  floptical 105  
  interleaving 48  
  magneto-optical 103

phase change optical 104  
scatter/gather 236  
sector skew 49  
variable zone recording 45

X

Xebec 129  
XOR 82  
XPT 180, 200  
Xyratex 218

Y

Yellow Book 113

Z

Ziff-Davis 273  
zones 45